MACMILLAN'S

PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE

III

THIRD YEAR

G. Eugène-Fasnacht

Toronto University Library

Presented by

Messrs Macmillan & Co.

through the Committee formed in
The Old Country
to aid in replacing the loss caused by
The disastrous Fire of February the 14th 1890

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

http://www.archive.org/details/p3macmillansprog00euguoft

aF.Gr.
1298 mp

MACMILLAN'S

PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE

III.—THIRD YEAR

CONTAINING A SYSTEMATIC SYNTAX

AND LESSONS IN COMPOSITION

BY

G. EUGÈNE-FASNACHT

LATE ASSISTANT MASTER IN WESTMINSTER SCHOOL,
AUTHOR OF "MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE FRENCH AND GERMAN COURSES,"
EDITOR OF MACMILLAN'S SERIES OF "FOREIGN SCHOOL CLASSICS"

London

MACMILLAN AND CO.

AND NEW YORK

1889

+473
22/8/90
c

RICHARD CLAY AND SONS, LIMITED.
LONDON AND BUNGAY.

First Edition, 1880
Reprinted, 1882, 1884, 1885, 1886, 1889

PREFACE

THE success which has attended the first and second parts of my *Progressive French Course* has encouraged me to proceed with the publication of this third part, intended for the use of Upper Forms. If I may judge from the numerous letters addressed to me by those of my own profession who have adopted the first two parts, no apology is needed for bringing out a new treatise on French *Syntax;* for although great activity has of late been displayed in working the field of *word-lore*, and in bringing the results obtained within reach of even the humblest beginners, no serious attempt has, so far as I am aware, been made in framing a Syntax on *scientific* principles without at the same time over-stepping the comprehension of a Fifth or Sixth Form boy of average ability.

At the risk of sacrificing many niceties of word and phrase of only occasional utility, I have passed briefly over rules of secondary importance, exceptions to rules, exceptions to exceptions, etc., and have dwelt at length on the broad laws that underlie the characteristic structure of the French language. With this view I have devoted the chief part of the space at my disposal to an exhaustive treatment of those features of the language in respect of which French offers the most striking contrast with English—I mean the use of Articles (§§ 1—8), the place of Adjectives (§§ 20—23), the use of Tenses (§§ 62—74), of Moods (§§ 75—85), of Negations (§§ 104—107), and of Prepositions (§§ 108—119). In dealing with these I have not hesitated to go fully into details, being keenly alive to the fact that it is only by close attention to details that a sound basis can be laid for the general

principles of a science. I trust therefore that this book, though necessarily succinct, will not be found wanting in those important rules which find constant application in the work of construing and writing composition.

At the same time, by a carefully selected variety of type, I have enabled the learner at one glance to distinguish matters of first importance from what is chiefly intended for more advanced students. For these latter the matter printed in smaller type will, I hope, prove to be of great assistance for reference.

As regards the Exercises which accompany this Syntax, it seemed to me to be plainly dictated by common sense that, at this stage of their studies, pupils should begin to try their hand at turning extracts from good authors into French, in preference to the endless disconnected sentences which in the long run cannot but prove very irksome to both pupil and teacher. With this view I have compiled a series of passages carefully selected and progressively arranged according to their difficulty, very smooth at the beginning but gradually tending up hill. Practice in translating these extracts will, step by step, and with the assistance of constant reference to the Syntax, initiate the student in the art of writing correct, if not elegant, French — an accomplishment involving much more mental training than the uncompromising advocates of exclusively Classic studies are ready to admit.

G. EUGÈNE-FASNACHT,
Senior Master of Modern Languages.

WESTMINSTER SCHOOL.

CONTENTS.

N.B.—For full details of the subject matter see the Résumés at the head of each Chapter.

§§ 1–8, Nouns and Articles, *p.* 1. §§ 9–19, The Noun used as Object or Complement (Case-Construction), *p.* 10.

§§ 20–25, Adjectives, their Place, Agreement, and Government, *p.* 21.

§§ 26–33, Personal Pronouns—(I.) Conjunctive, *p.* 26. §§ 34–36, (II.) Disjunctive, *p.* 34. §§ 37–38, Possessive Pronouns, *p.* 36. §§ 39–42, Demonstrative Pronouns, *p.* 38. §§ 43–51, Relative and Interrogative Pronouns, *p.* 42. §§ 52–58, Indefinite Pronouns, *p.* 47.

§§ 59–61, The Verb—Concord, *p.* 48. §§ 61–72, Indicative Mood and its Tenses, *p.* 51. §§ 73–74, Conditional Mood, *p.* 59. §§ 75–79, Subjunctive Mood, *p.* 61. §§ 80–86, Infinitive, *p.* 72. §§ 87–91, Participle Present, *p.* 83. §§ 92–102, Participle Past, *p.* 88.

§§ 103–108, Adverbs, *p.* 94. §§ 109–118, Prepositions, *p.* 100. §§ 119–120, Conjunctions, *p.* 103.

§§ 121–124, Construction (Order of Words), *p.* 106.

EXERCISES, DIALOGUES, AND COMPOSITION.

1. Use of Definite Article, *p.* 114. 2. Use of Partitive Article, *p.* 115. 3. Omission of the Article, *p.* 117. 4. Use and Omission of Indefinite Article, *p.* 118.

5. Direct Object (Accusative), *p.* 119. 6. Remoter Object (Dative), *p.* 120. 7. Adverbial Phrases with **à**, *p.* 122. 8–9. Indirect Complement with **de** (Genitive), *p.* 123.

10-11. Place of Adjectives, *p.* 126. 13. Adjectives of Comparison and Dimensions, *p.* 129; Dialogue on the Metrical System, *p.* 130.

14. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns, *p.* 130. 15. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns, **en**, *p.* 132. 16. Conjunctive Personal Pronouns, **en** and **y**, *p.* 133. 17. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns, *p.* 135. 18. Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives, *p.* 136. 19. Demonstrative Pronouns, *p.* 137. 20. Relative Pronouns, *p.* 138. 21. Interrogative Pronouns, *p.* 139. 22. Indefinite Pronouns, *p.* 141.

23. Concord of Verbs, *p.* 142. 24. The Present Indicative, *p.* 144. 25. The Imperfect, *p.* 145. 26. The Imperfect and Definite, *p.* 147. 27. The Indefinite, *p.* 148. 28. The Pluperfect and Past Anterior, *p.* 149. 29. The Future and Conditional, *p.* 150.

30–35. The Subjunctive, *p.* 152.

36. The Infinitive without Preposition, *p.* 161. 37. The Infinitive after **faire**, *p.* 162. 38. The Infinitive with **de**, *p.* 164. 39. The Infinitive with **à**, *p.* 165. 40. The Infinitive with **pour**, **après**, etc., *p.* 167.

41. The Present Participle, *p.* 168. 42. The English Present Participle Construction not admissible in French, *p.* 170. 43–44. The Past Participle, *p.* 171.

45. Adverbs, *p.* 175.

Comparative Table of English and French Prepositions, *p.* 176. 46. Prepositions, *p.* 188. 47. Conjunctions, *p.* 189.

48. Order of Words (Construction), *p.* 191.

NOTES, OBSERVATIONS, ETC., TO THE LESSONS . 192

INDEX 224

PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE.

THIRD YEAR.

NOUNS AND ARTICLES.

Résumé.

General Principles.—The use of Articles depends on the sense in which a Noun is taken :—

I. General ; II. Particular ; III. Partitive ; IV. Indeterminate ; and V. Indefinite.

Special Rules.—

I. and II. A Noun taken either in a *General* or a *Particular* sense takes the Definite Article, if it is (*a*) *Collective or Abstract ;* (*b*) *the name of a title, dignity,* etc. ; (*c*) *another part of speech ;* (*d*) *the name of a holy day,* etc. ; (*e*) *the name of a country.* Remarks on names of countries.

III. Nouns taken in a *Partitive* sense are used either (*a*) *Determinately,* or (*b*) *Indeterminately.*

IV. Nouns taken in an *Indeterminate* sense take no Article, if used (*a*) as a *Verbal Phrase ;* (*b*) as an *Adjectival or Adverbial Phrase ;* (*c*) *in Enumerations, Proverbs,* etc. ; (*d*) *in Apposition.*

I., II., and IV. compared : Nouns in the *Genitive* case.

Repetition of the Article.

V. Nouns taken in an *Indefinite* sense :—

(*a*) Nouns used with the *Indefinite* Article both in English and French.

(*b*) Nouns used with the *Indefinite* Article in English, but with the *Definite* Article in French if denoting (1) *bodily or mental qualities ;* (2) *a price, measure,* etc.

(*c*) Nouns used with the *Indefinite* Article in English but *without Article* in French, if used (1) *in Apposition ;* (2) *after Copulative Verbs ;* (3) *after Factitive Verbs.*

§ 1. General Principles.—The use or omission of the Article before a Noun depends on the more or less limited sense in which the Noun is taken; in order, therefore, to understand the Special Rules below, it is indispensable first of all to distinguish the different ways in which the same Noun may be used:

(I.) in a *General* sense, implying the whole class or species if the Noun is concrete, or the whole idea if it is abstract; as,

Le fer; **l'**homme, **les** hommes; **la** musique; **la** vertu.	*Iron; man, men; music; virtue.*

(II.) in a *Particular* or *Individual* sense, qualified (limited) by an Adjunct, either expressed or understood; as,

Le meilleur fer; **l'**honnête homme.	*The best iron; the honest man.*
La vertu de Socrate.	*The virtue of Socrates.*

(III.) in a *Partitive* sense, implying only a part or fraction of a whole; as,

Du fer; **des** hommes; **de la** vertu.	*Some (any) iron; men; virtue.*

(IV.) in an *Indeterminate* sense (adjectively or adverbially), qualifying (limiting) another Noun or a Verb; as,

La chaîne **de fer**; habits **d'homme**.	*The iron chain; men's clothing.*
Un trait **de vertu** (= vertueux).	*A virtuous deed.*
Agir **avec sagesse** (= sagement).	*To act with wisdom (wisely).*

(V.) in an *Indefinite* sense, implying a single individual of a class; as,

Un homme; **une** femme.	*A man; a woman.*

Special Rules to I. and II.

§ 2. A Noun is used with the *Definite Article* in French —contrary to English usage—if it is,

(*a*) *Collective* and *Abstract*, whether taken in a *General* or *Particular* sense ; as,

Le fer est plus utile que **l'**or.	*Iron is more useful than gold.*
L'hypocrisie est un hommage que **le** vice rend à **la** vertu.	*Hypocrisy is a homage rendered by vice to virtue.*
J'aime **la** musique (italienne).	*I like (Italian) music.*
Il entend **l'**Anglais.	*He understands English.*

(*b*) a *Proper Noun* qualified by a *Title*, *Dignity*, *Profession*, etc., or by an *Adjective ;* as,

Le roi Jean ; **la** reine Victoria.	*King John ; Queen Victoria.*
Le maréchal Ney ; **le** docteur Graves. **Le** petit Charles.	*Marshal Ney ; Dr. Graves. Little Charley.*

Observe also the peculiar place of the Definite Article in addressing titled or professional persons :

Monsieur **le** marquis ; Madame **la** marquise.	*The Marquis ; the Marchioness.*

(*c*) another *Part of Speech* used substantively ; as,

Le boire et **le** manger (§ 81).	*Eating and drinking.*
Le mien et **le** tien engendrent beaucoup de procès.	*Mine and thine are the cause of many law-suits.*

(*d*) the name of any of the *Days* of the Week used distributively, or of a *Holy Day*, as,

Les paquebots partent **les** mardis.	*The steamers leave every Tuesday.*
Il ne fait ses visites que **le** jeudi.	*He makes his calls only on Thursdays.*
La St. Jean ; **le** mercredi des Cendres.	*Midsummer day ; Ash Wednesday.*

(*e*) the name of a *Country*, *Province*, *large island*, *Mountain*, *Season ;* as,

La Grande Bretagne, **l'**Angleterre, **le** Portugal, **les** Pays Bas, **la** Bretagne, **la** Sardaigne, **le** Mont Blanc, **le** printemps.

Obs. Only few names of towns take, quite exceptionally, the Definite Article :—

Le Havre (Gen. **du** Havre, Dat. **au** Havre) ; **le** Caire ; **la** Haye ; **la** Mecque ; **la** Rochelle ; **la** Havane.

SPECIAL RULES REGARDING NAMES OF COUNTRIES, RIVERS, ETC.—

§ 3. Names of Countries (except those derived from names of Towns) take the *Definite* Article if used (*a*) as Subject or Direct Object; (*b*) with the preposition **de** (unless it be used adjectively according to IV.); or (*c*) with any other Preposition but **en**:—

Rule.— With the Definite Article; as,	*Exceptions—Without Article;* as,
(*a*) **L'**Angleterre, **la** Russie, **le** Danemark, **les** Indes.	Bade, Oldenbourg.
(*b*) Les frontières **de la** Turquie.	Des tapis **de** Turquie.
La découverte **de l'**Amérique.	Quelques villes **d'**Amérique.
Les ressources **de la** France.	Des vins **de** France.
Les côtes **de l'**Angleterre sont très étendues.	A midi nous aperçûmes les côtes **d'**Angleterre.
L'Asie est à l'est **de l'**Europe.	La Turquie **d'**Europe (= européenne).
Londres, capitale **de l'**Angleterre.	Bedford, petite ville **d'**Angleterre.
(*c*) **Dans l'**Angleterre; **dans la** Russie.	Aller **en** Angleterre, **en** Russie.
Dans le (au) Danemark;* **dans les** (aux) Indes.*	**En** Danemark.
Partir **pour l'**Ecosse.	Demeurer **en** Ecosse.
S'embarquer **pour l'**Amérique.	**Venir d'**Amérique (see § 4, *b*, 3).

* Those used in the Masculine or in the Plural, as well as those compounded with an Adjective, always take the Article:—

Venir **du** Portugal; **des** Indes.	Venir **de** Suisse, **d'**Espagne.
Porcelaine **du** Japon.	Porcelaine **de** Saxe.
Le roi **des** Pays Bas.	Le roi **de** Suède.
Le fleuve **du** Rhin.	La rivière **de** Seine.

III. THE NOUN TAKEN IN A PARTITIVE SENSE.

§ 4. A Noun is said to be taken in a Partitive sense when only a *part* or *fraction* of the thing (or things) it denotes is implied; and this Partitive meaning is expressed in two ways—

(*a*) *determinately*, by **de** with the Definite Article, *i.e.* **du**, **de** *la*, **de l'**, **des**;

(*b*) *indeterminately*, by **de** alone, whenever the Noun is already sufficiently determined by (1) a preceding qualifying Adjective; (2) an Adverb, or Noun of quantity, or negation, *beaucoup*, *peu*, *assez*, *plus*, *trop*, *tant*, *pas*, *point*; or again, if (3) it is taken in so general a sense as altogether to exclude the notion of quantity:—

(*a*) *Determinate;* as,	(*b*) *Indeterminate;* as,
Donnez-moi **du** lait; **de la** viande; **de l'**huile; des œufs.	(1) **de** bon lait;* **de** bonne viande; **de** bonne huile; **de** bons œufs.
Voilà **de l'**eau bonne à boire.	Voilà **de** bonne eau.
Il a **des** amis sincères.	Ce sont **de** vrais amis.
A-t-il **du** courage?—	(2) Non, il n'a **pas**† **de** courage.
Il faudrait **de la** patience!—	Oui; mais, il n'a **point de** patience.
Ont-ils **des** amis?—	Hélas; ils n'ont que **peu d'**amis.
Voici **des** raisins.	Voici une **livre de** raisins.
Here are some grapes.	*Here is a pound of grapes.*
Il boit **du** vin.	(3) Il s'abstient **de** vin.

Comp. Lat. Quid novi. Multum laboris. Tantum auri.

* **du** petit-lait, *whey;* **du** vif-argent, *quicksilver;* **des** bons mots, *witticisms;* because the Adjective is here merely part and parcel of a Compound Noun.

† Only **bien** (in the sense of *beaucoup*), and **la plupart**, *most*, take the Determinate form after them: **bien des** gens; la **plupart du** monde.

Obs. 1. It stands to reason that if a Partitive Noun preceded by an Adverb or Noun of quantity, is qualified by an Adjunct, it must, according to the General Principles laid down, be treated as Determinate. Compare:—

Il reste **peu du vin mis en bouteille** en 1834.	Il reste peu **de vin.**
Il y a encore une livre **des raisins que vous avez achetés en Espagne.**	Il n'y a plus qu'une **livre de** raisins.
N.B.—Je n'ai **pas de l'argent** pour le dépenser follement. *I have money, but not to spend foolishly.*	Je n'ai **pas (point) d'**argent. *I have no money.*

Ce n'est **pas de l'argent** que je vous demande, ce sont des conseils.
Money is not what I ask you for, but advice.

Je ne vous demande **pas d'**argent.
I do not ask you for (any) money.

Obs. 2. Also *Adjectives* and *Participles* may be used *partitively*, especially after Pronouns used substantively:—*rien, quelque chose, quoi, que, ce qui, tout ce qui, ceci, cela;* and after *Numerals*, **as,**

Je n'ai jamais **rien** vu **de pareil.** — *I have never seen anything like it.*
Cela ne présage **rien de bon.** — *That forbodes nothing good.*
Ce palais a **quelque chose d'auguste.** — *This palace has a somewhat august aspect.*
Je lui donnai **tout ce que** j'avais **d'argent** sur moi. — *I gave him what money I had about me.*
Qu'y a-t-il **de nouveau?** — *What is the news?*
Quoi de plus beau que ce coup d'œil! — *What could be finer than this sight!*
L'homme a **cela de commun** avec les animaux que... — *Man has that in common with animals that...*
Sur six mille combattants il y en eut **cinq cents de tués** et **huit cents de blessés.** — *Of six thousand combatants five hundred were killed, and eight hundred wounded.*
Parmi ces poires il n'y en a pas **une de gâtée.** — *Among these pears there is not one spoiled.*

§ 5. IV. The Noun used in an Indeterminate sense.

A Noun takes no Article if

(*a*) so intimately linked with the preceding Verbs as to form but one idea (*i.e.* a *Verbal Phrase*) with it; as,

Avoir peur (de) = craindre, *to fear.*
Avoir soin de = soigner, *to take care.*
Faire cas de = estimer, *to esteem.*
Faire fortune = s'enrichir, *to get rich.*
Prendre part à = participer à, *to take part in.*
Mettre à mort = tuer, *to put to death.*
Porter envie à = envier, *to bear envy.*
Parler raison = raisonner, *to talk sense, etc.*

(*b*) governed by a Preposition with which it forms an *Adjectival* or *Adverbial Phrase;* as,

En or, d'or, *golden.*
En usage = usuel, *in use.*
De nuit = nuitamment, *by night.*
A cœur ouvert = franchement, *candidly.*
Avec dureté = durement, *harshly.*
Par jour = journellement, *per diem.*
Sans peur = intrépide, *fearless.*

Obs. 1. The Article is also omitted (*a*) in *Enumerations, Proverbs, Titles, Headings of Books*, and in *addressing a Person* (Vocative) ; as,

Tombeaux, trônes, palais, tout périt, tout s'écroule.	*Tombs, thrones, palaces, everything must perish and fall to pieces.*
Possession vaut titre.	*Possession is nine points of the law.*
Grammaire latine. Chapitre premier.	*A Latin Grammar. Chapter the first.*
Charmant pays de France !	*Beautiful France !*

(*b*) with Nouns used in *Apposition ;* as,

Mexico, capitale du Mexique.	*Mexico, the capital of* [*the republic of*] *Mexico.*
Louis quatorze.	*Louis the fourteenth.*

Obs. 2. With an Apposition used for the sake of distinguishing one person or thing from another, the Article is necessary :—

Je vous parle de Rousseau, **le** poète, et pas de Rousseau, **le** philosophe.

§ 6. I., II., and IV. Compared :—

A NOUN IN THE GENITIVE CASE stands *with or without* the Definite Article, according as it is used—

(*a*) as a Genitive of the *Possessor ;* as (*with the Definite Article, according to General Principle, I. and II.*),	or (*b*) as a Genitive of *Quality ;* as, (*without any Article, according to IV.*),
Le chemin **de la vertu**.	Un trait **de vertu**.
The path of virtue.	*A trait of virtue* (= *virtuous*).
La vie **de l'homme** est courte.	Une vie **d'homme** n'y suffirait pas.
The life of man is short.	*The life of any man would not suffice for it.*
L'eau **de la mer** est salée.	Il prend des bains **de mer**.
The water of the sea is salt.	*He takes sea baths.*
L'essor **du génie**.	Un homme **de génie**.
The soaring of genius.	*A man of genius.*

Obs. 1. The same distinction holds good with Nouns governed by **à** :—

Le pot **au** lait.	Un pot **à** lait, *a milk jug.*

Obs. 2. Compare also the following examples, in which the use or omission of **the** Article altogether alters the sense :—

Entendre **la** raillerie.	Entendre raillerie.
To know how to joke.	*To know how to take a joke.*
Demander la raison de...	Demander raison.
To ask the reason of...	*To demand satisfaction.*

L'armée de l'Italie.	L'armée d'Italie.
The Italian army.	*Any army (French, etc.) stationed in Italy.*

§ 7. Repetition of the Article.

As a rule the Article is—contrary to English usage—repeated in French before

(1) two or more Nouns following each other (except when they are so closely connected as to form but one idea); (2) two or more Adjectives, which, with the Noun they qualify, form as many different ideas; but if they qualify the same person or thing, or if they stand after the Noun, the Article is not repeated:—

	The Article repeated.	*The Article not repeated.*
(1)	Cette cause a **la** sympathie et **l'**appui de toutes les nations civilisées.	L'école **des** arts et métiers. **Les** savanes ou prairies naturelles.
(2)	Il a éprouvé **la** bonne et **la** mauvaise fortune (= la prospérité et l'adversité).	**Les** courageux, mais vains, efforts de ce peuple oppressé. **L'**histoire sacrée et profane.

§ 8. V. The Noun used indefinitely.

(*a*) A Noun is used with the *Indefinite* Article when it denotes any single (individual) person or thing used indeterminately; as,

Un ami sincère est **un** trésor.	*A sincere friend is a treasure.*

Obs. Though, grammatically speaking, the Indefinite Article has no plural, yet Nouns used in an indefinite sense may be put in the plural, in which case no Article is used in English, but the Partitive Article in French:—

J'ai **un** ami; j'ai **des** amis.	*I have a friend; I have friends.*

(*b*) A Noun used *indefinitely* (*i.e.*, with the Indefinite Article) in English, is used *definitely* (*i.e.*, with the Definite Article) in French, if it denotes

(1) a *bodily* or *mental Quality* (used as object of the Verb *avoir*); as,

Platon avait **les** traits réguliers, **les** yeux pleins de douceur, **le** front ouvert, **la** poitrine large, et **les** épaules hautes.	*Plato had regular features, eyes full of sweetness,* **an** *open forehead,* **a** *broad chest, and high shoulders.*
J'ai **l'**œil bon, Dieu merci !	*I have* **a** *good eye, thank God.*
Elle a **la** mémoire sûre.	*She has* **a** *good memory.*

(2) a *Price, Measure, Weight,* etc. ; as,

Dix francs **le** mètre (**la** livre).	*Ten francs* **a** *metre* (**a** *pound*).
Mille francs **les** cinquante kilogrammes.	*A thousand francs* **a** *hundredweight.*

Obs. The Indef. Art. *a* in the sense of *each* is rendered by **par** :—

Deux fois **par** semaine ; cinq francs **par** leçon.	*Twice* **a** *week ;* 5 *francs* **a** *lesson.*
Entrée : deux schellings **par** tête.	*Admission : two shillings* **each.**

(*c*) A Noun used with the *Indefinite* Article in English is used *without any Article* in French, when it stands

(1) in *Apposition ;* as,

Sedan, petite ville de France.	*Sedan,* **a** *small town in France.*
Quel coquin d'intendant !	*What a scamp of* **a** *steward!*

(2) after a Verb denoting *Manner of Being :—être, devenir, sembler,* etc. ; as,

Il est né Français, mais il est maintenant Anglais naturalisé.	*He was born* **a** *Frenchman, but he is now* **a** *naturalised Englishman.*
De simple soldat qu'il était, il devint capitaine.	*From* **a** *private soldier, he has risen to the rank of* **a** *captain.*
Il a péri victime de son imprudence.	*He perished* **a** *victim to his imprudence.*
Je vous parle en ami.	*I speak to you as* **a** *friend.*
Il s'est montré homme de courage.	*He showed himself* **a** *man of courage.*

Obs. Thus, also after **quel** and **jamais ;** as,

Quel beau coup d'œil !	*What* **a** *beautiful prospect !*
Jamais nation ne fut plus superstitieuse que les Egyptiens.	*Never was* **a** *nation more superstitious than the Egyptians.*

(3) as Object of a *Factitive* Verb, *i.e.*, of *Making, Appointing, Creating, Believing,* etc.—the only Verbs which in French take a double Accusative (see § 10) ; as,

Je le croyais homme d'honneur.	*I believed him to be* **a** *man of honour*

THE NOUN (OR PRONOUN) USED AS OBJECT OR COMPLEMENT.

Résumé.

A.—The Noun-Object or Noun-Complement used *without Preposition.*

I. (*a*) The Noun (or Pronoun) as Direct Object after Transitive Verbs.

(*b*) The Direct Object and Complement.

II. The Noun as a Direct Adverbial Complement of *time, distance.*

B.—The Noun-Object or Noun-Complement *governed by* **à.**

General Principles.—Origin and successive uses of **à.**

Special Rules.—

I. **à** used to denote the *Remoter Object* after Verbs; (*a*) *of giving, adding,* etc.; (*b*) *of taking from;* (*c*) *Intransitive;* (*d*) *Copulative.*

II. **à** used with Nouns to form *Adverbial Complements,* denoting (*a*) *manner, instrument,* etc.; (*b*) *time, circumstances;* (*c*) *place, direction.*

C.—The Noun-Object or Noun-Complement *governed by* **de.**

General Principles.—Origin and generic development of the meanings of **de.**

Special Rules.—

I. **de** used in answer to the questions *whence? wherefrom?* after Verbs denoting (*a*) *separation, privation,* etc.; (*b*) *starting-point, origin,* etc.

II. **de** used in answer to the questions *wherewith? whereof? whereat? owing to what?* after Intransitive Verbs denoting (*a*) *questions,* etc.; (*b*) *recognition, accusation;* (*c*) *instrument, means.*

Obs. *De* or *par* after Passive Verbs. (*d*) *matter, contents.*

III. **de** used in answer to the question *whereof?* after Verbs of *perceiving, recollecting, speaking,* etc.

IV. **de** used to express *duty, office, mark,* etc.

V. **de** used to form idiomatic phrases answering the questions *how? when?*

A.—The Noun-Object or Noun-Complement used without Preposition.

§ 9. I. (*a*) The *Direct Object*, *i.e.* the Object used without Preposition, corresponding to the Latin accusative, stands after all kinds of *Transitive* Verbs; as,

La pluie arrose **la terre**.	*The rain moistens* (*bedews*) *the earth.*
Joseph eut **un songe**.	*Joseph had a dream.*
Nous **le** suivîmes jusqu'au bout.	*We followed him to the end.*
Voilà l'objet **que** je me propose.	*That is the object I have in view.*

Obs. 1. Some Verbs take a Direct Object in French which in English require a Preposition; as,

Que cherchez-vous?	*What are you looking* **for?**
A-t-on **résolu** la paix ou la guerre.	*Have they* **resolved upon** *peace or war?*

The principal of these are: admettre, *to admit of;* approuver, *to approve of;* regarder, *to look at* (*upon*); attendre, *to wait for;* chercher, *to look for;* désirer, *to wish for;* envoyer chercher, *to send for;* rencontrer, *to meet with.*

Obs. 2. A few Intransitive Verbs—as, *aller*, *courir*, *causer*, *sentir*, *jouer*, admit of being used transitively; *jouer grand jeu* (Comp. Lat. *Ludere ludum*). Some also may—in strict analogy with Latin—become transitive by taking a prefix; as, *parcourir un champ*, *endormir un enfant*, *encourir une amende.*

(*b*) Verbs which indicate *Making*, *Believing*, *Naming*, *Appointing*, and the like (Factitive Verbs) may take an Object and a Complement of that Object; as,

L'égoïste **se** fait **le centre** de tout.	*The egotist makes himself the centre-point of everything.*
Le roi **le** créa **colonel** sur le champ de bataille.	*The king made him colonel on the battle-field.*
Je **vous** crois **honnête homme**.	*I believe you to be an honest man.*

(*c*) But Verbs of *Asking* and *Teaching* do not, as they do in Latin and English, take two Direct Objects; the Person taught or asked must stand as an *Indirect* Object; as

J'enseigne la grammaire à **mes élèves.**	*I teach my pupils grammar.*
Je **lui** demandai une question.	*I asked him a question.*

On *faire* followed by an Infinitive with an Object, see § 81.

§ 10. II. *Adverbial Phrases* answering the questions *when? how long? how far? how much?* being generally used without prepositions, may be classed here as Accusatives of *Time, Place, Measure;* as,

Il vint me voir **le lendemain.**	*He called upon me on the next day.*
Ce cheval a été vendu **deux mille francs.**	*This horse has been sold for 2,000 francs.*
Je continuai mon chemin **l'espace** de six milles.	*I walked on for a distance of six miles.*

Obs. 1. Corresponding to the Latin Ablative Absolute, there is in French what might be termed a Nominative or Accusative Absolute; as,

Quant à nous, **le fusil sur l'épaule,** nous montâmes toute la nuit.
Les Juifs mangeaient l'agneau pascal, debout, **les reins ceints,** et **un bâton** à la main.

Obs. 2. In the Prepositions **voici, voilà,** the Verb **voir** retains its transitive force; as,

Me voici; **te** voilà.	*Here I am; there you are.*
L'homme **que** voilà.	*That man there.*

B.—The Noun-Object or Noun-Complement governed by "à."

§ 11. General Principles.—à has a much wider range of functions than the English *to,* or the Latin *ad* and *ab* (from which it is derived), corresponding as it does, to other Prepositions—as, *at, for, from, with, in, by, on,* in English, and to the Dative case together with various Prepositions in Latin. To understand this multiplicity of functions devolving upon *à,* it must be borne in mind that already in the classical period of Latin the Preposition *ad* was doing duty for the

Dative case, and that in Mediæval Latin it assumed the meanings of *cum* and *apud*. (See Brachet's *Etymological Dictionary*, under à).

SPECIAL RULES.—

N.B. If the Remoter Object is a Personal Pronoun, the Conjunctive form (§ 26) without **à** must be used.

§ 12. (I.) à is used to denote the *Indirect* Object—

(*a*) after verbs of *Giving, Adding, Telling, Showing*, and the like; as,

Il **donne** son bien **aux** pauvres.	*He gives his property to the poor.*
Elle **lui a dévoué** sa vie.	*She has devoted her life to him.*
J'y contribuerai pour ma part.	*I shall contribute to it for my share.*
L'ambition seule **leur inspira** ces crimes.	*Ambition alone suggested these crimes to them.*
Faites-moi voir vos tableaux.	*Show me your pictures.*

(*b*) quite contrary to English usage, after verbs of *Taking, Removing, Borrowing, Wanting, Asking, Refusing*, etc.; as,

On a **ôté** le pain **à** cette famille.	*They have taken away the livelihood* **from** *this family.*
Je **lui** ai **acheté** un volume qu'il m'a fait payer cher.	*I bought* **of** *him a volume for which he charged me a high price.*
L'homme opulent se couche lorsque l'autre **s'arrache au** sommeil.	*The opulent man betakes himself to rest when other people arouse themselves* **from** *sleep.*
Il **leur faut** de l'argent.	*They want money.*
On **lui demanda** ce qu'elle voulait.	*They asked her what she wanted.*

(*c*) after all kinds of *Intransitive* Verbs, before the names of persons and things for whom, or in respect of whom, an action is done (corresponding to the *Lat. Dat. Commodi*); as,

Ce chien **obéit à** la voix de son maître.	*This dog obeys the call of his master.*
Louis XIV. **survécut à** ses enfants.	*Louis the fourteenth survived his children.*
Ce fils **ressemble à** son père.	*This son resembles his father.*
À quoi cela **est**-il bon.	*What is that good for?*
Il a **répondu à** toutes les questions qu'on lui a faites.	*He has answered all questions put to him.*

Many verbs of this class require *no Preposition* in English; as, *conseiller à, commander à, convenir à, demander à, se fier à, nuire à, obéir à, ordonner à, parvenir à, plaire* (*déplaire*) *à, remédier à, renoncer à, répondre à, résigner à, résister à, ressembler à, subvenir à, succéder à, survivre à, toucher à,* etc.

Obs. 1. For constructions like—je **lui** serrai **la** main, *I shook* **his** *hand,* see § 38.

Obs. 2. What in Classic languages is called the *ethic* dative is of frequent use in French:—

Qu'on **me** l'égorge, qu'on **me** lui fasse griller les pieds, qu'on **me** le mette dans l'eau bouillante.

Obs. 3. Je **trouve à** votre sœur l'air un peu triste.	*It* **strikes me** *your sister looks rather sad.*
Je **lui crois** de grands moyens.	*I* **ascribe to him** (*give him credit for*) *great abilities.*

(*d*) after the verb *être,* answering the question *whose?* as,

. . . . Le moulin **est à moi,** Tout aussi bien, du moins, que la Prusse **est au roi.**	*The mill is mine, as much so at least, as Prussia is the king's.*

Obs. 1. Thus also emphatically with the verb *avoir*:—

Il n'a rien **à lui.**	*He has nothing of his own.*

§ 13. (II.) à is used in conjunction with Nouns, to form *Adverbial Complements* denoting—

(*a*) the *Manner* in which, or the *Instrument* with which, an action is done; answering the questions *how? by what means? wherewith?* as,

J'irai **à pied,** mais lui, il ira **à cheval.**	*I shall go on foot, but he will ride.*
Ils lui parlèrent **à haute voix.**	*They spoke to him in a loud voice.*
Robinson Crusoé gagna le rivage **à la nage**	*Robinson Crusoe swam to the shore.*
Je l'ai reconnu **à sa démarche**	*I recognised him by his gait.*
Elle s'habilla **à la française.**	*She dressed in the French fashion.*
Jouer **aux** cartes, **aux** échecs, etc.	*To play at cards, at chess* (but see § 16, *c*.)

Obs. Here may be classed adverbial complements answering the question *at what rate?* as,

Le sucre se vend **au poids.**	*Sugar is sold by the pound.*
Nous prendrons ce fiacre **à l'heure.**	*We shall hire this cab by the hour.*

(*b*) the *Time* when, the *Circumstances* under which, an action is done; answering the questions *when? until when? on what occasion?* as,

Autrefois on dînait **à midi.**	*In times of old one used to dine at midday.*
Je l'attends **à tout moment.**	*I expect him immediately.*
Le monarque, **à ces mots,** se mit à rire.	*The monarch, at these words, began to laugh.*
Je m'éveillai **au bruit** de la tempête.	*I awoke in the roar of the storm.*

(*c*) the *Place* where an action is done, or the *Direction* towards which a motion is tending; answering the questions *where? where to? whither? how far?* as,

Un homme **est** à la mer !	Les fleuves **vont à** la mer.
Le soldat n'**était** pas à son poste.	Le soldat **se rendit à** son poste.
Il **est** toujours à cheval sur l'étiquette.	Nous **remontâmes à** cheval.
	To stand on ceremony.

Obs. If the complement is a *Personal Pronoun*, then the *Disjunctive* form (§ 35, 3) must be used; compare—

DISJUNCTIVE.	CONJUNCTIVE.
Elle **vint à moi,** *She came* **to me.**	Elle **me donna** le livre, *She gave the book* **to me.**
Je m'adresse **à eux,** *I apply* **to them.**	Je **leur** écris, *I am writing* **to them.**

The reason is that in the second column **to** denotes the *Remoter Object*—the genuine Latin Dative Case—whilst in the first column **to** indicates an Adverbial Relation of *place*, a relation in which the Conjunctive form cannot be used.

C.—The Noun-Object or Noun-Complement governed by "de."

§ 14. General Principles.—The multifarious meanings in which **de** is used may all be traced back to the fundamental notions of *separation* and *origin*. For whilst on one hand the idea of *separation* naturally leads to that of *privation, want, protection from*, etc., on the other hand the notion of *origin* is closely related to that of *cause*, both moral and physical. Now cause in the *concrete* suggests the *instrument* and *material* with which—and these again the *manner* in which—an action is done; whilst the notion of *cause*, in the *abstract*, is akin to that of *motive*, i.e. cause arising from the affections of the mind; as, *joy, grief, fear, anger, shame, pride, gratitude, repentance*, etc.* Hence **de** not only corresponds to the Latin *de*—from which it is derived —and to the Latin *Genitive* case, but it also does duty for the Latin *Ablative* and for *ex* and *a* (*ab, abs*). As compared with English it answers to the *Possessive* case, and to the prepositions *of, from, with, by, at* (occasionally also *against, on, for*, and others).

* "In many examples it is not easy to say whether the Ablative ought to be referred to cause, instrument, matter, or manner."—Kennedy's *Latin Grammar*, § 143.

N.B.—For Nouns with **de** qualifying other Nouns on which they depend, see § 5.

Special Rules.—

§ 15. (I.) **de** is used in answer to the questions *whence? where from?* after verbs denoting—

(*a*) *Separation, Privation, Want;* as,

Les Pyrénées **séparent** la France **de** l'Espagne.	*The Pyrenees divide France from Spain.*
Mon opinion **diffère de** la vôtre.	*My opinion differs from yours.*
J'aime beaucoup ce vin, je ne puis **m'en passer.**	*I like this wine, I cannot do without it.*
Il s'en **faut de** beaucoup.	*It wants a great deal.*
Elle ne **manque de** rien.	*She is not in want.*

So after *Suterlatives:* Plus haut **de** deux pieds.

Obs. 1. Cognate with the notion of *separation* is that of *protection against*, hence the use of **de** after Verbs of *defending, protecting;* as,

Dieu me garde **de** tels amis.	*May God preserve me from such friends.*
Ce rideau me garantira **du** soleil.	*This curtain will screen me from the sun.*

(*b*) the *Starting-point, Origin, Extraction*—

(1) *in Space;* as,

D'où **vient**-il?—Il **vient de** Paris.†	*Where does he come from?—From Paris.*
La Seine est **sortie de** son lit.	*The Seine has overflowed its banks.*
Le français **dérive du** latin.	*French is derived from Latin.*
Il **descend d'**une famille royale.	*He comes from a royal family.*
Ces vers **sont d'**Homère.	*These verses are from Homer.*

† Comp. Lat. Abl.: Dyonysius Platonem Athenis arcessivit.

Thus also with Adjectives of the same meaning; as,

Les Francs étaient **originaires de** Germanie.

Obs. Akin to the idea of *origin* is that of *receiving, taking, borrowing from;* as,

Les agréments qu'il a **reçus de** la nature.

(2) *in Time;* as,

Il y a **de** cela trois semaines.	*Three weeks ago.*
Elle partira **de** lundi en huit.	*She will leave Monday week.*

§ 16. (II.) **de** is used in answer to the questions *wherewith? whereof? whereat? owing to what?* after Intransitive Verbs to denote—

(*a*) the *cause of feelings or emotions—Joy, Grief, Fear, Anger,* and the like ; as,

L'homme de bien se **réjouit du** bonheur d'autrui.	*The righteous man rejoices at other people's happiness.*
Il s'**afflige** d'une chose **dont** il devrait se **féliciter.**	*He grieves at that on which he ought to congratulate himself.*
Elle **rougit de** colère.	*She coloured with anger.*
Il s'**offense de** rien.	*He takes offence at anything.*
Je me **repens de** ma faute.	*I repent of my fault.*

Comp. the Lat. Abl. of *cause:* Vir bonus gaudet felicitate aliena. Fruor otio. Gloriari victoria sua.—So also the Gen.: Me pœnitet culpæ meæ. Miserere pauperum.

Obs. Under this head may be classed the use of **de** to denote *in respect of what* an action happens ; as,

C'en est fait de nous.	*It is all over with us.*
Il s'agit du salut de l'État.	*The welfare of the state is at stake.*
Il vous faut changer d'habit.	*You must change your dress.*

Thus with Adjectives :—**Sain d'**esprit et **de** corps.

Comp. Lat. Abl.: Virtute et doctrina excellere.

(*b*) *Recognition, Praise, Accusation,* and their opposites ; as,

On l'**accusa d'**un crime honteux.	*He was charged with a disgraceful crime.*
Vous **honorez du** titre de sage un homme qui le mérite bien peu.	*You honour a very undeserving man with the name of a sage.*
On le **traita de** fou.	*They called him a madman.*

Comp. Lat. Gen. : Insimulare aliquem furti.

(*c*) the *Instrument* or *Means* by which an action or state of being is produced ; as,

Le berger l'**atteignit d'**un coup de pierre.	*The shepherd hit him with a stone.*
Elle nous **fit signe de** la main.	*She beckoned to us.*
Le lièvre ne **dormait** que **d'**un œil.	*The hare used to sleep with but one eye shut.*
Jouer du piano, **de** la guitare. (Comp. § 13, *a.*)	*To play the piano, guitar, etc.*

Obs. 1. After a Verb in the *Passive* Voice, **de** or **par** may be used to denote the *agent,* with this broad distinction that with Verbs denoting

a *feeling or disposition* **de,** with those denoting a *physical or mental operation* **par,** is preferred; as,

Il est **aimé** et **honoré de** ses concitoyens.

L'Amérique fut **découverte par** Christophe Colomb.

Thus :—*blâmé, loué, honoré, aimé, haï,* take **de;** whilst *battu, trouvé, cherché, fabriqué,* etc., take **par.**

Suivi, précédé, accompagné, and the like, though denoting *physical actions,* exceptionally take **de :—Suivi d'**une nombreuse escorte.

Comp. Lat. Ablative : Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones se tutantur (Cicero).

Obs. 2. The use of **de** to denote the *instrument* is limited to a certain number of idiomatic Adverbial Phrases : the following quotations will best show its special use as compared with **à** (§ 13, *a*) and **avec.**

Cela est **écrit de sa** main.	*That is in his handwriting.*
Cela est **écrit au** crayon.	*That is pencil writing.*
Cela est **écrit avec un** crayon.	*That was written with a pencil.*
Être **de sang-froid.**	*To be in cold blood.*
Il lui a parlé **avec son sang-froid ordinaire.**	*He spoke to him with his usual coolness.*
Mesurer des yeux.	*To scan : to eye from head to foot.*
Mesurer à l'aune, **au** mètre.	*To measure by the ell, by the yard.*

It is impossible to draw a hard and fast line between the uses of **de,** à, and **avec,** denoting the *instrument;* the few examples given above will, however, tend to show that (1) **de** rather denotes the *agent*—very often a part of the body; (2) à the technical *process,* according to which any handiwork is performed; whilst (3) **avec** indicates the *instrument* itself with which it is done.

(*d*) *Matter, Contents,* after verbs of *Providing, Feeding, Filling, Covering, Adorning,* and the like; as,

On l'a **pourvu de** tout ce qu'il lui faut.	*He has been provided with everything he wants.*
Le roi était **vêtu de** ses habits royaux.	*The king was robed in his royal garments.*
Les Alpes sont **couvertes de** neige éternelle.	*The Alps are covered with everlasting snow.*

L'écureuil se **nourrit de** noisettes.	*The squirrel lives on wood-nuts.*
Les bergères **se couronnèrent de** fleurs.	*The shepherdesses bedecked themselves with flowers.*

Comp. the Lat. Abl.: Sol cuncta suâ luce illustrat et complet. Circumdare urbem muro. Implere dolium vino. Vescor pane.

§ 17. (III.) de is used in answer to the question *whereof?* after verbs of *Perceiving*, *Recollecting*, *Informing*, *Speaking*, and the like (this class is largely made up of Reflexive Verbs); as,

Je m'**aperçois de** mon erreur.	*I perceive my mistake.*
Souviens-toi **de** tes promesses. Je m'**en souviendrai.**	*Remember your promises.—I shall remember them.*
Il ne **se doutait de** rien.	*He suspected nothing.*
L'affaire **dont** nous **parlons** est très sérieuse.	*The affair of which we are speaking is very serious.*

Comp. the Lat. Gen.: Vivorum memini nec possum oblivisci mortuorum.

§ 18. (IV.) de is used to express the *Duty*, *Office*, *Token*, *Concern*, *Part*, *Property*, after the verb être; as,

Il **est de** mon devoir d'obéir.	*It is my duty to obey.*
Ce mot **est du style** poétique.	*This word belongs to the diction of poetry.*

Comp. the Lat.: Cujusvis hominis est errare.

§ 19. (V.) de is also used—quite irrespective of the government of a Verb or Adjective—in many adverbial phrases, answering the questions *when? how? out of what?* as,

De bonne heure; de grand matin.	*Early; very early.*
De temps en temps.	*From time to time.*
De jour; de nuit.	*By day; by night.*

Comp. Lat.: De die; de nocte.

Du vivant de...	*In the lifetime of...*
De tout mon cœur.	*With all my heart.*
De gaieté de cœur.	*Out of sheer wantonness.*
De cette manière, de la sorte.	*In this manner.*
De bonne foi.	*In good faith.*
De force.	*By force, etc.*

ADJECTIVES.

I.—Place of Adjectives.

Résumé.

General Principles.—Place of Adjectives depending on *meaning, emphasis, diction, euphony.*

Special Rules.—Adjectives placed *after* the Noun if

(1) derived from Proper Nouns; (2) derived from Participles; (3) used substantively; (4) denoting physical qualities; (5) followed by a complement; (6) longer than the Noun qualified.

Adjectives changing their meaning according to their position.

Adjectives only exceptionally changing their meaning according to their position.

---

§ 20. General Principles.—In accordance with the characteristic proclivity of French for placing the qualifying (limiting) term *after* the term qualified, as—la plume *d'acier*, the *steel* pen; la salle *à manger*, the *dining* room, etc., most French Adjectives are generally placed *after* the Noun they qualify; only a few are invariably placed *before it;* nearly all, however, admit of being placed either *before or after*, according as *meaning, emphasis, diction*, or *euphony*, may direct; for the very same Adjective which in the language of *reason, judgment*, or *experience*, is regularly placed *after* the Noun, will, in the diction of *poetry, imagination*, or *emotion*, take its place *before* the Noun. Thus an Adjective is put

(*a*) *after the Noun*, if used as an *attribute, necessary* for limiting the meaning of a Noun in the particular instance in question, and denoting an *accidental* or *accessory* quality which does not pertain to the whole class of beings expressed by the Noun;

(*b*) *before the Noun*, if used as an *Ornamental Epithet*, intended for picturesque effect, and denoting a quality naturally associated or cognate with the whole class of persons or things spoken of. Compare:—

La couleur **verte.**	Sous la **verte** feuillée.
Un chemin **étroit.**	Une **étroite** liaison (*alliance*).
Un homme **cruel.**	Le **cruel** tyran.
Une couleur **sombre.**	Le **sombre** désespoir.
Une action **criminelle.**	Ce **criminel** attentat.

Thus again, in saying: the *virtuous* man, the Adjective *virtuous* limits the Noun *man* to *distinguish* it from those to which that attribute does not belong, hence—l'homme *vertueux;* but in saying: *virtuous* Aristides, the Adjective is not used to distinguish Aristides from other men of that name, but simply to *characterize* the man, hence—le *vertueux* Aristide. Compare also—L'Arabie *heureuse* (as distinguished from l'Arabie *pétrée*, or *déserte*), with—*Heureuse* enfance! (not to distinguish it from any other childhood—for childhood is *the* happy age—but expressing as it does an essential quality originating in the very nature of that age). On that principle we may correctly render—

Un ami *fidèle*, by—*a friend that is faithful.*
Un *fidèle* ami, by—*a trusty friend, indeed!*

The Adjective in the latter case denoting a quality ascribed from a *subjective* point of view, *i.e.*, as the expression of our *personal emotion*, be it *love, hatred, admiration, indignation*, etc.

§ 21. SPECIAL RULES.—Subject to the general laws laid down above, an Adjective in French is placed

(*a*) as a Rule, *after* the Noun, if

(1) derived from a *Proper Noun;* as,

La langue **grecque.**
Le monde **parisien.**
Le parti **bonapartiste.**
L'église **anglicane,** etc.

(2) derived from a *Participle* (Present or Past); as,

Une nouvelle **alarmante.**
Une raison **concluante.**
L'ordre **accoutumé.**
Le pont **suspendu**

(*b*) exceptionally *before* the Noun—

in *poetic diction* and *figurative language* generally:—

Témoin nous que punit la **romaine** avarice
(Lafontaine.)

Adieu, **charmant** pays de France. (Béranger.)
Son **prétendu** droit. (Academy.)
C'est un **rusé** compère.

(3) used *Substantively;* as,

Un poète **philosophe.**
Les hirondelles sont des oiseaux **voyageurs.**

(4) denoting *Physical* or *Accidental* qualities, *i.e. Colour, Shape, Taste,* etc.; as,

Des cheveux **blonds.**
Une boîte **carrée.**
Une table **ronde.**
De l'encre **noire.**
Des amandes **amères.**
Un fruit **mûr.**

Et nous baisions ses **blonds** cheveux...(Chateaubriand.)
Une **verte** réprimande.
De **noirs** pressentiments.
D'**amères** regrets.
De **mûres** réflexions.

(5) *followed by a Complement;* as,

Une proposition **digne de considération.**
De l'eau **bonne à boire.**

if qualified by a *short Adverb;* as,

Un **si beau** spectacle.

(6) much longer (of more syllables) than the Noun, especially also if ending in *able, ible, ique, esque; ic, al, el, if, eur;** as,

Humeur **incompatible.**
Crieur **public.**
Système **continental.**
Figure **allégorique.**
Ballon **captif.**
Commerce **extérieur.**
Mouvement **perpétuel,** etc.

N.B.—The following Adjectives of one or two syllables generally precede the Noun:—*bon, beau, grand, gros, long, court, haut, sot, vieux, jeune, joli, mauvais, moindre;* as,

Un **bon** point; un **bel** homme; les **hautes** montagnes; un **grand** pays; le **vieux** célibataire; quel **joli** chien; un **mauvais** quart d'heure; au **moindre** bruit il s'éveille; un **sot** orgueil.

* Most Adjectives ending thus being *technical* terms, must on that account alone stand after the Noun. (See General Principles, § 20.)

Obs. The capricious laws of *euphony* very often overrule all other considerations in determining the place of an Adjective; thus—astres *brillants*, but—*brillante* lumière.

§ 22. *List of Adjectives that change their meaning according as they are placed before or after the Noun :—*

Une preuve certaine, *a certain (positive) proof.*	Une certaine quantité, *a certain (given) quantity.*
Une étoffe chère, *an expensive stuff.*	Mon cher ami, *my dear friend.*
Des moyens différents, *diverse means.*	Différents moyens, *several (sundry) means.*
Une clef fausse, *a wrong key.*	Une fausse clef, *a skeleton key.*
Un homme franc, *a candid man.*	Un franc coquin, *a downright scamp.*
Un homme galant, *a ladies' man.*	Un galant homme, *a gentleman.*
Un homme honnête, *a civil man.*	Un honnête homme, *an honest man.*
Un homme malhonnête, *a rude man.*	Un malhonnête homme, *a dishonest man.*
Un auteur pauvre, *an indigent author.*	Un pauvre auteur, *an indifferent author.*
Un conte plaisant, *an amusing tale.*	Un plaisant conte, *an absurd tale.*
Une chemise propre, *a clean shirt.*	Une propre chemise, *one's own shirt.*
Un mot seul, *a word alone.*	Un seul mot, *a single word (only).*
Un conte vrai (véritable), *a true tale.*	Un vrai conte, *a regular story.*

§ 23. *List of Adjectives that change their meaning before or after certain Nouns only :—*

Un homme brave, *a brave man.*	Un brave homme, *a worthy man.*
Un homme grand, *a tall man.*	Un grand homme, *a man of genius.*
Une dame grande, *a tall lady.*	Une grande dame, *a lady of rank.*
L'air mauvais, *vicious look.*	Le mauvais air, *vulgar appearance.*
Un homme petit, *a mean man.*	Un petit homme, *a short man.*
Une voix commune, *a common (vulgar) voice.*	D'une commune voix, *unanimously.*

Des vers méchants, *wicked verses.*	De méchants vers, *wretched verses.*
L'année dernière, *last year.*	La dernière année, *the last year.*
La semaine dernière, *last week.*	La dernière semaine de l'an, *the last week of the year.*
Un habit nouveau, *a new-fashioned coat.*	Un nouvel habit, *another coat.*
Un habit neuf, *a newly made coat.*	

II.—Agreement of Adjectives.

§ 24. An Adjective agrees in Gender and Number with the Noun or Pronoun it qualifies; if it refers to two or more Nouns it is put in the *Plural*, and if these happen to be of different genders, it is put in the *Masculine Plural;* as,

Cette **ancienne** église est **flanquée** de **hautes** tours **carrées**.
La langue et la littérature **latines**.*
Il avait la tête et les pieds **nus**.

* When two or more Adjectives limit the same Noun, the following different constructions are admissible :—

La langue grecque et la langue latine.
Les langues grecque et latine.
La langue grecque et (la) latine.

Obs. 1. The Adjectives *demi* and *nu* are

(*a*) *variable*, if standing *after* the Noun :—	(*b*) *invariable*, if standing *before* the Noun :—
Les "blue-coat boys" marchent tête **nue**.	Ce gamin est toujours **nu**-tête et **nu**-pieds.
Il est une heure et **demie**.	Dans une **demi**-heure.

Obs. 2. Cette femme a l'**air bon**. *This woman has a good-natured look.*

Cette **proposition** n'a pas l'air (= ne paraît pas être) **sérieuse**. *This proposal does not seem to be serious.*

Obs. 3. Adjectives of colour derived from Nouns, and composite Adjectives of colour remain invariable :—

Des rubans **ponceau** (*bright red*) ; des cheveux **châtain clair** (*auburn*).
Ces rubans sont d'un **beau couleur de feu** (*flame-coloured*).

N.B.—Couleur thus compounded is masculine.

§ 25. III.—Government of Adjectives.

N.B.—For Adjectives which require their complement with **à** or **de**, see §§ 11—19.

(*a*) *En* is required after Adjectives denoting *Fulness, Abundance:—riche, fécond, fertile, abondant, fort*, etc.; as,

C'est un pays **riche en** blés, **en** vins, **en** sel.
Cet orateur est **fort* en** gueule.

* But in the sense of *clever*—Elle est très forte **sur** le piano. Être fort **aux** échecs.

(*b*) *Envers* is required by Adjectives denoting *Feeling, Disposition:—bon, affable, charitable, généreux, juste*, etc.; as,

Il s'est montré **libéral envers** les gens de mérite.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Résumé.

Personal Pronouns divided into (I.) *Conjunctive*, and (II.) *Disjunctive*.

I. *Conjunctive Personal Pronouns;* their position before or after the Verb—

(*a*) used as Subject; (*b*) used as Object;
(*c*) when two of them (Dir. and Ind. Obj.), accompany a Verb—

(1) 1st and 2nd Person before the 3rd; (2) Direct Object in 3rd Person before Indirect Object in 3rd Person.

Le used as (*a*) Conjunctive Pronoun; (*b*) as a Neutral Pronoun.

En and **Y**: General Rule.—Their origin and chief functions.

Special Rules.—**En** used instead of (*a*) *de là;* (*b*) *de lui, d'elle*, etc.; (*c*) *de ceci, de cela;* (*d*) a Noun Partitive; (*e*) a Possessive Adjective. **En** used (*f*) idiomatically.

Y used instead of (*a*) *là;* (*b*) *à lui, à elle*, etc.; (*c*) *à ceci, à cela;* **Y** used (*d*) idiomatically.

II. *Disjunctive Personal Pronouns*, used—

(*a*) absolutely, (1) *in answer to a question;* (2) *in comparisons;* (3) before Relative Pronouns; (4) *for emphasis;* (5) as part of a Composite Subject;

(*b*) as Complements or Indirect Objects—(1) with Prepositions; (2) after *c'est, ce sont;* (3) as Remoter Object of Reflexive Verbs.

Soi, *Disjunctive* form of the Reflexive Pronoun **se**—
(*a*) referring to an Indefinite Subject; (*b*) in contradistinction to *lui*.

§ 26. Personal Pronouns are subdivided into—

(I.) **Conjunctive** Personal Pronouns, used in immediate connection with the Verb, either as Subject or Object :—

Sing.:—je, me ; tu, te ; il, le ; elle, la ;
Plur.:—nous ; vous ; ils, les ; elles, les ; } se ; en ; y.

(II.) **Disjunctive** Personal Pronouns, used absolutely, *i.e.*, standing alone or governed by a Preposition :—

moi, toi, lui, elle ; nous, vous, eux, elles, soi.

I.—Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.

§ 27. (*a*) Used as a *Subject*, a Conjunctive Personal Pronoun is placed *before* the Verb, except in (1) interrogative, (2) optative, (3) conditional, (4) parenthetical sentences, and (5) after the Adverbs **aussi**, *accordingly ;* **à peine**, *hardly, no sooner ;* **au (du) moins**, *at least ;* **à plus forte raison**, *so much the more ;* **encore**, *besides, and yet ;* **en vain**, *in vain ;* **peut-être**, *perhaps ;* as,

(1) Quand viendrez-**vous ?**—Et votre ami, quand viendra-t-**il ?**

(2) Dussé-**je** mourir ! (§ 79).

(3) Un homme vous flatte-t-**il**, ne vous y fiez pas.

(4) Cela, dit-**il**, est mon affaire.

(5) Ces étoffes sont belles, aussi coûtent-**elles** cher.

A peine eut-**il** prononcé ces paroles.

Compare the English—Hardly had **he**... ; and German—Kaum hatte **er**....

Obs. English Personal Pronouns of the 3rd Person often retain their original *demonstrative* character in which case they must be rendered by *celui, ceux, celle(s)*, or an adequate Noun-equivalent :—

He *who is contented is happy.*	**Celui** qui est content est heureux.
He *with the cloven foot.*	**L'homme** au pied fourchu.

§ 28. (*b*) Used as *Object*, a Conjunctive Personal Pronoun is placed—

(1) *before* the Verb, if this Verb is in any Mood save the *Imperative used affirmatively ;* as,

(2) *after* the Verb, only if this Verb is in the *Imperative used affirmatively ;* as,

Il **me** regarde. Ne **me** regarde pas.	Regarde-**moi.***
Elle **se** dépêche. Ne **te** dépêche pas.	Dépêche-**toi.***
Nous **nous** dépêchons.	Dépêchons-**nous.**
Ne **vous** dépêchez pas.	Dépêchez-**vous.**

* Placed after the Verb, **me, te,** are strengthened into **moi, toi,** except with **en** and **y** :—Donne **m'en** une.

With Compound Tenses *before the auxiliary* Verb :—

On **m'**a trompé. Il **s'**est lavé.

Observe also the Position of the Personal Pronoun in

(*a*) *Interrogative* Sentences :—

Me regarde-t-il ? *or,* Est-ce qu'il **me** regarde ?
Cet homme **me** regarde-t-il ? *or,* Est-ce que cet homme **me** regarde ?

(*β*) *Negative* Sentences :—

Il ne **me** regarde pas.
Elle ne **m'**a rien promis.

(*γ*) Sentences *both interrogative and negative* :—

Ne **me** regarde-t-il pas ? *or,* Est-ce qu'il ne **me** regarde pas ?

§ 29. (*c*) when both the *Direct* and *Indirect* Object of a Verb are Conjunctive Personal Pronouns, they both stand before the Verb, and in the following order :—

(1) the 1st or 2nd Person *before* the 3rd Person ; as,

me, te, nous, vous, } *before* { **le, la, lui, y, en. les, leur,**

(2) if both Pronouns are in the 3rd Person, then the

Direct Object— **le, la ; les,** } *before* { *Indirect Object*— **lui, leur ; y ; en.**

The reflexive **se**, however, whether Direct or Indirect, always stands *first.*

Again, **lui, leur**, before **y, en** ; and **y** before **en** ; always excepting with Verbs in the *Imperative used affirmatively;*

in which case the Direct Object of *all* persons precedes the Indirect Object.

The above Rules give the following combinations :—

(*a*)

1.	**me le,**	**me la,**	**me les;**	**m'y;**	**m'en.**
	nous le,	**nous la,**	**nous les;**	**nous y;**	**nous en.**
2.	**te le,**	**te la,**	**te les;**	**t'y;**	**t'en.**
	vous le,	**vous la,**	**vous les;**	**vous y;**	**vous en.**
3.	**se le,**	**se la,**	**se les;**	**s'y;**	**s'en.**

(*β*)

se le,	**le lui,**	**le leur;**	**s'y;**	**s'en.**		
se la,	**la lui,**	**la leur;**	**l'y;**	**l'en;**	**lui en;**	**y en**
se les,	**les lui,**	**les leur;**	**les y;**	**les en;**	**leur en;**	

Affirmative and Interrogative.	*Negative and Interrogative.*
Il **me le** fera savoir.	Il ne **me le** fera pas savoir.
Me le fera-t-il savoir ?	Ne **me le** fera-t-il pas savoir ?
Je **le lui** ai déjà dit.	Vous ne **le lui** avez pas encore dit.
Le lui avez-vous déjà dit ?	Ne **le lui** avez-vous pas encore dit ?
Il **s'en** souvient parfaitement.	Il ne **s'en** souvient pas du tout.
S'en souvient-il encore ?	Ne **s'en** souvient-il plus ?

IMPERATIVE.

Negative (*Rule*).	*Affirmative* (*Exception*).
Ne **le lui** refusez pas !	Refusez-**le-lui.**
Ne **vous en** occupez plus !	Occupez-**vous-en.**

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES.

Vous rappelez-vous cet incident ?—	Non, je ne **me le** rappelle plus.
Se souviennent-elles de leur échec ?—	Non, elles ne **s'en** souviennent pas.
Ces religieux ne **se** refusent-ils pas toutes les jouissances ?—	Oui, ils **se les** refusent.
M'y accompagnerez-vous ce soir ?—	Oui, si vous allez à l'opéra, menez-**y-moi.**

Obs. 1. When a Verb has for its completion an Infinitive with an Object-Pronoun, the Pronoun is placed

(1) before the *Infinitive* if the latter is reflexive and the first Verb is in a Compound tense ; as,

Nous avons cru **nous** tromper.

(2) Before the *first Verb* if this Verb is one of the following :—*faire, laisser, entendre, sentir, voir ;* as,

Je **le lui** ferai dire. Nous **le leur** avons vu faire.

(3) Before *either* in all other cases ; as,

Il **vous** ira voir bientôt ; *or,* Il ira **vous** voir

The usage in Modern French is in favour of the latter position.

§ 30. **Le** used in reference to an antecedent may be

(*a*) a *Conjunctive* Pronoun agreeing with its antecedent if the latter is a *Noun* or an *Adjective* used *substantively ;* as,

Etes-vous **la** directrice de cette école ?—Oui, je **la** suis.
Sont-ce **les** délégués ?—Oui, ce **les** sont.

(*b*) a *Neutral* (unchangeable) Pronoun, if its antecedent is an *Adjective,* a *Noun* used *adjectively,* or a *Phrase ;* as,

Etes-vous malade ?— Oui, je
Etes-vous directrice ?— **le** suis.
Ils ne sont pas habiles, mais ils **le** * deviendront.

* In this case **le** is often the exact equivalent to the English *so.*

Obs. **Le** frequently occurs *redundantly* in idiomatic phrases ; as,

L'emporter sur, *to get the better of.*
Le céder à, *to be inferior to.*
La garder bonne à, *to owe a grudge.*
Se le tenir pour dit, *to take the hint.*
La donner belle à..., *to give...a fair chance.*
L'échapper belle, *to have a narrow escape.*

Compare—Avez-vous ces livres ?—Oui, je **les** ai, *I have* **them.**
Avez-vous des livres ?—Oui, j'**en ai,** *I have* **some.**

'En' and 'Y'.

§ 31. General Rule.—**En** and **y**, originally Adverbs (from Lat. *inde* and *ibi*), have gradually assumed the functions of Personal Pronouns (in the Genitive and Dative case) :—**en** instead of **de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles ; de ceci, de cela,** *of him, of her, etc.;* **y** instead of **à lui, à elle, à eux, à elles ; à ceci, à cela,** *to him, to her, etc.,* especially with reference to *Things,* though not unfrequently also with reference to *Persons* :—

Te souviens-tu **de** ton **ami?** —Oui, je me souviens **de lui.**

Te souviens-tu **de** notre **aventure?**—Oui, je m'**en** souviens.

Pensez-vous **à Charles** ou à **Louise?**—Je ne pense ni **à lui** ni **à elle.**

Songez-vous **à** vos **affaires?**—Oui, j'**y** songe sérieusement.

§ 32. SPECIAL RULES.—**En** is used—

(*a*) instead of **de là**, to denote (in accordance with its primitive meaning), *the Starting-point* or *Origin*:—

Vient-il de la **ville?**—Oui, il **en** vient.

Does he come from town?—Yes, he does.

(*b*) instead of **de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles,** with reference to an antecedent denoting a *Thing*, or, though less frequently, a *Person*:—

(1) with *Verbs* requiring **de** before their complement; as,

Vous souciez-vous **de** ce **projet?**—Non, je ne m'**en** soucie pas du tout.

Do you care for this project?—No, I don't care **for it** *at all.*

Loin de cacher son dessein, il s'**en** vante.

So far from concealing his design, he boasts **of it.**

(2) with *Adjectives* requiring **de** before their complement; as,

Est-il satisfait **de** leur conduite?—Oui, il **en** est satisfait.

Is he satisfied with their behaviour?—Yes, he is (*satisfied* **with it**).

Obs. En with a *negation* = **aucun,** *none*:—
A-t-il du pain?—Il n'**en** a **pas.** *He has not* (*got*) *any.*

(*c*) instead of **de ceci, de cela,** with reference to a *Noun* or a *whole sentence mentioned before*; as,

Donnez-moi **cela,** j'**en** ai besoin.

Give me that, I want it.

La vie s'écoule sans que nous nous **en** apercevions.

Life passes without our noticing **it.**

Obs. En may refer to something mentioned after, but only if this is contained in a *co-ordinate* clause:—

N'**en** doutez pas, ils reviendront. But *never*—N'en doutez pas **qu'**ils reviendront.

(*d*) *Partitively*, with reference to a Noun mentioned before, either—

(1) with Adjectives, Numerals, Adverbs of *Quantity;* as,

A-t-il **des amis ?**—Oui, il **en** a de très **dévoués.**	*Has he any friends ?—Yes, he has very faithful ones.*
Avez-vous une plume à me prêter ?—**En** voici **une** !—Donnez m'**en** une **autre.**—**En** voici une plus **molle.**	*Have you a pen to lend me ?—There is one !—Give me another (one).—There is a softer one.*

or (2) *standing alone :—*

Avez-vous **de l'encre ?**—Oui, j'**en** ai.	*Have you any ink ?—Yes, I have (some).*
Vous voulez de l'argent !—**En** voilà !	*You want money !—There is some !*
Il a élevé plus de **monuments** que d'autres n'**en** ont détruit.	*He has raised more monuments than have been destroyed by others.*

(*e*) with the Definite Article, instead of a *Possessive Adjective* referring to an Antecedent denoting a *Thing :—*

Subject :—**le (la, les)**.....**en**
Object :—**en**.....**le (la, les)** } instead of—**son, sa, ses ; leur(s).**

Compare—

The Antecedent a Thing :—	*The Antecedent a Person :—*
Cette **affaire** est délicate ; **le** succès **en** est douteux.	Cet **écolier** est paresseux ; **son** succès est douteux.
La durée des **institutions** de Lycurgue **en** prouva **la** sagesse.	Quoiqu'**il** soit pauvre, soyons **ses** amis.

(*f*) *Idiomatically—*

Où en sommes-nous ?	*How do matters stand with us ?*
Où en sommes-nous restés ?	*Where did we leave off ?*
Il en est ainsi (de même) de...	*It is thus with...*
Il n'en est rien.	*Nothing of the sort.*
S'en prendre à...	*To lay the blame on...*
S'en tenir à...	*To stick to, to rest satisfied with...*
N'en pouvoir plus.	*To be worn out.*
Je n'en peux mais.	*It is not my fault.*
C'en est fait de...(Lat. actum est de...)	*It is all over with...*

En finir (il faut en finir).	*To have done with.*
En imposer à...	*To impose upon...*

For more examples, see Second Year, Lessons on the Verbs *aller, venir, tenir, vouloir, croire, prendre.*

With *Comparatives*, in the sense of *for it, on that account*:—

S'il a fait cette action, je l'**en** estime **davantage.**	*If he has done that I only esteem him the more for it.*
Le blanc à côté du noir, **en** a **plus** d'éclat.	*White by the side of black, is all the more brilliant.*

§ 33. **Y** is used—

(*a*) instead of **là**, in accordance with its original meaning (Lat. *ibi*), to refer to a *place mentioned before*:—

(1) with Verbs of *Rest*, answering the question *where?* as,

Est-il encore à **Paris ?**—Non, il n'**y** est plus.	*Is he still in Paris?—No, he is no longer there.*

(2) with Verbs of *Motion*, answering the question *whither? where...to?* as,

Irez-vous à l'Exposition ?—Non, je n'**y** retournerai plus, j'**y** ai déjà été.	*Shall you go to the Exhibition?—No, I shall not return to it, I have already been there.*

(*b*) instead of **à lui, à elle; à eux, à elles,** with reference to an Antecedent denoting a *Thing* * : Compare—

The Antecedent a Thing:—	*The Antecedent a Person*:—
Quant à sa **lettre,** j'**y** répondrai demain.	Si votre **frère** m'écrit, je **lui** répondrai.
Y consentez-vous ?—Non, je m'**y** oppose.	*Do you consent to it?—No, I object to it.*
N'**y** faites pas attention !	*Never mind!*

* With *se fier, penser, songer, croire,* **y** is generally made to refer to *persons* also :—

Quant à cet homme équivoque, ne vous **y** fiez pas.

(*c*) instead of **à ceci, à cela** ; as,

Il m'a fait faux bond ; je m'**y** attendais.	*He has given me the slip; I expected as much.*
Partez, j'**y** consens.	*Go, I consent to it.*

Obs. **Y** frequently stands for Pronouns governed by Prepositions other than **à** ; as, **en, dans, sur** :—

Insistez **sur** ce point.—J'**y** insisterai.

(*d*) *Idiomatically*—

Il **y** a ; il n'**y** a pas.	*There is ; there is not.*
Il **y** va de l'honneur (de la vie).	*Honour (life) is at stake.*
Je n'**y** suis pour personne.	*I am not at home to anybody.*
Vous **y** êtes (vous n'**y** êtes pas).	*You have (not) hit it.*
On **y** va, Monsieur !	*Coming, Sir !*

IMPORTANT OBSERVATION TO **en** and **y**. As many Verbs and Adjectives in French take **de** or **à**, which in English do not take *of* or *to*, but another, or no, Preposition—as, couvrir **de**, to cover *with* ; jouir **de**, to *enjoy* ; croire **à**, to believe *in*, etc., it follows that **en** and **y**, according to § 32 and 33, *b*, *c*, not only answer to *of it*, *to it* (*them*), but also to *it*, *them*, standing alone, or governed by any other Preposition that the English Verb or Adjective may require ; as,

En êtes-vous satisfait ?	*Are you pleased* **with it ?**
Il **en** est responsable.	*He is responsible* **for it.**
Ils s'**en** moquent.	*They laugh* **at it.**
J'**y** ai réfléchi.	*I have considered* **it.**

II.—Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

These are used either—

§ 34. (*a*) *Absolutely ; i.e.*, standing alone :—

(1) in answer to a *Question* ; as,

Qui va là ?—**Moi.**	*Who goes there ?—I.*

(2) as the second member of a *Comparison* ; as,

Elle est plus affable que **lui.**	*She is more affable than he.*

(3) as the Antecedent to a *Relative Pronoun* ; as,

Eux, qui se sont tant distingués.	*They, who distinguished themselves so much.*

Obs. Thus also when the antecedent is separated from its Verb by a qualifying word or phrase, especially **seul, aussi, même** ; as,

Eux seuls sont coupables.—**Moi aussi** je viendrai.

(4) for the sake of *Contrast* or *Emphasis ;* as,

Toi, tu n'iras pas !	*As for you, you shall not go !*
Moi, favoriser les efforts des ennemis ?	*Do you think me capable of favouring the efforts of the enemy ?*

(5) as part of a *Composite Subject* or *Object ;* as,

Son père, sa mère et **moi** (nous *) allâmes à sa rencontre.	*His father, his mother, and I went to meet him.*
Ni **vous** ni **moi** ne le pouvons.	*Neither you nor I can do it.*

* In that case a Conjunctive Pronoun generally is used to sum up the several subjects (see also § 61).

§ 35. (*b*) as a *Complement* or Indirect *Object :*—

(1) with all *Prepositions ;* as,

Il est **chez lui**.	*He is at home.*
Ceci est **à eux**.	*This belongs to them.*

Obs. Thus also in *Apposition to* a Conjunctive Pronoun (Comp. *a*, 5) :—

Il **nous** paraît, **à moi** et à mes compagnons, que. ..

(2) after the Impersonal phrases—c'est, ce sont ; as,

Ce n'est pas **moi**.	*It is not me.*
Ce sont **eux** (§ 60).	*It is they.*

(3) as the *Indirect Object* of a *Reflexive Verb ;* as,

Je me fie **à lui**, mais pas **à toi**. *I trust him, but not you.*

Obs. 1. Thus also with Verbs other than reflexive, if the Direct Object is in the 1st or 2nd Person—

Je **vous** recommande **à lui**, *and never*—Je vous lui recommande.

Obs. 2. As after Verbs of *Motion*, and a few others, **à** is not the sign of the Dative Case, the use of *Conjunctive Pronouns*, which can only do service for *Subjects* or *Objects*, is not admissible after such Verbs ; hence the *Disjunctive* form of Personal Pronouns, preceded by **à**, must be used ; these Verbs are :—**accoutumer à**, *to accustom to ;* **en appeler à**, *to appeal to ;* **courir (accourir) à**, *to hasten to ;* **penser (songer) à**, *to think of ;* **renoncer à**, *to renounce ;* **venir à**, *to come to ;* as,

Il **vint à moi*** tout effrayé.
Est-ce **à lui** ou **à elle** que vous pensez ?

* Il me vint... can only mean : *there came*, i.e., *happened to me.* Compare :—

Tout lui vient à souhait.	*Everything goes with him according to his wishes.*

§ 36. **Soi**, the Disjunctive form of the Reflexive Pronoun **se**, is used—

(*a*) with reference to an *Indefinite* or *Abstract* Subject; as,

Aucun n'est prophète chez **soi.**	*No one is a prophet in his own country.*
Un **bienfait** porte sa récompense avec **soi.**	*A good deed carries its reward with itself.*

(*b*) with reference to a *Definite Antecedent* in contradistinction to **lui**, the latter referring to an Antecedent other than the Subject; as,

L'avare qui a un **fils prodigue** n'amasse ni pour **soi** (l'avare) ni pour **lui** (le fils).	*The miser who has a prodigal son hoards neither for himself nor for him.*

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

Résumé.

Their Agreement.—English *Possessive* Pronouns rendered in French by—

(*a*) a *Disjunctive Personal* Pronoun; (*b*) *Conjunctive* or *Reflexive Personal* Pronoun and Definite Article; (*c*) **En** and Definite Article; (*d*) Definite Article and Relative Clause; (*e*) Circumlocution.

---

§ 37. Possessive Pronouns agree in *Gender* and *Number* with the Noun they qualify (the object possessed) and not, as in English, with the Antecedent denoting the possessor; as,

Il a perdu **sa mère.**	**He** *has lost* **his** *mother.*
Elle a perdu **son père.**	**She** *has lost* **her** *father.*
Sa majesté, le roi des Belges.	**His** *majesty, the* **king** *of the Belgians.*

§ 38. The English *Possessive* Pronoun or Adjective is generally rendered in French—

(*a*) by a *Disjunctive Personal Pronoun*, if used predicatively; as,

Ce crayon n'est pas **à lui**, il est **à moi**.	*This pencil is not* **his**, *it is* **mine**.
C'est **à moi** de jouer.	*It is* **my** *turn to play.*

Thus also :—

J'ai un cheval **à moi**.	*I have a horse of my own.*

(*b*) by a *Conjunctive Personal* or *Reflexive* Pronoun and the *Definite* Article, when speaking of parts of the body; as,

Il **lui** baisa **la** main.	*He kissed* **her** *hand.*
Vous **me** marchez sur **le** pied.	*You tread upon* **my** *foot* (*toes*).
Il **s'**est coupé **au** doigt.	*He has cut* **his** *finger.*
Je vais **me** faire couper **les** cheveux.	*I am going to have* **my** *hair cut.*
Le cœur **me** fend à cette vue.	**My** *heart breaks at this sight.* (*It is a heartrending sight.*)
Cela ne **leur** entrait pas dans l'esprit.	*That did not enter* **their** *mind.*

Obs. 1. Also by the *Article alone*, when no ambiguity can arise; as,

J'ai mal **à la** tête (**aux** dents).	**My** *head aches* (**my** *teeth ache*).
J'ai froid **aux** pieds (j'ai **les** pieds froids).	**My** *feet are cold.*
J'ai **les** mains pleines.	*I have* **my** *hands full.*
Fermez **les** yeux et ouvrez **la** bouche.	*Shut* **your** *eyes and open* **your** *mouth.*
Il eut **la** tête enlevée par un boulet.	**His** *head was carried away by a cannon-ball.*

Obs. 2. After *changer de*, *redoubler de*, no qualifying word is required; as,

Il a changé d'avis (de religion, etc.)—Ils redoublent d'efforts.

(*c*) by **en** and the *Definite* Article when referring to the *Name of a Thing* not contained in the same clause, and when the Noun qualified is the Subject or Direct Object of its clause; as,

En passant par cette **ville**, j'**en** ai admiré **les** belles églises.	*In going through this town, I admired* **its** *beautiful churches.*
J'aime ce **pays**, **le** climat **en** est délicieux.	*I like this country,* **its** *climate is delightful.*

(*d*) by the *Definite Article* and a *Relative Clause* when the Name of the Object possessed is followed by a Complement; as,

Le désir **que j'ai** de vous plaire.	**My** *desire to please you.*
Les lettres **qu'il** lui **écrit.**	**His** *letters to him.*

(*e*) by a *Circumlocution*, when the English Possessive is governed by "*of*"; as,

Il n'est pas de ses amis.	*He is not a friend* **of his.**
Cela ne tient pas à lui.	*That is no concern* **of his.**

Obs. *Vice versâ*, the French use the *Possessive* Adjective in a few phrases where the *Personal* Pronoun is required in English:—

Il vint à **ma** rencontre.	*He came to meet* **me.**
Avez-vous eu de **ses** nouvelles.	*Have you heard of* **him?**

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Résumé.

Ce, Neutral Pronoun—(*a*) demonstratively; (*b*) impersonally; (*c*) as a Personal Pronoun; (*d*) redundantly.

Ce and **il** compared.

Ceci, cela.	*This, that.*
Celui, celle; ceux, celles.	*This, that, the one, he, she; these, those, they.*
Celui (ceux)-ci; celle(s)-ci.	*This one; these.*
Celui (ceux)-là; celle(s)-là.	*That one; those.*

For Demonstrative Adjectives, see Second Year, § 30.

§ 39. **Ce**, the Neutral (indeclinable) Pronoun, is used as the Nominative of **être**—

(*a*) *Demonstratively*, answering to *this, that; these, those;* as,

Qui est-**ce ?**—**C'**est mon ami.	*Who is that?—That is my friend.*
Ce sont les meilleurs.	*These are the best.*
Ce sont **là** des obstacles inévitables.	*Those are unavoidable obstacles.*
Sont-**ce là** vos promesses ?	*Are those your promises ?*

(*b*) *Impersonally*, instead of il, *it*, when the Complement is a *Noun*, *Pronoun*, or *Infinitive*, see also § 40; as,

C'est votre devoir d'assister ceux qui sont dans la misère.	**It** *is your duty to assist those who are in distress.*
C'est à vous de faire les premières démarches.	**It** *is for you to take the first steps.*

(*c*) *for a Personal Pronoun*, answering to *he, she, it; they;* as,

C'est mon frère.	**He** *is my brother.*
C'est ma sœur.	**She** *is my sister.*
Ce sont mes amis.	**They** *are my friends.*
Ce sont des Anglais.	**They** *are Englishmen.*

(*d*) *Redundantly*, for the sake of laying stress on the Subject or on the Predicative Complement—

(1) as the *grammatical* Subject to **être**, when the real Subject follows the Complement; as,

C'est mourir que* de végéter ainsi.	*To vegetate thus is to die.*
C'est un méchant métier que* celui de médire.	*Slander is a sorry occupation.*
C'est un beau pays que* la Suisse.	*Switzerland is a fine country indeed.*

* In such sentences the real subject generally is preceded by **que**.

(2) to recapitulate a *preceding sentence* used as Subject or Complement; as,

Le vrai moyen d'être trompés, **c'**est de nous croire plus fins que les autres.	*The best way to be deceived* **is** *to fancy ourselves more cunning than others.*
Ce que je sais **c'**est que je ne sais rien.	*What I know* **is** *that I know nothing.*

Obs. **Ce** is not used when the Complement is an Adjective or Participle; as,

Ce qui est beau **n'**est pas toujours **utile.**

But the use of **ce** is imperative when the Complement of **être** is a Noun in the *Plural* or a Personal Pronoun—

Ce qui m'afflige **ce** sont ses mensonges.—Qui l'a fait si **ce** n'est vous?

For **ce** used as an Antecedent to a Relative Pronoun, see § 46, Relative Pronouns.

§ 40. C'est and il est compared.

As a General Rule, **c'est** is *Demonstrative*, **il est** is *Personal* or *Impersonal.*

(*a*) If the Complement is a *Noun*, use—

(1) **c'est, ce sont,** if the Noun is qualified by an *Article, Adjective,* or *Pronoun:* as,	(2) **il est,** if the *Noun is used Adjectively;* as,
C'est **un** Danois *He is a Dane.*	Il est Danois. *He is Danish.*
Ce sont **des** Danois. *They are Danes.*	Ils sont Danois. *They are Danish.*
C'est **ce** médecin. *It is this doctor.*	Il est médecin. *He is a medical man.*
C'est **mon** père. *It is my father.*	Il est père. *He is a father.*
C'est un homme **qui**...*He is a man who....*	Il est homme à faire cela. *He is capable of doing that.*
C'est **moi.** *I am he.*	

(*b*) If the Complement is an *Adjective*, use—

(1) **c'est** if the Adjective refers to a *preceding* statement; as.	(2) **il est** if the Adjective refers to a *following* statement; as,
J'ai raison, **c'est** évident.	**Il est** évident que j'ai raison.

§ 41. **Ceci**, *this*, and **cela** (ça), *that*, are used to refer—

(*a*) to *something pointed to*, but *not mentioned*; as,

Ceci est soie, **cela** est laine.	*This is silk, and that is wool.*

(*b*) to a *whole clause*, either *following* (**ceci**), or *preceding* (**cela**); as,

Dites **ceci** de ma part à votre ami :—**Qu'il se taise.**	*Tell this to your friend from me :—Let him keep quiet.*
Tu dis qu'il est parti : d'où tiens-tu **cela ?**	*You say he has left : how do you know that ?*

Obs. **Cela** (**ça**) is also made to refer to *persons*, but then only familiarly or contemptuously :—

Voyez comme **cela** s'amuse.	*Just see how those fellows* (*brats*, etc.) *amuse themselves.*

§ 42. (*a*) **celui, celle**, *this, that ; the one ; he, she,** **ceux, celles**, *these, those ; such ; they,**

are used *with a Complement* either a Genitive or a Relative clause ;

(*b*) **celui (celle)-ci**, *this one*, **ceux (celles)-ci**, *these ;* **celui (celle)-là**, *that one*, **ceux (celles)-là**, *those*, } are generally† used *without any Complement ;* as,

(*a*) Mon plan me plaît mieux que **celui** { de votre architecte. / que vous avez adopté.

(*b*) Ce plan-ci me plaît mieux que **celui-là** (*no Complement following*).

* *He, she, they*, followed by a Relative Pronoun = **celui** qui, **celle(s)** qui, **ceux** qui. (See § 27, Obs.)

† But **celui-là** est riche **qui** se contente de peu ; because the Complement does not immediately follow.

Obs. Referring to two different Antecedents in a preceding clause—**Celui-ci** denotes *the latter ;* **celui-là** *the former ;* as,

Il faut employer différemment **le jour** et **la nuit ; celle-ci** au repos, **celui-là** au travail.

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

Résumé.

Their Agreement.—**Qui** (*a*) without Preposition; (*b*) with Preposition.

Whose; used (*a*) with a Noun-Subject; (*b*) with a Noun-Object; (*c*) with a Noun governed by a Preposition.

What; used (*a*) relatively or absolutely; (*b*) adjectively.

Où used as a Relative Pronoun.

Who?—Whom?—Whose? how rendered in French.

Which? (*a*) adjectively.

(*b*) substantively; (1) without Preposition; (2) with Prepositions; (3) standing alone.

N.B.—In French the Relative Pronoun is never omitted as in English:—

Le pain **que** nous mangeons.	*The bread we are eating.*
L'homme **dont** je parle.	*The man I speak of.*

§ 43. *Relative* Pronouns agree in *Gender*, *Number*, and *Person*, with their Antecedent; as,

Est-ce **elle qui** s'en est **allée?**	*Did* **she** *go away?*
Ce sont **eux qui ont** été vaincus.	**They** *have been conquered.*
C'est **moi** seul **qui suis** le coupable.	**I** *alone am guilty.*

But in *Case* they depend on the construction of their own clause; as,

Nom.:—Voilà l'élève **qui** a remporté le prix.	*That is the pupil* **who** *carried off the prize.*
Acc.:—Voilà l'élève **que** j'ai récompensé; etc.	*That is the pupil* **whom** *I rewarded; etc.*

§ 44. **Qui, que, dont,** *who, which, that,* used for both Genders and Numbers, may, if not governed by a Preposition, refer to *Things* as well as to *Persons;* but, after a Preposition, **duquel, auquel, pour lequel,** etc., must be used instead of—**de qui, à qui, pour qui,** etc., when the Antecedent is a *Thing;* as,

(*a*) Without Preposition:

Nom.	*The man* **who** (*that*) *is there.*	L'homme	**qui** est là.
	The thing **which** (*that*) *is there.*	La chose	
Acc.	*The man* **whom** (*that*) *I see.*	L'homme	**que** je vois.
	The thing **which** (*that*) *I see.*	La chose	
Gen.	*The man* **whose** *name I forgot.*	L'homme	**dont** * j'ai oublié le nom.
	The thing the name **of which** *I forgot.*	La chose	

(*b*) With a Preposition:

The man **of whom** *I speak.*	L'homme **de qui** (duquel) † je parle.
The thing **of which** *I speak.*	La chose **de laquelle** je parle.
The man **to whom** *I speak.*	L'homme **à qui** (auquel) je parle.
The work **to which** *I apply myself.*	Le travail **auquel** je m'applique.
The man **for whom** *I work.*	L'homme **pour qui** (pour lequel) je travaille.
The cause **for which** *I work.*	La cause **pour laquelle** je travaille.

* **Dont,** originally an Adverb (Lat. *de-unde*), has, like **en, y,** and **où,** become a Pronoun, and is used like **en** (§ 32), after any Verb or Adjective requiring **de**; as,

Je me souviens **de** lui. Je m'**en** souviens. L'ami **dont** je me souviens. Je suis satisfait **de** ce travail. **J'en** suis satisfait. Le travail **dont** je suis satisfait.

† **Lequel,** in the Nominative or Accusative, is, as a rule, used only to avoid ambiguity; as,

Un **homme** s'est levé au milieu de l'assemblée, **lequel** a parlé d'une manière extravagante.

§ 45. *Whose* calls for several observations:—

(*a*)	*The man* **whose house** (Subj.) *was sold.*	L'homme **dont la maison** fut vendue.
(*b*)	*The man* **whose house** (Obj.) *I bought.*	L'homme **dont** j'ai acheté **la maison.**
(*c*)	*The man* **for whose house** *I offered a high price.*	L'homme **pour la maison duquel** j'offris un haut prix.

(*a*) The Noun on which **dont** depends retains the Definite Article.

(*b*) The Noun-Object on which **dont** depends retains, contrary to English usage, its normal place *after* the Verbs.

(*c*) **Duquel, de laquelle,** etc., instead of **dont,** *must* be used if the Noun on which the Relative Pronoun depends *is governed by a Preposition.*

Obs. **Qui** is often used *absolutely;* as,

Qui m'aime me suive.	*Let those who love me follow me.*
Aimez **qui** vous aime.	*Love those who love you.*
Ils se sont dispersés, **qui** d'un côté, **qui** d'un autre.	*They dispersed, some in one direction, some in another.*

§ 46. *What,* that which,* used *relatively* or *absolutely* is rendered thus:—

Nom. **What** *grieves me, is...*	**Ce qui** m'afflige, c'est...
Acc. **What** *you mean is clear enough.*	**Ce que** vous voulez dire est assez clair.
Gen. **What** *I complain* **of,** *is...*	**Ce dont** je me plains, c'est...
Dat. **What** *you are alluding* **to,** *is...*	**Ce à quoi** vous faites allusion, c'est...

* *What,* used *adjectively*—

What a man!	**Quel** homme!
What riches I have.	**Ce que** j'ai **de** richesses.

Obs. 1. **Ce que** is also used as a *Predicative* Complement; as,

Je sais **ce que** je suis, je sais **ce que** vous êtes.

Obs. 2. *Which,* referring to a *whole sentence,* is also rendered by **ce qui (que), ce dont, quoi;** as,

Il a réussi enfin, **ce qui** m'étonne beaucoup.
Il a manqué son ami, **en quoi** il est doublement coupable.

Obs. 3. As a Relative or Interrogative Pronoun, **que** is always used *without Prep.,* and **quoi** *with a Prep.* (or standing alone); as,

Nom. (as a Complement only):—	Coquin **que** vous êtes.
Acc. (according to § 10):—	L'hiver **qu'**il fit si froid.
Gen. } referring to— *Dat.* } **ce, voici, voilà, rien.**):—	Il n'y a rien **de quoi** il ne soit capable.
	Voici **à quoi** vous êtes réduit.

Before an Infinitive use **que**:—Je ne sais pas **que** faire.

§ 47. **Où** (Lat. *ubi*), is frequently and elegantly used as a Relative Pronoun, referring to both *time* and *place—when? where? whither?* as,

Le temps **où** nous vivons.	*The times we live in.*
Le champ **où** il s'arrêta.	*The field in which he stopped.*
Le lieu **où** il va.	*The place he is going to.*
Je ne sais **d'où** il vient.	*I do not know where he comes from.*
C'est un procès **d'où** dépend ma fortune.	*It is a law-suit on which my fortune depends.*

N.B.—Though the Interrogative Pronouns have been fully treated in the Second Year, we subjoin here, for the sake of reference in the work of composition, a table of English Interrogatives with their French equivalents:—

§ 48. *Who? Whom?*:—

Nom. **Qui** est venu? *or* **Qui est-ce qui** est venu?	*Who has come?*
Acc. **Qui** cherchez-vous? *or* **Qui est-ce que** vous cherchez?	*Whom do you seek?*
Gen. **De qui** parlez-vous? *or* **De qui est-ce que** vous parlez?	*Of whom are you speaking?*
Dat. **A qui** parlez-vous? *or* **A qui est-ce** que vous parlez?	*To whom are you speaking?*
Also—**Quel** est votre tailleur?	*Who (what sort of man) is your tailor?*

§ 49. *Whose?*:—

De qui est-il frère?	*Whose brother is he?*
A qui est ce château?	*Whose castle is this?*

§ 50. *Which?*— (*a*) Adjective: (*b*) Substantive:—

(*a*) **Quel** garçon l'a fait?	*Which boy did it?*
(*b*) **Lequel** de ces garçons l'a fait?	*Which of these boys did it?*
Duquel de ces généraux s'agit-il?	*Of which of these generals are you talking?*
Auquel de ces romans donnez-vous la préférence?	*To which of these novels do you give the preference?*
Par **où?**—Par ici.	*Which way?—This way.*

§ 51. *What?*— (*a*) Adjective :

A **quel** homme pensez-vous avoir affaire ?	*With what man do you think you have to deal ?*
Quelle heure est-il ?	*What o' clock (time) is it ?*
Quel temps fait-il ?	*What weather is it ?*
Quelles sont vos conditions ?	*What are your terms ?*
Quel est le quantième ?	*What day of the month is it ?*
Quel malheur !	*What a misfortune !*
Que de déboires !	*What disappointments !*

(*b*) Substantive :

(1) *without Prepositions :—*

Subj.	**Qu'est-ce qui** vous trouble ?	*What makes you uneasy ?*
	Qu'est-ce qu'il y a ?	*What is the matter ?*
Obj.	**Que** vois-je ?	*What do I see ?*
„	**Qu'est-ce que** vous voulez ?	*What is it you want ?*

Obs. Comment dit-on "home" en français. — *What is the French for "home" ?*

(2) *with Prepositions :—*

De quoi s'agit-il ?	*What is it about ? What is the matter ?*
A quoi vous occupez-vous ?	*To what do you apply yourself ?*
En quoi puis-je vous servir ?	*What can I do for you ?*

(3) *standing alone :—*

Quoi ? (or, more politely, **plaît-il ?**)	*What ? What do you say ?*
Quoi de plus beau ?	*What could be finer ?*

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

Résumé.

On.——Chacun.——Tout.——Quelqu'un.——Autre.——Personne and **Rien.——Quelque, quel que,** etc.

---

§ 52. **On** dit ; **on** croit. — *It is said; it is believed.*

On me l'a dit. — *One, some one, people, or they tell (have told) me so; I am told.*

On vous demande. — *You are wanted.*

On sonne ; **on** frappe. — *There is a ring; there is a knock.*

§ 53. **Chacun** (chacune, f.)—(no plur.)—a ses défauts. / **Chaque** homme a ses défauts. — *Every one has his faults.*

Trois francs **chacun.** — *Three francs each.*

§ 54. **Tout** homme est mortel. — *Every (any) man is mortal.*

Tous les hommes sont mortels. — *All men are mortal.*

Tous les deux (tous deux) sont partis. — *Both have set out.*

Tous les deux jours. — *Every other day.*

§ 55. **Quelqu'un** vous demande. — *You are wanted.*

J'aime vos raisins (pommes) ; donnez-m'**en quelques-uns** (**unes,** f.) — *I like your grapes (apples); give me some.*

As-tu des amis ?—J'**en** ai **plusieurs.** — *Have you any friends?—I have several.*

§ 56. **L'un l'autre.** — *One another,* each other.*

Aimez-vous **les uns les autres.** — *Love one another.*

Ils médisent **les uns des autres.** — *They speak ill of one another.*

Autre chose ; tout autre. — *Something else; any other.*

Les uns rient, **les autres** pleurent. — *Some laugh, others cry.*

* *Give me* **another** *cup of tea* = Donnez-moi **encore une** tasse **de** thé.

§ 57. *Subj.* **Personne** ici **ne** vous aime. — *No one (nobody) loves you here.*

Obj. Je **ne** connais **personne** ici. — *I know no one here.*

Subj. **Rien ne** lui plaît. — *Nothing pleases him.*

Obj. Nous **ne** demandons **rien.** — *We ask for nothing.*

§ 58. **Quelques** mérites **que** vous ayez. — *Whatever merits you may have.*

Quelque riches **qu'**ils soient. — *However rich they may be.*

Quels que soient vos projets. — *Whatever your projects may be.*

Quiconque l'a fait sera puni. — *Whoever has done it will be punished.*

Qui que ce soit qui vous l'ait dit. — *Whosoever told you so.*

Quoique (quoi que ce soit que) vous fassiez. — *Whatsoever you do.*

THE VERB.

CONCORD OF VERBS WITH THE SUBJECT.

Résumé.

General Rule.—Agreement of the Verb in Number and Person.

Special Rules.—I. Agreement with a *Simple* Subject.

Agreement with (*a*) **il** or **ce** (Impersonal); (*b*) Collective Nouns.

Obs. 1. With Collective Nouns qualified by a Genitive Plural.

II. Agreement with a *Composite* Subject of different persons.

Obs. 2. With the *Nearer* Subject, if (*a*) linked by **ou, ni...ni.**

(*b*) Synonymous; (*c*) in Enumerations.

Obs. 3. With the *First* Subject.

§ 59. General Rule.—The Verb agrees in Number and Person with its Subject, whether it follows or precedes the latter; as,

Je suis le valet, et **vous êtes** le maître.	*I am the servant, and you are the master.*
Le **tonnerre gronde** au lointain, et les **éclairs sillonnent** les nuages.	*The thunder roars in the distance, and the lightning flashes through the clouds.*
Voilà ce que lui **envoient** ses **parents.**	*That is what his parents send to him.*

Special Rules.—

§ 60. I. *Agreement with a Simple Subject:*—

(*a*) An *Impersonal Verb* agrees with its Grammatical Subject **il** or **ce**, and not with the logical (real) Subject coming after it; as,

L'amour propre est un ballon d'où **il sort** des tempêtes quand on y fait une piqûre.	*Self-love is a balloon from which storms escape when it is pricked.*
Il court des bruits désavantageux sur son compte.	*There run damaging rumours about him.*
C'est nous qui le disons.	**We** *say it.*

Obs. It is only when the Predicative Complement (which generally is the Real Subject) is in the **3rd** Person Plural, that the Verb after **ce** is put in the Plural; as,

Ce **sont eux** qui l'ont fait.
Ce **furent** les **Phéniciens** qui, les premiers, inventèrent l'écriture.

(*b*) If a *Collective* Noun is the Subject, the Verb agrees with the *grammatical*, and not—as is the rule in English—with the *real* Number of its Subject; as,

Le **peuple** juif **est** dispersé par toute la terre.	*The Jewish* **people are** *dispersed all over the earth.*

Obs. 1. If a Collective Noun is followed by a Noun in the Genitive Plural, the Verb agrees with either the former or the latter according as it refers to the one or the other; as,

La **multitude** des étoiles **étonne** notre imagination; *but*—
Une multitude de **passions divisent** les hommes.

Comparing the above examples it is evident that what strikes our imagination is the *vast number* (myriads) of the stars, and that what divides men is their *many passions*. As a rule it will be found that the Collective Noun carries the meaning when it is preceded by the Definite Article or a Determinative Pronoun.

Obs. 2. The same rule holds good with *Indefinite Numerals* or *Pronouns*, followed by a Genitive Plural; as,

Le peu d'amis qu'il a **prouve** son mauvais caractère.	*The* **scarcity** *of his friends* **is** *in itself a proof of his bad character.*
Le peu d'**amis** qu'il a **sont** parvenus à le tirer d'affaire.	*His* **few friends have** *succeeded in getting him out of the scrape.*

§ 61. II. *Agreement with a Composite Subject.*

If the Subject is composite, the Verb is put in the *Plural;* and if the component parts of the Subject are of different persons, the Verb must—according to the principles of General Grammar—agree with the Person that has the priority: the *first* before the *second* or *third;* and the *second* before the *third.* As a rule such a Composite Subject will be recapitulated by **nous** or **vous**; as,

La **force**, la **santé**, la **joie s'évanouiront** comme un beau printemps.	*Strength, health, joy will vanish like a fine spring.*
Votre frère et **moi** (nous) **échappâmes** seuls par miracle.	*Your brother and I alone miraculously escaped.*
Vous et ce jeune homme (**vous**) **croyez** tout savoir.	*You and this young man fancy you know everything.*

Obs. 1. The Verb agrees with the *nearer* Subject only, (1) when the several Subjects connected by **ou, ni**.. **ni** are used in an alternative sense, *i.e.* one necessarily excluding the other;* (2) when the several subjects are *synonymous* or form a kind of *gradation;* and (3) in Enumerations recapitulated by **tout, rien, chacun, aucun, nul,** etc.; as,

(1) La peur **ou** la misère lui **a** fait commettre cette faute.
Ni l'un **ni** l'autre n'**est** mon père.

(2) Son courage, son **intrépidité** nous **étonne.**
Une seule parole, un sourire gracieux, un **seul regard suffit**

(3) Remords, crainte, périls, **rien** ne m'**a** retenue.

---

* When **ou, ni**...**ni** connect Subjects in a *collective* rather than in an *alternative* way, the Verb will be in the Plural; as,

Ni l'or ni la **grandeur** ne nous **rendent** heureux.

The collective sense becomes evident by using the sentence affirmatively:—

L'or et la grandeur nous rendent heureux.

But we cannot say:—

L'un et l'autre sont mon père.

Obs. 2. The Verb agrees with the *first* Subject only, if two or more Subjects are connected by **comme, de même que, ainsi que, aussi bien que,** used as terms of comparison:—

L'éléphant, comme le castor (*beaver*), **aime** la société de ses semblables.

(In the following sentence **ainsi que** has *collective* force, and hence the Verb is in the plural:—

Bacchus, ainsi qu'Hercule, étaient reconnus pour demi-dieux.)

MOODS AND TENSES.

A.—The Indicative Mood and its Tenses.

Résumé.

Synoptic Table of Tenses—English, French, and Latin.

Present Tense (*a*) only one form in French.
(*b*) French Present = English Perfect.

Past Tenses.—General Principles. Imperfect and Preterite compared.

Special Rules.—

I.—The Imperfect used—		II.—The Preterite used—	
(*a*) to denote	progress.	(*a*) to denote	single occurrence.
(*b*) ,,	simultaneousness.	(*b*) ,,	succession.
(*c*) ,,	anteriority.	(*c*) ,,	incidental action.
Obs. ,,	non-accomplishment.	,,	accomplishment.
III. ,,	accessory circumstances.	IV. ,,	successive facts.

Obs. Imperfect (1) in Dependent Clauses; (2) in Quotations; (3) compared with English.

Past Indefinite (*a*) like English Present Perfect;
(*b*) contrary to English usage.

Les Ruines de Palmyre.—Passage illustrating the uses of Imperfect, Preterite, and Perfect.

Pluperfect and *Past Anterior* compared.

Obs. Past Anterior after Conjunctions of *Time*.

Future Present and *Future Perfect* used as in English.

Obs. Future (1) after **si**, *whether*. (2) as an Imperative.
(3) immediate. (4) rendered by **devoir**.

---

§ 62. A Synoptic Table of Tenses—English, French and Latin.

The Relations of the Indicative Tenses may be thus stated :—

Writing, as an action, is to me—

		English.	French.	Latin.
I.	(*a*) simply *Present*—I write,		j'écris ;	scribo.
	(*b*) now ,, I am writing,			
	(*c*) formerly ,, I was writing,		j'écrivais ;	scribebam.
	(*d*) hereafter ,, I shall write,		j'écrirai ;	scribam.
II.	(*a*) simply *Past*—I wrote,		j'écrivis ;	scripsi.
	*(*b*) now ,, I have written (been writing),		j'ai écrit ;	
	*(*c*) formerly ,, I had written (been writing),		j'avais écrit ; j'eus écrit ;	scripseram.
	(*d*) hereafter ,, I shall **have** written,		j'aurai écrit ;	scripsero.

* To which may be added—

just now *Past*—I have just } been Je viens d'écrire ;
just then ,, I had just } writing, je venais d'écrire ;

III.	(*a*) simply *Future* I shall write (be writing),		j'écrirai ;	scribam.
	(*b*) now ,, I am	about to write,	je vais écrire ;	scripturus sum.
	(*c*) formerly ,, I was		j'allais écrire ;	scripturus eram.
	(*d*) hereafter ,, I shall be		je serai en train d'écrire ;	scripturus ero.

From the above Table it will be seen that French, as compared with English, is deficient in special forms to express *continuous* action ; as, *I have* (*had*, etc.) *been writing.*

THE PRESENT TENSE.

§ 63. (*a*) As already noticed in the Synoptic Table of Tenses, the French language has, like Latin, but one form to express the different relations of the Present :—

Le soleil **luit.**	*The sun* **shines** (*does shine*). *The sun is* **shining.**
Il me **parle.**	*He* **is speaking** *to me.*
Il **parle** plusieurs langues.	*He* **speaks** *several languages.*
J'apprends que vous **devez partir** ce soir.	*I hear* (*that*) *you* **are to leave** *this evening.*

§ 64. (*b*) With **il y a . . . . que, voilà . . . . que, depuis (que)** the French *Present* takes the place of the English *Present Perfect:* as,

Voilà deux jours que cela **continue.**	*That has* **been going on** *now for two days.*
Il y a trois mois que je **suis** ici.	*I* **have been** *here these three months.*

Comp. Lat. Jam pridem cupio Alexandriam visere.
Il y a longtemps que je désire visiter A.
I have long been desirous to visit Alexandria.

Obs. The Present is also occasionally used to denote an event, which, though Past or Future, is still or already vividly present to the mind:—

Mais hier il **m'aborde,** et me prenant la main,
Ah, Monsieur, m'a-t-il dit, je vous **attends** demain.

PAST TENSES.

General Principles.—

§ 65. The Imperfect and Preterite compared.

"L'Imparfait arrête l'esprit sur l'état d'une chose à une certaine époque du passé;	*The Imperfect causes the mind to dwell upon a state of things at some period in the past;*
le Prétérit marque le passage d'un état à un autre et fait faire au récit un mouvement en avant.	*the Preterite denotes the transition from one state to another, and carries on the recital.*
L'Imparfait exprime contemporanéité;	*The Imperfect expresses simultaneousness;*
le Prétérit exprime succession.	*the Preterite expresses succession.*
L'Imparfait décrit;	*The Imperfect describes;*
le Prétérit raconte.	*the Preterite relates.*
Ce n'est pas tant la durée qui fait la différence, que l'esprit de l'écrivain saisissant un fait dans deux points de vue différents. Le même fait peut être présenté sous les deux formes; mais l'une le présente comme une surface étendue l'autre le ramasse	*It is not so much the duration which makes the difference, as the fact of the writer taking hold of an action from two different points of view. The same fact can be represented by both forms (of conjugation); but one form displays the fact as a*

en un point, et l'inscrit comme une unité dans le compte des faits ; car **raconter** c'est **compter** (German—zählen, erzählen.)"—A. VINET.

extended surface, the other brings it into one focus, and records it as a unit in the sum of facts; for to **relate** *is to* **tell.**

SPECIAL RULES.—

§ 66. The *Imperfect* is used—

(I.) to *describe* a state of things or mode of existence in the past; habits, customs, *i.e.*, actions usually or repeatedly done; it answers the questions :—

(*a*) *What was in progress at some indefinite past time;* as,

Les sciences **florissaient** en Chine à une époque fort reculée.

Les anciens Romains **brûlaient** leurs morts.

(*b*) *What was going on along with another action;* as,

Pendant que Rome **conquérait** l'univers, il y **avait** dans ses murailles une guerre cachée.

Nous **attaquions** l'ennemi qui se **retirait.**

La pluie tombait, et le tonnerre commençait à gronder.

Il me **saluait** quand il me **voyait.**

(*c*) *What was already in progress when another incident occurred;* as.

§ 67. The *Preterite* is used—

(II.) to *narrate* accomplished facts absolutely, *i.e.* irrespective of their duration or frequency, and independent of other events present or past; it answers the questions :—

(*a*) *What occurred at some particular time;* as,

César **écrivit** au sénat : Je **vins,** je **vis,** je **vainquis.**

Les Romains **brulèrent** Corinthe.

(*b*) *What followed upon, or resulted from, another action;* as,

Il **lut** son discours, et les Jacobins le **couvrirent** d'applaudissements.

Nous **attaquâmes** l'ennemi qui se **retira.**

Une tuile lui **tomba** sur la tête et le **tua.**

Il me **salua** quand il me **vit.**

(*c*) *What incident occurred when another action or state was already in progress;* as.

Il **était** nuit quand nous **arrivâmes** à l'entrée du défilé.

Les Normands **parlaient** la langue française à l'époque où ils **débarquèrent** en Angleterre.

Cette nouvelle, que tout le monde **savait** (*knew*) déjà depuis longtemps, je ne la **sus** (*heard*) que hier soir par le télégraphe.

Obs. Here may be classed the use of the Imperfect to describe an action or state of things in progress or intended, *but not accomplished* (as the term Imperfect implies), in contradistinction to the Preterite which always denotes an *accomplished* fact :—

Ce poète **mourait** de faim si on ne l'eût secouru.
Je **devais** comparaître le lendemain.
I was to appear on the next day.

Le poète Gilbert **mourut** à l'hôpital.
Je **dus** comparaître devant le juge.
I had to appear before the judge.

This is especially the case in clauses introduced by **si**, *when, if;* because the action is not considered as accomplished but only supposed :—S'il **travaillait** il ne s'ennuierait pas.

§ 68. The *Imperfect* is used—

(III.) to describe *accessory circumstances* bearing upon the quality, character, nature (colour, shape, size, etc.) of persons, things, or events mentioned in the principal clause :—

§ 69. The *Preterite* is used—

(IV.) to enumerate *successive facts* and, whenever the narrative of these has been interrupted for the purpose mentioned in (III.), to resume and carry on the narrative of further events :—

(II.) Je **quittai** Venise le 28 et je m'**embarquai** à dix heures du soir pour me rendre en terre ferme ; (I., *c.*) le vent de sud-est **soufflait** assez pour enfler la voile, pas assez pour troubler la mer ; (I., *b*) à mesure que la barque s'**éloignait**, je **voyais** s'enfoncer sous l'horizon les lumières de Venise. Les cloches des hospices se **faisaient** entendre ; (IV.) nous **approchâmes** assez d'une de ces retraites pour entrevoir des moines qui **regardaient** passer notre gondole ; (IV.) ils **avaient** l'air de vieux nautonniers rentrés au port après de longues traverses.

Obs. 1. In strict accordance with these principles the *Imperfect* is used almost invariably in *dependent* clauses when the principal clause contains a verb of *thinking, feeling, saying*, etc. :—

Osman me **fit demander** d'où je **venais**, où j'**allais**, ce que je **voulais** ?—Je **répondis** que j'**allais** en pèlerinage à Jérusalem

Les Mexicains, effrayés de la détonation des armes à feu, **crurent que** les Espagnols **étaient** des divinités armées du tonnerre.

Obs. 2. The same rule holds good with *quotations* from *letters, speeches, documents*, etc. :—

Je **reçus** sa lettre : il me **priait** de lui donner de mes nouvelles.

Obs. 3. As compared with English, the *Imparfait* answers the following different forms :—

He used (*was wont*) *to say,*
He kept on saying ; he would say ; } Il disait.
He was saying.

§ 70. The *Past Indefinite* (*Present Perfect*) expresses, as its composition—Present of Auxiliary Verb + Past Participle—implies, a fact *now* past (Synoptic Table, II., *b*) ; it is used :—

(*a*) like the English *Present Perfect*, to denote an action accomplished in a *period not yet elapsed at the time of speaking ;* as,

Il **a fait** bien chaud aujourd'hui (cette semaine, etc.)	*It has been very warm to-day* (*this week*).
Il y a longtemps que je ne l'**ai vu**.	*I have not seen him for a long time.*

(*b*) contrary to English usage, to denote a *fact, the result of which, rather than the action itself, is present to the mind,* in familiar conversation and correspondence it is almost exclusively used to express past events ; as,

Je travaillais au jardin ; au premier coup de marteau j'**ai couru** si vite que je **suis tombé** en chemin.	*I was working in the garden ; at the first knock at the door I ran so quickly that I fell down on the way.*
De quoi **est**-il **mort** ?—Il **est mort** d'une fluxion de poitrine.	*What did he die of ?—He died of an inflammation of the lungs.*

Obs. For the English Present Perfect rendered by the French Present after **il y a**, etc., see § 64.

The following extract from Volney will illustrate the contrast between *Imparfait*, *Prétérit* and *Indéfini* better than any detached sentences could do :—

LES RUINES DE PALMYRE.

Le soleil **venait** de se coucher ; un bandeau rougeâtre **marquait** encore sa trace à l'horizon lointain des monts de la Syrie ; la pleine lune, à l'orient, s'**élevait** sur un fond bleuâtre ; le ciel **était** pur, l'air calme et serein ; l'éclat mourant du jour **tempérait** l'horreur des ténèbres ...l'ombre croissait, et déjà mes regards ne **distinguaient** plus que les fantômes blanchâtres des colonnes et des murs ... Ces lieux solitaires, cette soirée paisible, cette scène majestueuse **imprimèrent** à mon esprit un recueillement religieux. L'aspect d'une grande cité déserte, la mémoire des temps passés, la comparaison de l'état présent, tout **éleva** mon cœur à de hautes pensées. Je m'**assis** sur le tronc d'une colonne, je m'**abandonnai** à une rêverie profonde. Et l'histoire des temps passés se **retraça** vivement à ma pensée, je me **rappelai** ces siècles anciens où vingt peuples anciens **existaient** dans ces contrées ; je me **peignis** l'Assyrie sur les rives du Tigre ... Cette Syrie, me **disais**-je,* aujourd'hui presque dépeuplée, **comptait** alors cent villes puissantes ... Ah, que **sont devenus** ces âges d'abondance et de vie ? Que **sont devenues** tant de brillantes créations de la main de l'homme ? Les temples se **sont écroulés**, les palais sont **renversés** ...

§ 71. The *Plusqueparfait* and *Passé Antérieur* correspond to the English Pluperfect, and both express action past in a time itself past, but with the same distinction between the two as already established between *Imparfait* and *Prétérit* (§ 65-66), from which they are severally derived, *i.e.*:—

The *Plusqueparfait* denotes actions *usually done* or *already in progress*, whilst the *Passé Antérieur* denotes *single facts just accomplished*, at a period itself past ; as,

Quand **j'avais** dîné, j'**allais** me promener.	**Every time when I had** *dined* *I* **used to go** *for a walk.*
Quand j'**eus** dîné, j'**allai** me promener.	**When I had** *dined I* **went** *for a walk.*

* **Me dis-je** (Preterite) would be quite correct here ; with this difference however, that it would imply that the thought struck him *then*, whilst the Imparfait denotes that it gradually arose along with the ideas mentioned before.

S'il **avait travaillé*** il serait riche maintenant.	*If he had worked, he would be rich now.*
Dès qu'il **eut fini**† il partit.	*As soon as he had finished, he set off.*

* A fact not accomplished (§ 66, Obs.). † Accomplished fact (§ 66, Obs.).

Obs. In accordance with this distinction, the Passé Antérieur is used almost exclusively with *Conjunctions of Time:*—

quand, lorsque, *when;* **après que,** *after;* **à peine ... que,** *hardly ... when;* **dès que, aussitôt que,** *as soon as;* **ne ... pas plus tôt ... que,** *no sooner ... than:*—

Elle n'eut pas plus tôt appris cette nouvelle qu'elle se mit à pleurer.

§ 72. The *Future Present* and *Future Perfect* are used as in English to express actions expected to happen or to be accomplished at some future time; with this difference between the two languages that after the Conjunctions of time—

when **quand, lorsque**; *as soon as* **dès que, aussitôt que**; *as long as* **tant que, aussi longtemps que**; English usage admits of the *Present* (Simple or Perfect) being employed instead of the *Future* (Simple or Perfect), whilst in French the latter only may be used; as,

Quand il **viendra** faites-le monter.	*When he* **comes** *show him upstairs.*
Dès que j'**aurai fini**, j'irai vous voir.	*As soon as I* **have finished** *I shall call on you.*
Tant que je **vivrai** ...	*As long as I* **live** ...
Tu recueilleras ce que tu **auras semé.**	*You will reap what you* **have sown.**

Comp. Lat. Ut sementem **feceris,** ita metes.

Thus also in many idiomatic phrases:—

Advienne que **pourra.**	*Come what may.*
Comme il vous **plaira.**	*As you like it.*
Rira bien qui **rira** le dernier	*Let him laugh who wins.*
Ecrive qui **voudra.**	*Let him write who likes.*

Obs. 1. After **si** the Future (or Conditional) is generally only used when **si** means *whether,* but hardly ever when it means *if* or *when*:—

Je ne sais pas s'il **viendra.**	*I don't know whether he will come.*
Je ne savais pas s'il **viendrait.**	*I did not know whether he would come.*

But—

S'il **vient** il sera le bien venu.	*If he comes he will be welcome.*
S'il **venait** il serait le bien venu.	*If he came he would be welcome.*

Obs. 2. The Future Present is often used to express an *Imperative* and the Future Past a *Supposition* :—

Tu **respecteras** tes parents.	*Thou shalt respect thy parents.*
Vous **saurez** que je suis un citoyen romain.	*You must know that I am a Roman citizen.*
Il **aura été** malade.	*He must have been ill.*

Obs. 3. Here may be classed the *Immediate* Future (Syn. Table, III., *b* and *c*) viewed from the Present or Past :—

La marée **va** monter.	*The tide* **is about to** *rise.*
La marée **allait** monter.	*The tide* **was about to** *rise.*

Obs. 4. *An action to be done*, whether viewed from the Present or Past is rendered by the Present or Past of **devoir** :—

Je **dois** aller ; je **devais** aller.	*I* **am to** *go ; I* **was to** *go.*

THE CONDITIONAL.

Résumé.

The Conditional used in—

I. Principal Clauses—

(*a*) dependent on a contingency, (*b*) for the sake of deference.

II. Dependent Clauses—as a Future Imperfect.

Obs. The Conditional in Concessive Clauses.

The *Conditional* (Present and Past) has two main functions; it is used—

§ 73. I. *In Principal Clauses*—

(*a*) to express an Action, the accomplishment of which depends on a *condition* either expressed in a subordinate clause or understood (the Verb in the Conditional does not itself, as the term would seem to imply, express the condition, see § 74) :—

Je le **récompenserais** s'il travaillait.	*I should reward him if he worked.*
Je l'**aurais récompensé** s'il avait travaillé.	*I should have rewarded him if he had worked.*
Je me **plairais** / Je me **serais plu** dans votre compagnie.*	*I should be pleased* / *I should have been pleased* *with your company.*
Je n'**irais** certainement pas.†	*I should certainly not go.*

* The Condition expressed by an *Adverbial phrase* = si j'étais dans votre compagnie.

† The Condition *understood*:—si j'étais à votre place.

(*b*) to express a *Wish, Assertion, Supposition,* or *Doubt,* etc., with *deference* or *reserve;* as,

Je **voudrais** bien vous parler en particulier.	*I should like to talk to you privately.*
Je **parierais** qu'il est innocent.	*I should wager anything that he is innocent.*
Quoi, vous **pourriez** ... ?	*What, you presume ... ?*
Serait-il vrai qu'il a été élu ?	*Can it be true that he has been elected ?*
Je ne **saurais** vous le dire.	*I am afraid I cannot tell you.*

Obs. 1. Here may be classed the use of the Conditional to state *indirectly* a fact for the accuracy of which the writer does not want to be responsible :—

Selon le journal du soir un incendie se **serait déclaré** hier au Havre ; vingt maisons **auraient été** consumées.

Obs. 2. The *Pluperfect Subjunctive* is frequently used instead of the Conditional Past ;—

Quiconque l'**eût dit, eût** (aurait) **passé** pour un visionnaire.

§ 74. II. *In Dependent Clauses* as a *Future Imperfect,* i.e.,* to express a Future contingency viewed from the Past

---

* This use of the Conditional is the natural outcome of the formation of that tense, which is in strict analogy with the formation of the Future: for just as the *Future* is formed by—

the Infinitive + *Present* of Auxiliary Verb :—

aimer -ai, -as, -a ; -(av)ons, -(av)ez, -ont.

so the *Conditional* by—

the Infinitive + *Imperfect* of Auxiliary Verb :—

aimer -(av)ais, -(av)ais, -(av)ait ; -(av)ions ; -(av)iez ; -(av)aient.

See Second Year, § 45, 5. Compare also Max Müller's *Lectures on Language* II., Sixth Lecture.

(whilst the Future Present denotes a Future contingency viewed from the *Present*), especially after Verbs of *decreeing*, *declaring*, *thinking*, *knowing*, and the like; as,

Je **savais** qu'il **viendrait.**	*I* **knew** *that he* **would** *come.*
(Je **sais** qu'il **viendra.**)	(*I* **know** *that he* **will** *come.*)
Le duc **ordonna** que le jugement **serait prononcé.**	*The duke* **ruled** *that judgment* **should** *be pronounced.*
(Le duc **ordonne** que le jugement **sera prononcé.**)	(*The duke* **rules** *that judgment* **shall** *be pronounced.*)
Je **croyais** qu'il **pleuvrait.**	*I* **thought** *it* **would** *rain.*
(Je **crois** qu'il **pleuvra.**)	(*I* **think** *it* **will** *rain.*)

Obs. Thus also in *Concessive* Clauses:—

Je ne le **croirais** pas, quand même je le **verrais**, or—reversing *apodosis* and *protasis*—	*I should not believe it even if I saw it.*
Je le **verrais** que je ne le **croirais** pas.	*Even though I were to see it, I should not believe it.*

For the conditional after **si**, *whether;* see § 72, Obs. 1.

B.—The Subjunctive Mood.

Résumé.

General Principles.—Characteristic features of the Subjunctive in French.

Special Rules.*—I. The *Subjunctive in Substantive Clauses* linked by **que**: after Verbs (*a*) of Wishing; (*b*) of Emotion; (*c*) of Doubt; (*d*) Impersonal.

II. The *Subjunctive in Adjective Clauses*, linked by a *Relative Pronoun:* after Verbs expressing (*a*) a Purpose; (*b*) a Negation, Condition, etc.; (*c*) after a Superlative.

III. The *Subjunctive in Adverbial Clauses*, linked by *Subordinate Conjunctions* of (*a*) Purpose; (*b*) Time; (*c*) Concession or Condition.

IV. The *Subjunctive in Principal Sentences:* (*a*) Optative; (*b*) Dubitative; (*c*) Concessive or Conditional.

---

* Dependent clauses are classified, according as they do duty for

(1) Substantives into Substantive-Clauses.
(2) Adjectives into Adjective-Clauses.
(3) Adverbs into Adverbial-Clauses; as,

(1) *That Julius Cæsar invaded Britain* (= *Julius Cæsar's invasion of Britain*) is well known.
(2) The man *who is prudent* (= The *prudent* man) looks to the future.
(3) On Linden *when the sun was low* (= *at sunset*).

N.B. The use of Subjunctive in Principal Sentences (*i.e.*, the Conjunctive) being quite exceptional in French, we are here first of all concerned with its use in Dependent Clauses.

§ 75. General Principle.—Both the Indicative and Subjunctive may be used in Dependent Clauses; as,

Il est **certain** qu'il le **sait.** Il **importe** qu'il le **sache.**

The adoption of one or the other depends entirely on the meaning conveyed by the *Principal* Sentence; accordingly we put the Verb in the Dependent Clause—

in the *Indicative* Mood, if the Principal Sentence implies (*indicates*) that the action expressed in the dependent clause is a *matter of fact*;*

in the *Subjunctive* Mood, if the Principal Sentence implies that the action expressed in the dependent clause is merely *conceived in the mind* of the speaker.

As the term *Subjunctive* implies, the action is represented as being *subjoined to* (under the yoke of) some leading thought contained in the Principal sentence—be it a *wish*, an *emotion*, a *doubt*, or any *notion* as distinguished from *fact.*

Thus in the sentence—

Je **sais** qu'il **viendra,** *I know that he will come;*

the fact of his coming is indicated absolutely and without any mental reservation, hence the use of the *Indicative* form of Conjugation for the Verb *indicating* that fact. But in the sentence—

Son père **veut** qu'il **vienne;** *His father* **wishes** *that he* **should come;**

the contingency (eventual fact) of his coming is *in the speaker's mind*, subjoined to the *will* of another (his father).

* The fact itself may be true or not, but anyhow it is stated as true.

Again, if I say—

Je **regrette** qu'il **vienne** ;	*I am* **sorry** *he* **should** *come ;*
Je **doute** qu'il **vienne** ;	*I* **doubt** *if he will come ;*

his coming is described as being subject to a *feeling* (*i.e.*, sorrow, doubt) ; hence the use of the *Subjunctive* form of conjugation for the Verb describing an action as under the influence of a preponderating conception.*

SPECIAL RULES.—

A Verb is, according to the General Rule (§ 75), put in the **Subjunctive**—

§ 76. (I.) in *Dependent Substantive-Clauses* linked by **que** with the Principal Sentence containing a Verb which expresses—

(*a*) a *Wish, Command, Consent, Necessity :* –

Vouloir, désirer, souhaiter, prier, supplier.
Demander, exiger, and the like ;
Permettre, accorder, approuver, trouver bon.
Souffrir, consentir, and their opposites.
Empêcher, défendre, désapprouver, trouver mauvais ; as,

Que **voulez**-vous que je **fasse ?**	*What will you have me do ?*
Que **vouliez**-vous que je **fisse ?**	*What did you wish me to do ?*
Je **trouve bon** que vous **reveniez.**	*I approve of your coming back.*
Il **souffrait** rarement qu'on lui **parlât** et jamais qu'on **l'osât** contredire.	*He seldom allowed any one to speak to him and never to contradict him.*
Tibérius répondit que son **intention** était qu'on **tondit** ses brebis et non pas qu'on les **écorchât.**	*Tiberius replied that his will was that his sheep should be fleeced and not flayed.*
La pluie **empêche** qu'on **n'aille** se promener.	*The rain prevents our taking a walk.*

Obs. 1. As after Verbs of *decreeing, enacting*, and the like, the result is considered as certain, the Verb is put in the Future or Conditional (see § 74) ; as,

Ordonné qu'il **sera** fait rapport **à** la cour
Du foin qu'une poule peut manger en un jour.

* In other words, a statement may be said to be affected by the mind of the speaker, as a ray of light is affected by its passage through a prism.

Obs. 2. For the use of the *Infinitive* when the Subject of the dependent clause is the same as that of the principal sentences, see § 85.

(*b*) an *Affection of the mind* (*emotion*)—*Joy*, *Sorrow*, *Fear*, *Surprise*, *Indignation*, *Shame*, and the like—

Se réjouir, s'affliger, regretter, s'étonner, etc.;
Être charmé (ravi, enchanté); être content (bien aise); être surpris (étonné), etc.;
Avoir peur, avoir honte, avoir à cœur, etc.; as,

Je **suis bien aise** que vous **ayez** réussi.	*I am very glad you have succeeded.*
J'**étais enchanté** que vous **eussiez** réussi.	*I was delighted you had succeeded.*
Nous **sommes ravis** que cela **soit** arrivé.	*We are delighted that that should have happened.*
Je **trouve mauvais** que vous **ayez** fait cette démarche.	*I do not approve of your having taken this step.*
Elle **est fâchée** que vous ne lui **écriviez** pas plus souvent.	*She is offended that you do not write to her oftener.*
Je m'**étonne** qu'il ne **voie** pas le danger où il est.	*I am astonished he does not see the danger in which he is placed.*
Je **suis d'avis** qu'il **parte**.	*I am of opinion that he should set off.*

Obs. 1. After Verbs and Phrases of *fearing—craindre*, *avoir peur*, *trembler*, *frémir*, *être inquiet*, the Verb in the Dependent Clause is, in strict analogy with Latin, preceded by—

ne to express that something *will occur*; and by—
ne pas ,, ,, ,, *will not occur*; as,

Il craint que je **ne** vienne.	*He is afraid I am coming.* (Timet ne veniam).
Il craint que je **ne** vienne **pas.**	*He is afraid I am not coming.* (Timet [ut] ne non veniam).

But if the Principal Sentence itself is negative, the **ne** (in the first instance) is not used—

Il **ne** craint **pas** que je vienne.	*He is not afraid that I am coming.*
Il ne craint pas que je ne vienne pas.	*He is not afraid that I am not coming.*

The use of this **ne** is easily accounted for if we bear in mind that—

I fear he will **come** = I hope he will **not** come = I fear **lest** he may come.

Obs. 2. The same rule applies to the Verbs—empêcher, éviter, prendre garde, se garder, se donner garde, douter (§ 106, *a*) :—

Évitez qu'il **ne** vienne.

Obs. 3. Verbs of *emotion*—except those of *fearing*—may be construed with **de ce que** followed by the Indicative, instead of **que** with the *Subjunctive;* as,

Je suis fâché **de ce que** vous ne m'avez pas prévenu. See also § 85, Infinitive.

(*c*) *Doubt, Denial, Ignorance,* and the like :—

Douter, nier, dissimuler, démentir, disconvenir, ignorer, etc. ; as,

Je **doute** qu'il **vienne.**	*I doubt if he will come.*
J'**ignorais** qu'il **fût*** arrivé.	*I did not know he had arrived.*
Doutez-vous qu'il **ne* vienne ?**	*Do you doubt he will come ?*
Peut-on **nier** que la santé **ne*** **soit** préférable aux richesses ?	*Can it be denied that health is preferable to wealth ?*
Il ne **se doutait** pas qu'on **eût** des preuves contre lui.	*He did not suspect that they had evidence against him.*

Obs. As Verbs of *saying, thinking, perceiving,* if used *interrogatively, negatively,* or *conditionally, ipso facto* imply *doubt, denial,* or *ignorance,* the same Rule on the use of the Subjunctive holds good with them. Great care must, however, be taken to ascertain from the context whether this interrogative, negative, or conditional form of speech is used *bonâ fide* as such, or whether it is merely used figuratively in the sense of an *affirmation;* the latter, whether expressed or implied, requiring the Indicative according to the general rule :—

The Indicative (or Conditional) after Verbs of Saying, etc., used affirmatively, also if used negatively or interrogatively, provided that no doubt be implied : —	*The Subjunctive after Verbs of Saying,* etc., used negatively, interrogatively, or conditionally, and virtually implying doubt :—
Il **croit** que le vendredi **est** un jour malheureux.	Quant à moi, je **ne crois pas** que le vendredi **soit** un jour malheureux. —
Je **pense** qu'il **dit** cela pour vous contrarier.	**Ne pensez pas** que je **dise** cela pour vous contrarier.

* Used negatively or interrogatively, Verbs of this class generally take **ne ;** so that **que** and **ne** are virtually the Latin *quin* :

Nemo dubitabat *quin* spectaret.

Je n'ignore pas qu'il a voulu me nuire, with the Indicative : *je n'ignore pas,* being = je sais bien.

Je **croyais** qu'il **arriverait** aujourd'hui.
Qu'il est insensé ! il **ne croit pas** qu'il y **a** un Dieu.
Savez-vous qu'il **est** revenu ?

Si je **croyais** qu'il **arrivât** aujourd'hui je l'attendrais.
Il **ne croit pas** qu'il y **ait** des revenants ; ni moi non plus.
Savez-vous qu'il **soit** revenu ? *

Ce que vous dites **là prouve** qu'il **est** riche, mais **ne prouve pas** qu'il **soit** honnête.
Pensez-vous qu'il **faille** croire tout ce qu'il dit ?

(*d*) With *Impersonal Verbs* the same Rules hold good as those laid down in (*a*), (*b*), and (*c*) : that is, those indicating a *fact* take the *Indicative*, whilst those (by far the greater number) expressing a *Will*, *Necessity*, *Emotion*, *Doubt*, or *Denial* require the dependent Verb in the *Subjunctive :*

(1) *with the Subjunctive—*

Il faut, il est nécessaire ; il est important (urgent), il importe ; il convient, il est à propos, il est temps ; il est juste, naturel, bon ; il est rare, curieux, remarquable, singulier, surprenant, étrange, inouï, extraordinaire ; il vaut mieux, il est préférable ; il (c') est dommage, regrettable ; il est possible, il se peut ; il semble ; † il est impossible, il ne se peut pas ; il suffit, c'est assez ; il est facile, difficile, douteux ; il s'en faut (de) beaucoup, or, beaucoup s'en faut ; il s'en faut (de) peu, or, peu s'en faut ; as,

Il faut que je m'en **aille.**	*I must go away.*
Il a fallu que je m'en **allasse.**	*I had (was obliged) to go away.*
Peu **importe** que ce **soit** vous ou lui.	*It matters little whether it is you or he.*
Il est juste que vous le **dédommagiez.**	*It is fair you should compensate him.*
Il peut se faire qu'il ne **vienne** pas.	*It may be he will not come.*
Il ne me plaît pas que vous y **alliez.**	*I don't approve of your going there.*
Quel **dommage** que tu ne **sois** pas venu.	*What a pity you should not have come.*
A quoi **tient-il** que nous ne **partions ?**	*How is it we do not set off?*

* If **si** can be substituted for **que,** it is evident that doubt is implied.

† With **il semble** the Subjunctive, with **il me semble** the Indicative, is the more usual construction.

Il s'en est peu fallu qu'il n'**ait** été tué.	*He was well-nigh killed.*
Tant s'en faut * que j'y **consente,** qu'au contraire je ferai tout pour l'empêcher.	*So far from consenting to it I shall do everything to prevent him.*

(2) *with the Indicative or Subjunctive ;* see § 76, *c, Obs.*—

Il est vrai, sûr, certain ; il s'ensuit, il résulte ; il est clair, évident, visible, manifeste ; il est probable, il y a apparence, il paraît ; as,

Il est probable qu'il **renoncera** à ce dessein.	**Il n'est pas probable** qu'il **ait** dit cela.
Je me sens un peu fatigué ; **il est vrai** que j'**ai** travaillé plus que de coutume.	**Est-il vrai** que vous l'**ayez** fait ? **S'il est vrai** que vous **ayez** dit cela...

§ 77. (II.) The **Subjunctive** *in Adjective-Clauses* linked by a Relative Pronoun to a Principal Clause containing a word which expresses—

(*a*) a *Purpose* intended or *Result* expected—whilst, of course, Purpose achieved and Result obtained or considered certain, require the Indicative ; as,

(1) with the *Subjunctive :*	(2) with the *Indicative :*
J'irai dans un pays où je **sois** en paix.	J'irai dans un pays où je **serai** en paix.
I shall go to a country where (*I* **hope**) **I may** *live in peace.*	*I shall go to a country where* (**I know**) **I shall** *live in peace.*
Montrez-moi une faute que j'**aie** faite !	Montrez-moi **la** faute que **j'ai** faite.
Show me **any** *mistake I have made.*	*Show me the mistake which* (**I know**) *I have made.*
Je cherche un dictionnaire qui **contienne** les etymologies.	Voici enfin un dictionnaire qui **contient** les etymologies.
I am looking for some dictionary containing the etymologies.	*Here at last is a dictionary* (**actually**) *giving the etymologies.*
Ils élurent un roi qui **pût** les défendre.	*They elected a king who* (**in their expectation**) *could defend them.*

Comp. Lat. Themistocles servum misit *ut* (*qui*) *nuntiaret*...

* Lat. Tantum abest ut...

(*b*) a *Negation, Indirect Interrogation*, or *Condition*, denying or restricting the statement contained in the Dependent Clause (always reserving the cases in which the Negation, etc., is only a figure of speech); as,

Combien voit-on de parvenus qui **soient** affables et modestes?	Combien on voit de parvenus qui **sont** hautains et insolents!
Je ne connais **personne** qui **soit** vraiment heureux.	*I do not know anybody who is truly happy.*
Que **puis-je** vous offrir qui **soit** digne de vous?	*What can I offer you that may be worthy of you?*
S'il y eut jamais un moment où il **fût** facile de s'entendre c'est le moment présent.	*If there ever was a favourable time for coming to terms it is the present time.*
Il n'y a **personne qui** le **sache.**	*There is nobody* **who** *knows it.*
Il n'y a **personne qui ne** le **sache.**	*There is nobody* **but** *knows it.*

Comp. Lat. *Nullum* est animal præter hominem *quod habeat* notitiam aliquam Dei.

(*c*) an *Adjective in the Superlative* or one conveying the idea of *Exclusiveness* or *Limitation*:—le premier, le dernier, le seul, l'unique, le principal, etc.; here again, however, the Indicative is used whenever the statement is made as a matter of *fact* and not of *opinion*; as,

L'homme est le **seul** des animaux qui **soit** obligé de se vêtir.	C'est la **seule** loi qu'il **faut** suivre.
Man is (*as far as I know*) *the only animal compelled to clothe itself.*	*This is the only law that must be observed.*
C'est la **plus belle** décoration qu'on **puisse** s'imaginer.	*It is the most beautiful decoration that can be conceived.*
C'est la **moindre** récompense qu'on lui **doive.**	*That is the least reward due to him.*

Obs. In "Cet avocat est le premier entre ceux que nous avons," the Verb *avons* refers only to **ceux** and not to the Superlative; hence the Indicative.

Comp. Lat. Sapientia est ***una quæ*** mæstitiam *pellat* **ex animis...**

§ 78. (III.) The **Subjunctive** *in Adverbial Clauses* linked to the Principal Sentence by a Subordinate Conjunction expressing—

(*a*) a *Purpose* intended or *Result* expected (see II., *a*)—whilst the Indicative is required in cases of Purpose effected or certain :—

Afin que, pour que, *in order that;*
De manière que, de (en) sorte que, de façon que, *so that;*

And their opposites :—

Sans que, *without;* de peur (crainte) que...ne, *lest;* as,

Je ferai mon devoir **de manière qu'**on n'**ait** rien à me reprocher.	J'ai fait mon devoir **de manière qu'**on n'**a** rien à me reprocher.
Ce livre est toujours sur le bureau **afin qu'**on **puisse** le consulter.	*This book is always on the desk in order that it may be referred to.*
Il suffit qu'il soit votre maître **pour que** vous le **respectiez.**	*It is sufficient for you that he is your master for you to respect him.*
Cachez-lui votre dessein **de peur qu'**il **ne** le traverse.	*Conceal your design from him, lest he should thwart it.*
Deviez-vous agir **sans qu'**on vous l'**eût** ordonné ?	*Ought you to have acted thus without being ordered ?*

(*b*) a *Time, expected* or *contingent* :—

Avant que, *before;* que...ne, *until;* en attendant que, *until:* jusqu'à ce que, *until;* (also with Indicative, if the time is *accomplished*) :

Tenez-vous tranquille **en attendant que** vous **soyez** mieux informé.	*Keep quiet until you are better informed.*
Partez **avant qu'**il **soit** trop tard.	*Set off before it is too late.*
Je ne partirai pas **qu'**il **ne** m'ait payé.	*I shall not leave until he pay me.*
J'attendrai **jusqu'à ce qu'**il **ait** cessé de pleuvoir.	*I shall wait until it has left off raining.*

Obs. Thus also the two Conjunctions of place—où que, en quelque lieu que, *wherever* :—

Où que vous **soyez.**	*Wherever you are.*

(*c*) a *Concession* or *Condition* :—

Quoique, bien que, encore que, *although;* quelque (si)...que, *however;* quoi que, *whatever* (tout...que, also with Indic.), *much as;* quel...que, *whatever;* malgré que, nonobstant que, *although;* soit que, *be it that;* pourvu que, *provided;* supposé que, *supposing that;* pour peu que..., *if... ever so little;* en cas que, *in case that;* si tant est que, *if it be true that* ;

also Conjunctive phrases implying the contrary of *Concession* :—

Non que, non pas que, ce n'est pas que, *not that;* ce n'est pas que ... ne, *not but that;* loin que, *so far from;* as,

Quoiqu'il **soit** pauvre, il est généreux.	*Although he is poor, he is generous.*
Quoi que vous **fassiez,** faites-le bien.	*Whatever you do, do it well.*
Quelques efforts **que** vous **fassiez**...	*Whatever efforts you make...*
Quelles que soient vos intentions...	*Whatever your intentions may be...*
Quelque riches **qu'**ils **soient.**	*However rich they may be (rich as they are).*
Pour peu que vous m'**aimiez,** ne me parlez plus de cette affaire.	*If you love me, don't mention that affair to me again.*
Il le fera **pourvu que** vous lui **donniez** les garanties nécessaires.	*He will do it provided you give him the necessary guarantees.*
Non qu'il **ne soit** fâcheux de le mécontenter.	*Not but that it is awkward to displease him.*
Malgré qu'il en **ait,** nous savons son secret.	*In spite of him, we know his secret.*

Obs. After **si** no other tense of the Subjunctive but the Pluperfect is admissible; but **que** (which is frequently used for other Conjunctions to avoid their repetition) requires the Subjunctive if used instead of **si** :—

Si vous le rencontrez et **qu'**il vous **demande** où je suis.

§ 79. (IV.) The use of the SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL SENTENCES is limited to a few ready-made phrases (mostly of an interjectional character); they may be classified into—

(*a*) *Optative* and *Concessive Clauses; i.e.*, expressing a *Wish* or *Concession;* as,

Grand bien vous fasse !	*Much good may it do you !*
Ne vous (en) déplaise !	*With all due deference to you !*
A Dieu ne plaise !	*God forbid !*
Plût à Dieu ! Dieu veuille ! Fasse le ciel !	*God (heaven) grant...*
Puissiez-vous réussir !	*May you succeed !*
Vive le roi.	*Long live the king !*
Écrive qui voudra !	*Let him write who has a mind for it !*
Vous le voulez ?—Soit !	*You wish it ?—Be it so !*

(*b*) *Dubitative Clauses, i.e.*, expressing a *Doubt;* as,

Que je sache.	*As far as I know.*
Pas que je sache.	*Not that I know of.*
Je ne sache personne...	*Nobody as far as I know...*

(*c*) *Conditional Clauses, i.e.*, expressing a *Contingency*, as,

Des flatteurs l'entourent; **vienne** une disgrâce, il sera seul.	*He is surrounded by flatterers; but if a misfortune should befall him, he will be forsaken.*

Vienne la St. Martin ! = Quand la St. Martin viendra.

Obs. For the use of the Subjunctive Pluperfect instead of the *Conditional Past*, see § 73, Obs. 2.

C.—The Infinitive.

Résumé.

General Principles.—The Infinitive a Verbal Noun; the Verbal Forms it corresponds to in English and Latin.

Special Rules.—I. The Pure Infinitive (without Preposition):

(*a*) as Noun Subject; (*b*) as Noun Predicative Complement; (*c*) as Complement of Verbs of motion; (*d*) as Direct Object of Transitive Verbs; (*e*) as Complement of the Noun-Object (= Accusative with Infinitive) after **faire** and **laisser**.

II. The Infinitive with **de**:

(*a*) as logical Subject of Impersonal Verbs;
(*b*) as Direct Object of Transitive Verbs;
(*c*) as Complement of—
(1) Nouns, (2) Intransitive Verbs, (3) Adjectives.

III. The Infinitive with **à**:

(*a*) as Direct Object of a few Transitive Verbs;
(*b*) as Attribute or Complement of—
(1) Nouns, (2) Intransitive Verbs, (3) Verbal Phrases, (4) Adjectives.

Verbs, Nouns and Adjectives taking the Infinitive both with **de** and **à**.

IV. The Infinitive with other Prepositions.

The Infinitive used instead of the Finite Verb.

---

§ 80. General Principles.—

The Infinitive is a *Verbal Noun:*

(1) As a *Verb* it is used both in the Active and Passive Voices, in the Present and Past—but not Future—Tenses, irrespective of Number and Person:—

ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
Pres.—Mordre.	Être mordu.
Past— Avoir mordu.	Avoir été mordu.

Like other Verbs it has the power of governing cases :—

Acc. Avouer **sa faute.**
Gen. Parler **de sa faute.**
Dat. Se complaire **à sa faute.**

(For other Prepositions see § 85.)

(2) As a *Noun* it may be said to be Neutral in Gender. In the few instances, however, in which it is used with the Definite Article, as—*le boire et le manger*—it is treated as Masculine Singular.

Like other Nouns it may be used as the *Subject*, *Object*, or *Complement* of a sentence, also as the *Attribute* or *Apposite* to a Noun :—

(*a*) as *Subject.*

Mentir est honteux = Le mensonge est honteux.

(*b*) as *Direct Object.*

Il osa **mentir** = Il osa dire un mensonge.

(*c*) as *Indirect Object.*

Il s'obstine **à mentir** = Il s'obstine au mensonge.

(*d*) as *Predicative Complement.*

Calomnier, c'est **mentir** = La calomnie est un mensonge.

(*e*) as *Attribute.*

Le vice de **mentir** = Le vice du mensonge.

(*f*) as *Apposite.*

Il n'eut qu'une seule pensée : **s'arracher** au danger.

Obs. 1. As compared with English, it answers to both English Verbal Nouns ; *i.e.*,

(*a*) the Infinitive :— *to lie*, mentir.
(*b*) the Gerund in *-ing* :— *lying*, mentir.

Obs. 2. As compared with Latin, it answers to—

(*a*) the Infinitive—

Turpe est mentiri. { Mentir est honteux. / Il est honteux de mentir.

(*b*) the Gerund—

Aqua utilis est bibendo. L'eau est bonne à boire.

(*c*) the Gerundive—

Ars educandorum puerorum.	L'art d'élever les garçons.

(*d*) the Supine in *um*—

Cubitum ire.	Aller se coucher.

(*e*) the Supine in *u*—

Mirabile dictu.	Merveilleux à raconter.

§ 81. I. The PURE INFINITIVE, *i.e.*, without Preposition, is used—

(*a*) as the *Subject* of a Sentence; as,

Haïr est un tourment.	*To hate is a torment.*
Mentir est honteux.	*To lie* (*lying*) *is shameful.*

Obs. Thus also with Impersonal Verbs as the real (logical) Subject:—

For—Il fait cher vivre dans ce pays, *is virtually*—Vivre est cher, etc.
It is expensive to live in this country, ,, *Living is expensive*, etc.

(*b*) as the *Predicate* to Verbs of *Being*, *Seeming*, and the like:—

Être, with **ce** (with **il**, see § 82, *a*) se trouver, sembler, paraître, être censé (supposé); as,

Espérer c'est **jouir**.	*To hope is to enjoy.*
Ils paraissent **hésiter**.	*They seem to hesitate.*
Elle est censée **être** très savante.	*She is supposed to be very learned.*

Obs. Notice in—Il vaudrait mieux **rester** que **de partir** si tard—the use of **de** before an Infinitive standing as the second member of a comparison.

(*c*) as a *Complement* (Extension) to Verbs of *Motion* (Lat. Supine); as,

Allons nous **promener**.	*Let us go for a walk.*
Elle **descendit ouvrir** la porte.	*She went down stairs to open the door.*
Venez vous **asseoir** auprès de moi.	*Come* **and** *sit beside me.*
Envoyez chercher le médecin.	*Send for the physician.*
On **allait** se **mettre** à table.	*They were just about to sit down to table.*

Comp. the Lat. Supine—Cubitum ire. Aller se coucher.

(*d*) as the *Direct Object* of Verbs of *Thinking*, *Declaring*, *Wishing* and *Perceiving*:—penser, croire, s'imaginer, espérer, dire, déclarer, assurer, désirer, souhaiter, entendre, voir; and of what may be called *Auxiliary Verbs of Mood*—vouloir, pouvoir, devoir, falloir, also savoir, oser, laisser, and faire (see *f*); as,

Il a **cru** bien **faire**. (Comp. § 86).	**He** *thought* **he*** *was acting properly.*
Je **crois entendre** le son des cloches.	**I** *think* **I*** *hear the bells ringing.*
Il **prétend** y **avoir été** forcé.	**He** *maintains* **he** *was compelled to it.*
Daignez m'**honorer** d'un mot de réponse.	*Please honour me with a word in reply.*
Nous **désirons** vous **être** utile.	*We wish to serve you.*
Pouvez (savez) - vous **faire** cela.	*Can you do that?*
Il vous **faut vaincre** ou **mourir**.	*You must conquer or die.*
Un homme d'honneur **doit tenir** sa parole.	*A man of honour must keep his word.*

(*e*) as the *Complement of the Noun-Object* (answering to the Latin and English Accusative with Infinitive Construction) after Verbs of *Perceiving*:—

Voir, regarder, entendre, écouter, sentir; also after—laisser and faire, see Obs. 2; as,

Voyez-vous **venir** votre frère?—	*Do you see your brother coming?—*
Oui, je le **vois venir** de loin.	*Yes, I see him come from a distance.*
Les avez-vous **entendus chanter**?— †	*Have you heard them sing?—*
Non, mais j'ai **entendu chanter** Mme Viardot.	*No, but I have heard Madam Viardot.*
Je **sentais battre** mon cœur.	*I felt my heart beat.*
Laissez jouer ces enfants.	*Let these children play.*

---

* Notice the preference of English for *co-ordinate* construction.

† It is important to remember here that in this construction the French *Active* Infinitive answers to both the *Passive* and *Active* Infinitive in English; as,

Avez-vous **entendu chanter** cette hymne?	*Have you heard this hymn sung?*

Obs. 1. In Adjective Clauses, the Accusative with Infinitive may stand not only after Verbs of *Perceiving* but also of *Thinking* and *Saying*:—

Le phénix est un oiseau que l'on **dit renaître** de sa cendre.	*The Phœnix is a bird which is said to revive from its ashes.*

Obs. 2. The *Infinitive* after **faire** and **laisser,** on account of its frequent use and the different ways it may be rendered in English, requires special attention: —

(1) answering the English *Active* Infinitive:	(2) answering the English *Passive* Infinitive:
Je les ai **fait** (**laissé**) **sortir** (§ 99).	Je les ai **fait** (**laissé**) **punir.**
I have ordered (*allowed*) *them to go out.*	*I have ordered* (*suffered*) *them to be punished.*

(1) **Faites**-le **entrer** (monter).	**Show** *him in* (*up stairs*).
Je le lui **ferai faire** comme il faut (§ 83).	*I will* **make** *him* **do** *it properly.*
(2) Savez-vous vous **faire comprendre?**	*Can you* **make** *yourself* **understood?**
Chez qui **faites**-vous **relier** vos livres?	*By whom do you* **get** *your books* **bound?**
Il s'est **fait tuer.**	*He* **got killed.**
Il se **laissa tromper.**	*He* **suffered** *himself* **to be imposed on.**
Elle s'est **fait peindre.**	*She has* **had** *her likeness* **'taken.'**

Obs. The Infinitive may be used *elliptically*, in exclamations and questions :—

Il n'a pas de quoi vivre.	*He has not enough to live on.*
Il ne sait que faire de son temps.	*He does not know how to employ his time.*
Plutôt souffrir que mourir !	*Rather suffer than die.*
Pourquoi vous arroger ce droit ?	*Why* (*should you*) *claim this right?*

N.B.—All Prepositions which admit of taking a Verb for their complement, *i.e.*, **de, à, pour, après, sans, par,** require the Verb in the *Infinitive*, except **en,** which is the only Preposition that takes the Present Participle.

§ 82. II. The INFINITIVE WITH de is used—

(*a*) as the *logical Subject* with Impersonal Verbs and Phrases ; as,

Il me **tarde d'achever** mon ouvrage.	*I long to finish my work.*
C'est déraisonner **que** * **de parler** ainsi.	*It is nonsense to talk thus.*

* When for the sake of stress the Infinitive Complement is placed before the Infinitive-Subject the latter is generally emphasised by **que.**

(*b*) as the *Direct Object* of most Transitive Verbs (see § 9), especially those denoting *Command*, *Advice*, *Entreaty*, *Cause*, *Emotion* (*Joy*, *Fear*, *Sorrow*, etc.).

It will be noticed that the very same Verbs which take their Noun-Object without Preposition, may require their Infinitive-Object with **de**, and sometimes with **à**; as,

Promettre une **visite,**	*but*	promettre **de visiter.**
Permettre un **achat,**	„	permettre **d'acheter.**
Défendre le **vin,**	„	défendre **de boire.**
Craindre la **mort,**	„	craindre **de mourir,** etc.

Je vous **demande de** m'**écouter.**	*Pray, listen to me.*
Cessez de faire du tapage.	*Stop that noise.*
Je vous **promets de suivre** vos conseils.	*I promise you to follow your advice.*
Il **regrette d'avoir** négligé ses devoirs.	*He is sorry he has neglected his duties.*
Je me **propose de** lui **écrire.**	*I intend writing to him.*
Elle ne vous **pardonnera** jamais **de** lui **avoir** joué ce tour.	*She will never forgive you for having served her this bad turn*
On lui **reproche de servir** deux maîtres à la fois.	*He is reproached with serving two masters at the same time.*

(*c*) as the *Complement* of (1) Nouns, (2) Verbs, and (3) Adjectives, which according to § 9 (*a*) require their Noun-Complement preceded by **de**;* as,

1. L'**art d'écrire.**	*The art of writing.*
Le **plaisir de** vous **voir.**	*The pleasure of seeing you.*
L'**occasion de** lui **être** utile.	*The opportunity of serving him.*
2. L'ennemi **menace de** nous **attaquer.**	*The enemy threatens to attack us.*
Nous nous **réjouissons de** vous **revoir.**	*We are glad to see you again.*
Je me **souviens de l'avoir** vu quelque part.	*I remember having seen him somewhere.*
L'œil ne se **lasse** pas **de voir** cette vallée riante.	*The eye never tires of seeing this smiling valley.*
Je **viens de rencontrer** le cortége.	*I have just met the procession.*

* Compare—On l'accuse **de ce crime,** *with* On l'accuse **d'avoir commis** ce crime.

3. Vous êtes **libre d'accepter** ou **de refuser.**	*You are free to accept or to refuse.*
Il n'est pas **digne de vivre.**	*He is not worthy of life.*
Il est plus **ambitieux de servir** son prince que **de** lui plaire.	*He is more ambitious to serve his sovereign than to please him.*
Je suis **charmé de** vous **rencontrer.**	*I am delighted to meet you.*
Il est **loin de penser** ainsi.	*He is far from thinking thus.*

Obs. An *historical* Infinitive frequently stands absolutely instead of a Finite Verb :—

Aussitôt les ennemis **de s'enfuir** et **de jeter** leurs armes.

§ 83. III. The INFINITIVE WITH **à** is used—

(*a*) as the *Direct Object* after a few Transitive Verbs,* especially those of *Teaching*, *Showing*, and *Learning* :— enseigner, instruire, montrer, apprendre, entendre; also aimer, avoir (il y a), chercher, donner, trouver, essayer, commencer, continuer, préparer; as,

L'habitude **apprend à supporter** la fatigue.	*Habit teaches us how to bear fatigue.*
Montrez-nous **à déchiffrer** ce grimoire.	*Show us how to decipher this scrawl.*
Les cieux **instruisent** la terre **à révérer** leur auteur.	*The heavens teach the earth to worship their creator.*
J'**ai à travailler** ce matin.	*I have to work this morning.*
Qu'**a**-t-on **à** me **reprocher ?**	*What have they to reproach me with ?*
J'**aime** beaucoup **à flaner.**	*I am very fond of lounging.*
Il **trouve à redire** à tout ce qu'on dit.	*He finds fault with everything we say.*

(*b*) as an *Attribute* or *Complement* of (1) Nouns, (2) Verbs, (3) Verbal Phrases and (4) Adjectives — which, according to § 82, *c*,—require their Noun-Complement preceded by **à** :—

* As mentioned in § 82, II., (*b*), the same Verb which takes a Noun-Object without Preposition may require the Infinitive-Object with **à** : Compare—

Il aime le **jeu**—but, Il aime **à jouer.**

(1) after *Nouns*, to denote their *Destination*, *Fitness*, or *Characteristic Quality*—both with *Active* and *Passive* force; as,

Du bois **à brûler.**	*Firewood.*
Machine **à coudre.**	*Sewing-machine.*
Une maison **à louer ou à vendre.**	*A house to let or sell.*
Un ouvrage **à recommencer.**	*A work to be done again.*
Une occasion **à ne pas laisser échapper.**	*A opportunity not to be missed.*
Paris est une ville **à voir.**	*Paris is a city worth seeing.*
Il n'est pas homme **à se rebuter.**	*He is not easily put out.*
C'est un homme **à pendre.**	*A man deserving the halter.*

(2) after *Verbs* denoting *Tendency*, *Purpose*, *Aim*, *Occupation*, *Consent*, *Exhortation*, and the like, answering the questions *to do what? in* or *by doing what?* as,

Cela n'**aboutira qu'à** le perdre.	*That will end in ruining him.*
La chimie a **contribué à** perfectionner l'agriculture.	*Chemistry has contributed to improve agriculture.*
Vous m'avez **autorisé à** faire des démarches.	*You have authorized me to take steps.*
Dans les combats de mer, tout **conspire à** augmenter les périls.	*In naval fights everything combines to increase the perils.*
Voilà un bon livre, je vous **engage à** le lire.	*There is a good book, I invite you to read it.*
J'ai **réussi à** le faire nommer.	*I have succeeded in getting him appointed.*

(3) after *Verbal Phrases*, in answer to the questions—*in* or *by doing what?* as,

Prendre plaisir (goût, soin, etc.) à étudier ;
Passer son temps (ses loisirs, ses jours, sa vie, etc.) à ne rien faire ;
Avoir de la peine (facilité, grâce, etc.) à s'exprimer ;
Mettre son honneur (son ambition, etc.) à ne point céder ; See also § 84 (*b*).

Obs. Here may be classed the Infinitive used *Adverbially* and answering the questions—*how? in what manner or degree? by doing what?* **as,**

A raconter ses maux, souvent on les soulage.	*By relating our sufferings we often relieve them.*
On dirait, **à vous entendre,** que vous êtes bien à plaindre.	*To hear you, one would think you are much to be pitied.*
A dire vrai (la vérité) ...	*To tell the truth...*
A tout prendre ...	*All in all ..*
Elle est laide à faire peur.	*She is ugly enough to frighten one.*
Il ressemble à son père à s'y méprendre.	*He is like his father to a* T.
Chanter à ravir.	*To sing delightfully.*

Also *as a Complement* after the Verb **être** :—

Il est à présumer.	*It is to be presumed.*

(4) after *Adjectives* of a like meaning, with both Active and Passive force (corresponding to the Latin Gerund with ad or to the Supine in u) ; as,

Il est **prompt à** servir ses amis.	*He is ever ready to serve his friends.*
L'homme juste est **lent à** punir.	*The righteous man is slow to punish.*
Nous sommes **prêts à** vaincre ou à mourir.	*We are ready to conquer or to die.*
Il est **enclin à** médire.	*He is given (prone) to slander.*
Il a été **le premier à** remarquer ce phénomène.	*He was the first to observe this phenomenon.*
Cela est **facile à** dire.	*That is easily said.*
Il est **difficile à** contenter.	*He is hard to satisfy.*
Ces crevettes sont **bonnes à** manger.	*These shrimps are good to eat.*
Ce serait trop **long à** expliquer.	*That would be too long to explain.*

Comp. Lat. Puer paratus est ad scribendum. Incredible dictu.

§ 84. The Infinitive is used either with de or à, after

(a) the following *Verbs*, according to their meaning :—

Demander **de,**	*to ask some one to do a thing.*
Demander **à,**	*to ask leave to do a thing.*
Manquer **de,**	*to be deficient in, to fail in ...*
Manquer **à,**	*to neglect, not to fulfil a duty.*
S'occuper **de,**	*to see after.*
S'occuper **à,**	*to be engaged in.*

Tarder **de**, (impersonal) *to long to ...*
Tarder **à**, *to be long* (*late*) *in ...*
Venir **de**, *to have just ...*
Venir **à**, *to happen to ...**

Obs. Résoudre, décider, déterminer, offrir, refuser, as a rule take the Infinitive with **à** if used *Reflectively* :—

Il **refuse de** travailler. Il **se refuse à** travailler.

(*b*) *Substantives*, according as they are used either—

(1) *Definitely* :—

C'est un **plaisir de** vous voir si bien portant.
It is quite a treat to see you so hale and hearty.
Il a pris la **peine de** venir me voir.
He has taken the trouble to call on me.
J'aurai **la facilité de** vous **voir** tous les jours.
I shall have the opportunity of seeing you every day.
L'honneur d'achever cette entreprise vous était réservée.
The honour of carrying out this undertaking was reserved for you.

(2) *Indefinitely, Partitively*, or as *part of a verbal phrase* :—

Cela **fait** (donne du) **plaisir à** voir.
That is gratifying to see.
Je n'**ai** pas **de peine à** vous croire.
I have no difficulty in believing you.
Il **a beaucoup de facilité à** s'exprimer.
He has great fluency of speech.
Il **met** son **honneur à** ne point céder.
He makes it a point of honour not to yield.
(See also III. *b*, 3.)

(*c*) *Adjectives*, according as they are used—

(1) with **il** (*impersonal*) ; (2) with **ce** ; as,

as,

Il est **difficile de** le faire.
It is difficult to do it.
Il est **impossible de** vous comprendre.
It is impossible to understand you.

C'est **difficile à** faire.
That is difficult to do.
C'est **impossible à** croire.
That is incredible, or—
It is impossible to believe it.

* The arbitrary distinctions in meaning between *commencer*, *contraindre*, *forcer*, etc., followed by *de* or *à* to be found in most Grammars, have once for all been disposed of by Littré ; cf. his Dictionary under the head of *commencer*, *continuer*, etc.

§ 85. IV. The INFINITIVE with **par, pour, sans, après,** and with Conjunctive Prepositions—**afin de, avant de, de manière (façon) à, à moins de, de peur de**:—

(*a*) with **par,** generally only after Verbs of *Beginning* and *Finishing;* as,

Il commença par me flatter et **finit par** me dire des injures.	*He began by flattering me and finished by insulting me.*

(*b*) with **pour,** to express the definite *Purpose* or *Destination,* answering to the English *in order to, enough to;* as,

Je le fais **pour** vous obliger.	*I do it to oblige you.*
Nous semons **pour** recueillir.	*We sow in order to gather.*
Il y a ici **pour** contenter tous les goûts.	*There is enough here to satisfy all tastes.*

(*c*) with—

Pour, *in order to,*	instead of	**parce que,** with Indicat. / **pour que,** with Subjunct.	
Afin de, *in order to,*	„	**afin que,**	„
Avant de, *before,*	„	**avant que,**	„
À moins de, *unless,*	„	**à moins que...ne,**	„
De peur de, *lest,*	„	**de peur que...ne,**	„
Sans, *without,*	„	**sans que,**	„
Après, *after,*	„	**après que,** with Indicat.	
De manière à, / **De façon à,**	*so as to,* „	**de manière que,** / **de façon que,**	with Indic. or Subj.:—*so that*

whenever the Subject of the *Dependent* Clause is the same as the Subject of the *Principal* Sentence; thus,

Il travaille pour **s'**enrichir, *instead of*—	**Il** travaille pour qu'**il** s'enrichisse.
but—**Je** le dis afin que **vous** le sachiez.	**I** *say it in order that* **you** *may know it.*
Il parla **de manière à convaincre** les juges de son innocence.	*He spoke so as to convince his judges of his innocence.*
Il a été chassé **pour avoir** trop parlé.	*He was turned out for having (because he had) spoken indiscreetly.*
Il est bien grand **pour être si jeune**	*He is very tall for one so young.*

§ 86. Thus the *Infinitive* (pure or with **de**) is also used instead of the *Indicative, Conditional,* or *Subjunctive,* in Substantive Clauses, whenever the Subject-Pronoun of the latter has as its Antecedent either the Subject or Object of the Principal Sentence: consequently in French—

we generally say:—	*instead of:—*
Je **crois devoir** vous informer.	**Je** crois que **je** dois vous informer.
I think it my duty to inform you.	**I** *think* **I** *ought to inform you.*
Tu **espères réussir.**	**Tu** espères que **tu** réussiras.
You hope to succeed.	**You** *hope that* **you** *will succeed.*
Il **avoue avoir** tort.	**Il** avoue qu'il **a** tort.
He owns to being wrong.	**He** *confesses* **he** *is wrong.*
Nous **voudrions pouvoir** lui parler.	**Nous** voudrions que **nous** pussions lui parler.
We should like to be able to speak to him.	**We** *wish* **we** *could speak to him.*
Votre père vous **permet de sortir.**	Votre père (**vous**) permet que **vous** sortiez.
Your father allows you to go out.	*Your father allows that you go out.*

D.—The Present Participle.

Résumé.

General Principles.—Three Verbal forms in **-ant.**
Compared with English and **Latin.**

Special Rules.—I. The Verbal Adjective, used—
(*a*) attributively, (*b*) predicatively.

II. The Present Participle proper, used—
(*a*) with an Object, (*b*) qualified by an Adverb,
(*c*) for an Adverbial Clause, (*d*) for an Adjective Clause, (*e*) absolutely.

III. The Gerundival Participle with **en,** used—
(*a*) with an Object, (*b*) qualified by an Adverb,
(*c*) for an Adverbial Clause.

§ 87. There are three Verbal forms in **-ant** :—

I. The Verbal Adjective :—	Une ressemblance **frappante.**
II. The Present Participle proper :—	Les marteaux **frappant** l'enclume.
III. The Gérondif with **en** :—	Elles dansaient **en frappant** des mains.

§ 88. General Principles.—In comparing the French Verbal form in **-ant** with the English Verbal form in **-ing**, it must first of all be borne in mind that the latter does duty for—(1) the Old Infinitive in **-an** ; (2) the Old Imperfect Participle in **-end, -ende, -and, -ande** ; and (3) a Verbal Noun in **-ing.** Hence arises great confusion. (Abbott's *Shakspearian Grammar*, § 372.)

As only the *second* of these English forms in **-ing** really corresponds to the French form in **-ant**, great care must be taken in rendering the *first* and *third* in accordance with their primitive meaning, viz., either by an *Infinitive* (see § 83), or by a *Substantive ;* as,

(1) *He succeeded* **in convincing** *him.*	Il réussit **à le convaincre.**
(2) **Being** *ill, he could not come.*	**Etant** malade, il ne put venir.
The **singing** *birds.*	Les oiseaux **chantants.**
(3) *The* **singing** *of birds.*	Le **chant** des oiseaux.
Lying *is shameful.*	**Mentir** est honteux. Il est honteux **de mentir.**
The art of **building.**	L'art **de bâtir.**

As derived from Latin, the Verbal form in **-ant** represents—

(1) the Latin Participial forms in **-ans, -ens** (-antem, -entem) ; * as,

Gallus, escam **quærens,** margaritam reperit.	Un coq **cherchant** de la nourriture trouva une perle.

(2) the Gerunds in **-ando, -endo** ; as,

Discit **legendo.**	Il s'instruit **en lisant.**

* It stands to reason that *etymologically* speaking, the termination **ant** cannot be derived from **-ans, -ens,** but must be traced back to the oblique cases ending in **-ant-is, -i, -em,** etc.

SPECIAL RULES.—The Verbal form in **-ant** is—

§ 89. (I.) *a Verbal Adjective*, agreeing in Gender and Number with the Noun it qualifies, if it is used to express a *Permanent State*, *Quality*, or *Manner of Being;* it may stand—

(*a*) *attributively*, before or after the Noun it qualifies (see § 21); as,

L'homme est la seule créature **parlante.**	*Man is the only speaking creature.*
Une carrière **brillante.**	*A brilliant career.*
Quels **brillants** exploits !	*What brilliant exploits !*
Une personne bien **pensante** (but see § 90, *b*).	*A well-meaning person.*

(*b*) *predicatively;* as,

Sa figure était **rayonnante** de joie.	*His face was beaming with delight.*
Elle paraît **souffrante.**	*She looks poorly.*
Elles sont trop **exigeantes.**	*They are too exacting.*

Obs. Like other qualifying Adjectives, the Verbal Adjective in **-ant** may, as far as usage admits, be used *Substantively*:—

Les combattants, vivants, étudiants, mendiants, passants, protestants, etc.

Les calmants, dissolvants; le couchant, le levant, le montant, etc.

§ 90. (II.) *a Present Participle proper*, remaining unchanged, if it denotes a *Transitory Action;** it may be distinguished from the Verbal Adjective by the following characteristic features:—

(*a*) it may *govern an Object;* as,

Les ennemis se retiraient en bon ordre, **brûlant** leurs bagages et **ravageant** le pays.	*The enemies were retreating in good order, burning their baggage and devastating the country.*

---

* "Une personne **affligeant** une autre personne, fait l'**action** d'affliger, et sous ce rapport, je ne puis pas dire qu'elle est affligeante. Mais **une nouvelle est affligeante** lorsqu'elle a des qualités propres à affliger.

"On ne dit pas **une personne riante,** parce que rire est une **action,** et non une qualité ou un état permanent. Mais on dit **un air riant, une campagne riante,** parce qu'il s'agit ici de substantifs que l'on ne représente pas comme faisant une action, mais comme ayant des qualités qui les rendent agréables."—LAVEAUX.

(*b*) it may be *qualified by an Adverb following,** or by a *Negation ;* as,

Une personne **pensant** bien.	*A person of sound judgment.*
Une ambition ne **tremblant** devant aucun péril.	*An ambition shrinking before no peril.*

(*c*) it may stand *instead of an Adverbial Clause* introduced by comme, puisque, quoique, etc., to denote the *Cause, Motive, Condition*, or *Concession ;* as,

Vivant (= comme ils vivent) sobrement, ils ont moins de besoins.	**As they live** *temperately, they have fewer wants.*
Il y a bien des pièces qui, **étant** (= si elles étaient) **corrigées**, pourraient aller à la postérité.	*There are many plays which, if corrected, might go down to posterity.*
D'où vient que **connaissant** (= quoique vous connaissiez) à fond ces méchants hommes, vous les gardez encore auprès de vous ?	*How is it that knowing (as you do) thoroughly these wicked men you yet keep them near you ?*

(*d*) it may stand *instead of an Adjective Clause* introduced by qui ; as,

Fabius n'**écoutant** (= qui n'écoutait) que sa prudence, contint le courage de ses soldats.	*Fabius, listening to his prudence only, checked the courage of his soldiers.*

(*e*) it may stand *absolutely ;* as,

Il n'entrera pas ici, **moi vivant.**	*He shall not enter here, if I live.*
Chemin faisant. Dieu aidant.	*On the way. With the help of God.*

Obs. From the above Rules it follows that Present Participles of *Reflexive* and *Auxiliary* Verbs remain always *unchanged.*

§ 91. (III.) *a Gerundival Participle* (Gérondif), if preceded by en (always remaining unchanged) : like the

* The seemingly arbitrary Rule that the Verbal form in **-ant** agrees or not according as it is preceded or followed by an Adverb, is founded on the fact that Adverbs generally stand *before Adjectives*, but *after Verbs.*

Present Participle without **en**, it may be used (*a*) with a *Direct Object;* (*b*) qualified by an *Adverb;* (*c*) instead of an *Adverbial Clause;* but it cannot stand for a Relative Clause; as,

(*a*) **En disant** ces mots les larmes lui vinrent aux yeux.	*As he said this his eyes filled with tears.*
(*b*) **En agissant** ainsi, vous avez désarmé son ressentiment.	**By** *acting thus you have disarmed his resentment.*
(*c*) **En forgeant** on devient forgeron. (Proverb).	*By dint of forging one becomes a master-smith* (i.e., *practice makes perfect*).
On apprend bien des choses **en voyageant.**	*One learns many things in travelling.*
Tout en riant il lui dit ses vérités.	*Though laughing he told him his mind.*

Obs. 1. The Gérondif with **en** expresses rather a *manner*, *condition*, or *instrument* than a *cause* or *motive;* the latter are better expressed by the Present Participle without **en.** Compare—

Mangeant peu, je n'ai jamais d'indigestions.	*Eating moderately as I do, I never suffer from indigestion.*
L'appétit vient **en mangeant** (Prov.).	*The more one gets, the more one wants.*

Obs. 2. The Gérondif with **en** expresses more emphatically than the Participle without **en** that an action extends over a longer space of time than the action expressed by the Principal Clause; whilst the Participle without **en** is used without reference to the duration of the action; as,

En disant ces mots, Mentor prit une lyre.	*Whilst he thus spake, Mentor took a lyre.*
Disant ces mots, il se mit à rire.	*At these words he burst out laughing.*

Obs. 3. With **aller** the Verbal form in **-ant** may be used with or without **en** to express the progress of an action :—

Cette rue **va (en) se rétrécissant.**	*This street becomes narrower and narrower.*
Le mal **va (en) empirant.**	*The evil is getting worse and worse.*

E.—The Past (Passive) Participle.

Résumé.

General Rules and Principles.—Agreement with (I.) Subject; (II.) Object.

Special Rules.—

I. Past Participle agreeing with its *Subject*.
   (*a*) Past Participle conjugated with **être**.
   (*b*) Used without Auxiliary.

II. Past Participle agreeing with its *Object:*
   (*a*) Past Participle conjugated with **avoir,** and Past Participle of Reflexive Verbs.
   (*b*) Past Participle agreeing with Direct Object and never with Indirect Object.
   (*c*) Past Participle followed by an Infinitive.
   (*d*) Past Participle of **faire,** followed by an Infinitive.
   (*e*) Past Participle followed by a Substantive Clause.
   (*f*) Past Participle of Impersonal Verbs.
   (*g*) Past Participle followed by a complement denoting *time, how long?* or *at what price?*

---

§ 92. GENERAL RULES.—I. *Agreement with the* SUBJECT.

(*a*) The Past Participle of a Verb conjugated with **être*** *agrees* in Gender and Number with its *Subject;* as,

Les **maisons** de Paris **sont** bien **bâties**.
Les **villes** de l'Asie mineure **sont tombées** en ruine.
Arrivés dans la ville, nous fûmes **reçus** à bras ouverts.

(*b*) But the Past Participle of a Verb conjugated with **avoir** *never agrees* with its *Subject;*† as,

Ils **ont** bien **bâti** leurs maisons.
Elles **ont** bien **étudié**.
Les habitants du pays **ont** bien **reçu** les ambassadeurs.

---

* Reflective Verbs excepted, see § 96.
† Its auxiliary alone agrees in Person and Number with the Subject.

§ 93. II. *Agreement with the* OBJECT.

The Past Participle of a Verb conjugated with **avoir**—

(*a*) *agrees* in Gender and Number with its *Direct Object*, if this Object comes *before* the Past Participle; as,

Quelles **maisons** a-t-il **bâties ?**—
Quand **les** a-t-il **bâties ?**—

(*b*) *never agrees* with its *Object*, if this Object comes *after* the Past Participle; as,

Il a **bâti** les **maisons** du faubourg.
Il y a longtemps qu'il a **bâti** ces **maisons.**

In order to account for these seemingly arbitrary Rules, it must be borne in mind that the Past Participle of any Transitive Verb may be considered from two different points of view:—

(1) as expressing, in conjunction with its copula, *an action done by the Subject*, and in so far the Past Participle will retain its full Verbal force and form, for the speaker or writer who in the course of a sentence uses the Past Participle before the Object occurs will necessarily have its *Active* meaning foremost in his mind; hence—

Il **a bâti** les maisons du faubourg; **a bâti** being simply a compound form for—Il **bâtit**, etc.

(2) as expressing an *action suffered by the Object, i.e.*, a permanent state or quality; now, if the Object that suffers the action occurs before the Past Participle, it will of course impress the mind with the *Passive* force of the latter; hence—

Que de **maisons** il a **bâties** ! *i.e.*, que de **maisons bâties** par lui !

I. *The Past Participle agreeing with its* SUBJECT.

SPECIAL RULES.—

§ 94. (*a*) The Past Participle of a Verb conjugated with **être** * (Reflexive Verbs excepted), is treated as an Adjective and accordingly agrees in *Gender* and *Number* with its *Subject*:—

(1) **Ce jardin** est bien cultivé. **Ces jardins** sont bien cultivés.
Cette terre est bien cultivée. **Ces terres** sont bien cultivées.

(2) Vos **amis** sont-ils sortis?— Non, ils sont restés chez eux.
Vos **sœurs** sont-elles sorties?— Non, elles sont restées chez elles.

Obs. According to § 122, a Subject may stand after its Verb:—
Qu'est **devenue** votre **amie?**—**Elle** est **morte.**
C'est de là que sont **venus** tous nos **malheurs.**

§ 95. (*b*) A Past Participle used *without* any *Auxiliary Verb* agrees, like an Adjective, in Gender and Number with the *Noun* it qualifies (which is its *Subject*); as,

La glace est de l'**eau** cristallisée, *i.e.*, qui est cristallisée.
A peine **écloses,** les fleurs se fanent.

Obs. 1. The same rule applies to the Past Participle used with all Verbs denoting *manner of being;* as, *devenir, rester, sembler, paraître*:—
Les troupes assiégeantes devinrent **assiégées.**
Les méchants ne **restent** guère **unis.**
Elle **paraissait affligée.** Elles **se sentent accablées.**
Effrayés par cette tempête, ils se **crurent perdus.**

Obs. 2. The Past Participles—**attendu,** *whereas;* **compris,** *inclusive;* **excepté,** *except;* **supposé,** *supposed;* **passé,** *past;* **ci-joint, ci-inclus,** *inclosed;* **vu,** *seeing;* being considered as Prepositions when they precede the Noun they qualify, only agree when they stand *after* it; as,

Le dessin m'a été envoyé avec la description **ci-jointe.** **Ci-joint** vous trouvez la description que je vous ai promise.

Obs. 3. A Past Participle may be used *absolutely*:—
Le **père mort,** les fils vous retournent le champ.
Aussitôt votre **lettre reçue,** j'ai fait votre commission.

---

* *N.B.*—A Verb is conjugated with **être** (1) in the Passive Voice throughout; (2) in the Compound Tenses of a few Intransitive Verbs of motion. For Reflexive Verbs, see § 96.

II. *The Past Participle agreeing with its* OBJECT.

SPECIAL RULES.—

§ 96. (*a*) The Past Participle of *Transitive* Verbs conjugated with **avoir**, and of *Reflexive* Verbs agrees in Gender and Number with its *preceding Object.**

Obj. → *P.P.—Agreement:*	*P.P.* → *Obj.—No Agreement:*
(1)	
Voici **le** livre, **l'**avez-vous **lu** ?	Non, je n'ai pas **lu** le livre.
Voici **la** lettre, **l'**avez-vous **lue** ?	Je n'ai pas encore **lu** la lettre.
Voici les livres, **les** as-tu **lus** ?	Je crois avoir **lu** les livres.
Voici **les** lettres, **les** as-tu **lues** ?	Oui, ce matin j'ai **lu** les lettres.
Elles **se** sont **lavées** (**repenties**).	
(2)	
Voici le livre **que** j'ai **lu**.	Vous avez fait des fautes **dont** vos ennemis ont **profité**. (See § 97, *b*.)
Voici la lettre **que** j'ai **lue**.	
Voici les livres **que** j'ai **lus**.	
Voici les lettres **que** j'ai **lues**.	
(3)	
Quelles lettres a-t-il reçues ?	Il a **reçu** les lettres de son ami.
Combien de lettres a-t-il reçues?	Il a **reçu** trois lettres.
Que de lettres il a reçues !	Il a **reçu** beaucoup de lettres.

Pourrais-je jamais oublier **la confiance** et **l'amitié que** vous m'avez témoignées ?

§ 97. (*b*) The Past Participle agrees with its Direct Object only; it *never* agrees with an *Indirect* (Remoter) Object:—

Direct Object — Agreement:	*Indirect Obj.—No Agreement:*
Elles **nous** (**vous**, **les**) ont suivi**s**.	Elles nous (vous, leur) ont **répondu**.
Elles **se** sont dévoué**es**.	Elles se sont **procuré** un billet.
Elles **se** sont **montrées** généreuses.	Elles se sont **arrogé** ce droit.
J'abandonne toutes les espérances **que** j'avais **conçues**.	Il a élevé plus de monuments que d'autres n'en ont **détruit**.

Obs. 1. According to § 84, there are a few Verbs which may govern both a *Direct* and *Indirect Object:* aider, applaudir, commander, fuir, manquer, servir, etc. :—

---

* An Object may precede the Verb in the following cases only:—

(1) as a Conjunctive Personal or a Reflexive Pronoun: **me, te, le, la; nous, vous, les; lui, leur; en, y, se.**

(2) as a Relative or Interrogative Pronoun: **que, lequel, laquelle,** etc.

(3) as a Noun qualified by—**quel, combien de, que de.**

Cet homme les a bien servi**s**.
Les Romains s'étaient **faits** à la discipline.

Cette précaution leur a bien **servi**.
Tous les peuples du monde se sont **fait** des dieux corporels.

Obs. 2. In sentences like the following, the Past Participle really agrees with **combien, autant,** and not with **en**:—

De tous les plaideurs qu'il a défendus, **combien** n'en a-t-il pas **ruinés** !

Anomalous Cases.—The above Rules admit of no exception; the seeming anomalies only arise from peculiarly constructed sentences in which the real Object is not easily discernible:—

§ 98. (*c*) A Past Participle *followed by an Infinitive*—

(1) *agrees* if the preceding Object is really the Object of the Past Participle, and not of the Infinitive; as,

Je les ai **vus** frapper.
I saw them striking.

Les acteurs que j'ai **entendus** chanter.
The actors I heard sing.

Je les (*i.e.*, les enfants) ai **laissés** manger.
I have allowed them to eat.

Les hommes n'ont jamais plus admiré les singes que quand ils **les** ont **vus** imiter les actions humaines.

(2) *does not agree* with the preceding Object if this latter is the Object of the Infinitive or of the Infinitive and Past Participle combined; as,

Je les ai **vu** frapper.
I saw them struck, i.e., *I saw* (*some one*) *strike them.*

Les airs que j'ai **entendu** chanter. Les acteurs que j'ai **entendu** siffler.
The actors whom I heard hissed.

Je les (*i.e.*, les pommes) ai **laissé** manger.
I have allowed them to be eaten.

J'approuve les changements que vous avez **jugé à propos de faire.**

Compare also—

Les lettres **que** j'ai **commencées.**
Les questions **que** j'ai **résolues.**

Les lettres que j'ai **commencé à lire.**
Les questions que j'ai **résolu de lui adresser.**

§ 99. (*d*) The Past Participle of **faire,** *followed by an Infinitive,* never agrees, because it forms with this

Infinitive one Verbal Phrase on which alone the Object depends :—

Je les ai **fait descendre.**	*I have made (caused) what?—Their coming down.*
Les livres que j'ai **fait relier.**	*I have made (ordered) what?—The binding of books.*
Louis XIV. a protégé les arts que François Ier avait **fait naitre.**	*Louis the Fourteenth patronized the arts which Francis the First had introduced.*

§ 100. (*e*) A Past Participle *followed by a Substantive Clause* remains unchanged, because this Clause is its real Object; as,

La lettre que j'ai **présumé que vous recevriez** est enfin arrivée.	*I have surmised what?—That you would receive a letter.*

It follows that a Past Participle, preceded and followed by que, never agrees.

Obs. 1 *to* (*d*) *and* (*e*). An Infinitive or a Substantive Clause (understood) may be the implied object of a Verb (especially **dû, vu, voulu, pu, su**) in which case no agreement of the Past Participle can take place :—

Nous ne vous avons pas rendu tous les bons offices que nous aurions **voulu,*** mais seulement ceux que nous avons **pu.***

Obs. 2. Thus also a Past Participle preceded by the Neutral Relative Pronoun **le** referring to a Verb, Adjective, or to a whole Clause remains unchanged ; as,

L'armée se battit mieux que le czar ne **l'**avait **espéré** (**le** = qu'elle ne se battrait).

La famine arriva comme Joseph **l'**avait **prédit** (le = cela).

Cette contrée est plus riche en produits que je ne l'avais **imaginé.**

§ 101. (*f*) The Past Participle of *Impersonal* Verbs remains unchanged, because they are really Intransitive, and their Noun-Complement is logically their *Subject* and not their Object ; as,

La grande sécheresse qu'il a **fait.**†	*The great drought that has prevailed.*
Que de travaux il a **fallu** pour endiguer ce fleuve !	*What work it has required to embank this river !*

* **Rendre** understood.

† **Faire** is here used idiomatically, as an equivalent of **être.**

§ 102. (*g*) The Past Participle of a Verb, the completion of which answers the questions *how long? how much?* etc. (§ 10), and is virtually an Adverbial Phrase, remains unchanged; * as,

Les trois années que j'ai **vécu** à Paris.	*The three years I have spent in Paris.*
Les efforts que ce travail **lui** a **coûté**.	*The efforts that this work has cost him.*

Obs. According to § 60, Obs. 2, the agreement with a Noun qualified by **le peu de** depends on the meaning:—

Le peu d'affection que vous m'avez témoigné.	*The want of affection that you have shown.*
Le peu **d'affection** que vous m'avez témoignée.	*What little affection you have shown me.*

* The hair-splitting distinctions which some Grammarians have tried to establish between such completions used figuratively, as real Objects, and hence requiring the agreement of the Past Participle, or literally, as Adverbial phrases, have never been adopted by the French Academy; see the seventh and last edition of their Dictionary (1878).

ADVERBS.

Résumé.

I. **Place of Adverbs.**

II. Adverbs of Negation and Affirmation.

General Principle.—Their origin.

Special Rules.—(*a*) used Disjunctively; (*b*) Conjunctively.

Ne used in French but not in English after—
(*a*) Verbs of *fearing*, etc.; (*b*) Comparatives;
(*c*) Conjunctions—à moins que, etc.

Obs. **Ne point** stronger than **ne pas.**

Ne without **pas** or **point** (*a*) when already completed by **rien,** etc.; (*b*) with **cesser,** etc.

III. **Plus, davantage; plus tôt, plutôt; comme, comment;** compared.

I.—Place of Adverbs.

§ 103. As a rule an Adverb is placed *after* its Verb if the latter is in a *Simple Tense*, and *between* the Auxiliary and the Past Part., if in a *Compound Tense ;** as,

Nous parlons **souvent** de lui.	*We* **often** *speak of him.*
Ils l'ont **bien** reçu.	*They have received him* **well.**

If the Verb is in the *Present Infinitive*, both ne and pas usually stand before it :—

Veuillez bien **ne pas** m'interrompre.	*Please not to interrupt me.*

Obs. The following Adverbs, denoting *time* or *place*, are generally placed at the end ; if used emphatically, however, they may stand quite at the beginning :—hier, aujourd'hui, demain, tôt, tard, autrefois, ici, là, partout, nulle part ; as,

Nous ne l'avons pas vu **aujourd'hui**, or—
Aujourd'hui nous ne l'avons pas vu.

II.—Adverbs of Negation and Affirmation.

§ 104. General Principle.—In order fully to understand the use of Negations in French it is necessary to know their origin. The following extract from Brachet's *Historical French Grammar* will make this clear :—

" Pour donner plus de force à l'expression de nos jugements, nous les accompagnons volontiers d'une comparaison (' pauvre comme **Job**,' ' fort comme un **lion**,' etc.) ou d'une estimation · ' cet objet ne vaut pas un **sou**.' Les Latins disaient de même : ' ne pas valoir un **as**, une **plume**, une **noix**, un **hilum**.' De là l'expression **ne-hilum** qui est devenu **nihil**. Les locutions adverbiales qui servent en français à exprimer la négation sont au nombre de six : **pas, point, mie, goutte, personne, rien** :—**Pas** (du lat. passus)—Ne point faire un pas. **Point** (du lat. punctum)

---

* Only **ne** may stand before the Verb :—

Il **ne** pleut **pas**. Il **n'**a **pas** plu cette **nuit**.

—Je ne vois point. **Mie** (du lat. mica—Nullaque mica salis). **Goutte** (du lat. gutta, employé aussi au sens négatif par les Latins)—Je n'y vois goutte. **Personne** (du lat. persona), joint à la négation 'ne,' prend le sens de 'nemo.' **Rien** (du lat. rem) était substantif dans l'ancien français : la 'riens' (chose) que j'ai vue est fort belle. Joint à une négation il signifie 'nihil'—Je 'ne' fais 'rien'... Terminons par l'observation générale qu'à l'origine les locutions adverbiales pas, mie, goutte, point, etc., furent employées d'une manière sensible, c'est à dire placées dans une comparaison où elles avaient une valeur propre : Je ne marche pas, je ne vois point, je ne mange mie," etc.

§ 105. SPECIAL RULES.—Negative and Affirmative Adverbs are used—

(*a*) *Disjunctively, i.e.* independently of a Verb ; as,

Y consentez-vous ?—**Non, non,** mille fois **non !**	*Do you consent to it ?—No, decidedly not !*
Viendra-t-il ? — Je crois **que oui.**—Et nous croyons **que non.**—Et moi, je vous dis **que si.***	*Will he come ?—I think he will. — And we believe he will not.—And I tell you he will.*
Je le payerai, mais **non pas** tout à la fois.	*I shall pay him, but not all at once.*
Êtes-vous fâché ? — **Point Point du tout**).	*Are you angry ?—No* (*not at all*).

(*b*) *Conjunctively, i.e.*, in immediate connection with a Verb expressed or understood :—

N.B.—**Ne pas, ne point** are *exclusively* negative.

(1) *Adverbial ;* as,

Je **ne** viendrai **pas.**—**Ni** lui **non plus.**	*I shall not come.—Nor he either.*
Elles **ne** viendront **pas non plus.**	*They will not come either.*
Cela **ne** sera **jamais.**	*That shall never be.*
Si **jamais** je le rencontre.	*If ever I meet him.*
Je **ne** m'en soucie **guère.**	*I hardly care for it.*
Nous **n'**aimons **que** ceux que nous estimons.	*We only love those we esteem.*
Il **n'**y est **plus.**	*He is no longer there.*

* **Si** instead of **oui** in answer to a negative sentence.

(2) *Substantival or Adjectival;* as,

Subj.	**Personne n'**est venu.	*No one (nobody) has come.*
Obj.	Il **n'**y a **personne** ici.	*There is nobody here.*
Subj.	**Rien ne** va plus.	*It is no go.*
Obj.	Je **n'**y suis pour **rien.**	*I am not concerned in it.*
Subj. only.	**Nul** (homme) **n'**est exempt de mourir.	*No one (man) is exempt from dying.*
	Il **ne** prend **aucun** soin de ses affaires. (*Adj.*)	*He does not attend to his affairs.*
	Je **ne** connais **aucun** de ses amis. (*Subst.*)	*I know none of his friends.*
	Pas un n'est ici.	*Not one is here present.*

§ 106. **Ne** is used in French — contrary to English usage—

(*a*) after Verbs and Phrases denoting (1) *Fear, Apprehension*, lest something should occur, (2) *Prevention, Avoidance*, (3) *Doubt, Denial;* as,

(1)	Je **crains** qu'il **ne** pleuve.	*I fear it will rain.*
(2)	**Evitez qu'**il **ne** vous parle.	*Mind he does not speak to you.*
(3)	Je **ne doute pas** qu'il **ne** vienne bientôt.	*I make no doubt that he will come soon.*

Obs. And also, according to § 77 (*b*), when the Principal clause is negative; as,

Il n'y **a personne** qui **ne** le sache. *There is nobody 'but' knows it.*

For full particulars, see § 76 (*b*), Obs. 1.

(*b*) with Verbs depending on *Comparatives* used affirmatively (the Negation being implied in the inequality between the terms of Comparison); as,

La distance est **moindre que** vous **ne** dites; *i.e.* vous **ne** la dites **pas** si petite qu'elle est.

Il a bien **d'autres** vues **que** vous **ne** croyez; *i.e.* vous **ne** croyez **pas** ses vues telles qu'elles sont.

(*c*) after the Conjunctions — **à moins que...**, **de crainte (peur) que...**, (comp. *a*, 1), **non (ce n'est)**

pas que... ; depuis que..., and the Phrase--il y a ... que ; as,

Ce n'est pas qu'il **n'**ait des moyens.	*He is not wanting in abilities.*
Dépêchez-vous, **de crainte qu'**il **ne** vous prévienne.	*Make haste, lest he be beforehand with you.*
Il y a quinze jours **que** je **ne** lui ai parlé.	*It is a fortnight since I last spoke to him.*

Obs. **Ne ... point** is a more absolute Negation than **ne ... pas** ;* accordingly the latter must be used with *Adverbs of Quantity* and *Numerals ;* for the sense of these excludes the idea of an Absolute Negation ; as,

Il **n'a pas** (*not* point) **beaucoup** d'amis. Il **n'**y a **pas assez** de sel dans ce mets. Elle **n'a pas** quinze ans.

§ 107. (*a*) In accordance with the General Principle, **ne** must be used without **pas** or **point**, when its Negative Complement is already supplied by **rien, personne, nul, aucun, jamais, guère, ni, que, plus,** or any other emphatic term ; as,

Rien ne me plaît davantage.	*Nothing pleases me better.*
Je **n'**ai **jamais rien** refusé **à personne.**	*I never refused anything to anybody.*
Cet enfant **ne** mange **guère.**	*This child hardly eats anything.*
Il **n'y** voit **plus !**—Ni moi non plus.	*He cannot see any longer !—Nor I either.*
Je **ne** l'aime **ni ne** l'estime.	*I neither love nor esteem him.*
Nous **ne** demandions **que** la paix.	*We asked for nothing but peace.*
Je **n'**ai parlé **à âme qui vive.**	*I have not spoken to a living soul.*
Nous **n'**avons trouvé **qui que ce soit.**	*We did not find anybody whatever.*
Elle **ne** lui pardonnera **de sa vie.**	*She will never forgive him.*

---

* " 'Le point' étant plus près de la nullité absolue que 'le pas,' **point** est plus exclusif que **pas.** Aussi, bien que ces particules se prennent facilement l'une pour l'autre, il est des cas où **pas** convient mieux que **point ;** ainsi il vaut mieux dire :—Le facteur n'est **pas encore** venu, **que**—n'est point encore venu."—LITTRÉ.

(*b*) So with the Verbs **cesser, oser, bouger, avoir garde, pouvoir** and **savoir** (unless it means—*to have learnt*), **pas** and **point** *may* be omitted, especially when followed by an Infinitive; as,

Ils **ne cessaient** de crier.	*They never ceased* (*kept on*) *crying.*
Je **n'oserais** le faire.	*I should not venture to do it.*
Nous **ne saurions** vous le dire.	*We cannot tell you.*
but—Il **ne sait pas** sa leçon.	*He does not know his lesson.*

Obs. 1. **Ne** can only be used with Verbs; in elliptical phrases without Verbs the Negative complements—pas, point, rien, jamais, plus, etc., alone must be used; as,

Point d'argent, **point** de Suisse.	**Pas** de fumée sans feu.
Qui est venu?—**Personne.**	Y consentirez-vous?—**Jamais.**
Pas moi, **ni** lui **non plus.**	*Not I, nor he either.*

Obs. 2. These Negative Complements occasionally retain their original affirmative meaning:—

Y a-t-il **rien** de plus beau!
Personne oserait-il nier?

§ 108. III. The following Adverbs must be carefully distinguished:—

plus que... *more than;* followed by the Second Term of a Comparison; as,

La vertu est **plus** estimable **que** la science.

...davantage, *more of it, more so;* not followed by a Second Term of Comparison; as,

La science est estimable, la vertu l'est **davantage.**

Plus tôt, *sooner, earlier.*

Plutôt, *rather.*

Comment, *how?* used in direct or indirect questions; as,

Comment-vous portez-vous?
Comment! *What!* Comment cela? *How is that?*
Je ne sais comment cela se fait.

Comme, *how, as,* used as a term of comparison; as,

Comme vous voyez!
Comme cela. *In this manner. So, so!*
Comme (que) c'est beau!

PREPOSITIONS.

V.B.—For the use and functions of **de** and **à**, see §§ 11—19.

Résumé.

The principal Prepositions compared:—dans and en; dans and à; avant and devant; entre and parmi; sur and au-dessus de, par dessus, de dessus; sous and au-dessous de, par dessous, de dessous; vers, envers and contre; près, proche de, and auprès de; par and à travers, au travers de; chez.

---

§ 109. **Dans** is used in a *determinate* sense before Nouns taking the Def. Art. § 2;—

Dans la prison de Mazas.
Dans l'Amérique du Nord.
Dans la guerre d'Espagne.
Dans votre voyage.
Dans cette ville.
Dans l'hiver de 1870.
Dans huit jours.
Dans le secret.

En in an *indeterminate* sense before Nouns used without Article § 5 (*b*);—

En prison.
En Amérique.
En guerre.
En voyage.
En ville.
En hiver.
En huit jours.
En secret.

§ 110. **Dans**, *in, inside, within*;—

Dans la ville de Paris.

Dans cette maison.
Puiser dans une fontaine.

À, *in, at, present (attending) at*;—

Il n'est plus à la ville, il est à la campagne.
À la maison.
Elle est à la fontaine.

§ 111. **Avant**, *before (as to time), priority, precedence*;—

Avant huit heures.
Mettez ce chapitre avant l'autre.

Devant, *before (as to place)*—

Devant la maison.
Ne dites rien devant lui.

§ 112. **Entre**, *among, between*—

Entre nous, *between ourselves.*
S'entre-dévorer, *to devour each other.*

§ 113. **Sur**, *on, upon (from, about)*—

Frapper sur une enclume.
Ville située sur la Tamise.
La conversation roulait sur la politique.
Pays conquis sur l'ennemi, *from the enemy.*
Juger sur les apparences.
Sur dix il n'y en a que deux de bons.
Je n'ai point d'argent sur moi.

§ 114. **Sous**, *under*—

Sous nos toits.
Né sous une heureuse étoile.
Sous un faux nom.
Cela s'est passé sous mes yeux.
Sous le règne de François premier.
Sous ce rapport, *in this respect.*

§ 115. **Vers**, *towards (in place and time), about*—

Il leva les yeux vers le ciel.
Il avança vers le sud.
Vers le milieu de ce siècle.
Vers les trois heures du soir.
Vers le printemps.
Tournez-vous vers moi.

Parmi, *among, in the midst of*—

Parmi le peuple.
L'ivraie est mêlée parmi le bon grain.

Au-dessus de *above, beyond, upwards*—

C'est au-dessus de nos forces.
Les écoliers de seize ans et au-dessus.
Cinq degrés au-dessus de zéro.

Par-dessus, *over*—

Par-dessus les montagnes.

De dessus, *from the top of*—

Ôtez cela de dessus le buffet.

Au-dessous de, *below*—

Un pont fut jeté au-dessous du fort.
Cela est au-dessous de toute critique.

Par-dessous, *under*—

Il me prit par-dessous le bras.

De dessous, *from under*—

Il fut tiré de dessous la table.

Envers, *towards (feeling, disposition)*—

Charitable envers les malheureux.

Contre, *against*—

C'est le pot de terre contre le pot de fer.
Ils combattirent l'un contre l'autre.
Ce champ est contre le bois, *close by.*
Contre l'attente générale, ***contrary to.***

§ 116. **Près, proche (de),** *near, nearly, beside, close by—*

Près de l'hôtel de ville.
Près de mourir.
Asseyez-vous près de moi.
Neuilly près Paris.
Il y a près de vingt ans de ça.
Il demeure tout près d'ici.
C'est proche de chez moi (ici proche).

Auprès de, *close by, hard by, with—*

Il est logé auprès du palais.
Il a libre accès auprès du roi.
Il est fort bien auprès du ministre.
On l'a noirci auprès du prince.
Votre mal n'est rien auprès du sien, *in comparison with.*
Ambassadeur auprès du roi de Prusse.

§ 117. **Par,** *through, by, out of—*

Jeter par la fenêtre, passer par la porte.
Prendre par le bras.
Par où ? *which way ?* par ici, *this way ;* par là, *that way.*
Par méchanceté, *out of spite.*
Par ce beau temps.
Combien gagne-t-il **par** jour, *a day* (§ 8, *b*, 2, Obs.).

À travers, au travers de, *across, through—*

À travers les nuages.
Allons à travers les champs.
Un coup d'épée au travers du corps.
On voit le jour au travers des vitres.
Il se fit jour au travers des ennemis.
He fought his way through the enemies.

§ 118. **Chez,** *at the house (shop) of, at (to) ——'s, at home, home, among, with—*

Il est chez lui ; *He is at home ;*
Elle est chez elle, etc. *She is at home, etc.*
Je vais chez moi. *I am going home.*
Nous passerons chez vous *We shall call (on you.)*
Est-il chez vous ? *Is he at your house ?*
J'ai acheté cela chez l'épicier. *I bought that at the grocer's (shop.)*

Chez les Indiens. *With (among) the Indians.*
C'est tout comme chez nous. *It is just so with us.*
Je viens de chez vous. *I am just coming from your house.*

N.B.—For a list of English Prepositions and their different French equivalents, see Exercises, p. 176.

CONJUNCTIONS.

Résumé.

A. Co-ordinate ;—**et**...**et** ; **ne**...**ni, ni**...**ni** ; **ou**... **ou.**

B. Sub-ordinate :—**que** used to connect—

(*a*) Substantive Clauses with Principal Sentences.

(*b*) Adverbial Clauses with Principal Sentences,—

(1) instead of Conjunctions of time.

(2) instead of Final and Concessive Conjunctions.

(3) to avoid the repetition of other Sub-ordinate Conjunctions.

---

§ 119. *A.*—Co-ordinate Conjunctions.

Et le riche **et** le pauvre, **et** le faible **et** le fort,	**Both** *rich* **and** *poor*, **both** *weak* **and** *strong, stride alike from sufferings to death.*
Vont tous également des douleurs à la mort.	
Vous de nos rois **et** la mère **et** la sœur.	*You*, **at once** *the mother* **and** *sister of our kings.*
Il **ne** mange **ni ne** boit.	*He* **neither** *eats* **nor** *drinks.*
Le lion **n'**est pas fait pour tracer les sillons,	*It is not the lion's to plough furrows,*
Ni l'aigle pour voler dans les humbles vallons.	**Nor** *the eagle's to fly in lowly valleys.*

Comp. Lat. Et discipulus et magister perhibebantur improbi.

Ou bien je me trompe, **ou** bien il vient pour faire quelque mauvais coup.	**Either** *I am greatly mistaken,* **or** *he comes here bent on mischief.*

§ 120. *B.*—Subordinate Conjunctions.

N.B. For Conjunctions of *time* used with the Past Anterior, see § 71.

For Subordinate Conjunctions requiring the Future instead of the English Present see § 72, for those taking the *Indicative* or *Subjunctive*, see § 78.

Que, on account of its multifarious functions, requires special notice; it is used—

(*a*) to connect *Substantive* Clauses with Principal Sentences; and, contrary to English usage, it is *never* omitted; as,

Je sais **qu'**il viendra.	*I know he will come.*
Elle dit **qu'**elle est souffrante.	*She says she is poorly.*

(*b*) to connect *Adverbial* Clauses with Principal Sentences, in which case special care is necessary in rendering it into English; it generally stands—

(1) instead of **quand, quand même, lorsque, si, depuis que, pendant que**; as,

A peine fut-il sorti **que** la maison s'écroula.	*Hardly had he gone* **when** *the house fell in.*
Je **n'**eus **pas plutôt** commencé à parler **qu'**il m'interrompit.	*I had no sooner begun to speak* **than** *he interrupted me.*
Un jour que nous étions sortis de bonne heure...	*One day* **when** *we had gone out early.*
Il y a dix ans **que** je ne l'ai vu.	*It is ten years* **since** *I saw him last.*
Je lui parlai **qu'**il était **encore** au lit.	*I spoke to him* **whilst** *he was still in bed.*
Qu'il fasse le moindre excès, il est malade.	**If** *he indulges in the slightest excess, he is ill.*
Qu'il y consente ou non, je le ferai.	**Whether** *he consent to it or not, I shall do it.*

(2) instead of **afin que, de peur (crainte) que... ne, à moins que...ne, avant que, sans que**; as,

Approchez, **que** (for—**afin que**) je vous parle.	*Come near me,* **so that** *I may speak to you.*
Retirez-vous, **qu'** (for—**de peur que**) il **ne** vous maltraite.	*Withdraw,* **lest** *he should ill-treat you.*
Ne faites rien **que** je **ne** vous aie donné des instructions.	*Do nothing* **before** (**until**) *I have given you instructions.*
Il aurait tous les trésors du monde, **qu'**il **ne** serait pas satisfait.	*Even if he had all the treasures in the world, he would* **nevertheless** *not be satisfied.*

(3) to avoid the repetition of the above and other Conjunctions occurring in several consecutive dependent Clauses; as,

Comme il était instruit et **que** chacun le consultait,...	**As** *he was well-informed and* **as** *everybody consulted him,...*
Quand on est jeune et **qu'**on se porte bien,...	**When** *one is young and enjoying good health,...*
Si vous le rencontrez et **qu'**il vous **retienne,***...	**If** *you meet him, and* **if** *he should detain you,...*

Obs. **Que** also replaces Adverbs in Principal clauses; as,

Que ne se corrige-t-il?	**Why** *does he not mend his ways?*
Que ne m'est-il permis de parler!	*Would that I were allowed to speak!*
A qui puis-je confier mon secret **qu'**à vous seul!	*To whom can I confide my secret* **except** *to you alone!*

---

* **que**, standing for **si**, takes the Subjunctive.

ORDER OF WORDS.

Résumé.

General Principles.—French Construction compared with Latin ;
French Construction compared with English :—
The *qualifying term* placed after the *term qualified.*

Special Rules. —

A. Affirmative Sentences.

I. Subject and Predicate.

The *Normal* Order :—Subject before Predicate.

The *Exceptional* order :—Predicate before Subject—

(*a*) with a *Pronoun*-Subject after certain Adverbial Conjunctions ;

(*b*) with a *Noun*-subject—

(1) after certain Adverbs and Abverbial phrases ;

(2) in Relative and Adverbial Clauses, if the Subject is longer than the Verb ;

(3) if the Verb is Impersonal ;

(4) in official language, recapitulations, etc. ;

(5) in Optative and Interjectional Clauses ;

(6) after **ce.**

II. Objects and Complements.

The *Normal* Order: — Direct Object before Indirect Object or Complement.

The *Exceptional* Order :—

(*a*) Indirect Object before Direct Object if the latter is enlarged.

(*b*) the word in closest connection with the preceding clause placed first.

B. Interrogative Sentences.

Affirmative Sentences may be made Interrogative by—

(*a*) Inversion ; the subject being either

(1) a Personal Pronoun, and then placed after the Verb.

(2) a Noun, and then placed before, but repeated after as a Pronoun.

(*b*) introducing an Interrogative Pronoun or Adverb—

(1) with a Simple Predicate.

(2) with a Complex Predicate.

(*c*) a Circumlocution : *i.e., est-ce que ?* or *n'est-ce pas que ?*

§ 121. General Principle.—French Nouns, in accordance with the analytic tendencies of Modern languages, have lost their case inflections: hence the arrangement of words in French is necessarily subject to somewhat stricter rules than is the case with synthetic languages. It is obvious that constructions like "Hannibalem vicit Scipio" are inadmissible in a language in which the relation of Subject and Object cannot be distinguished by *inflections*, and must therefore be indicated by *position*.

As compared with English, the distinctive feature of French is that the *qualifying* or limiting term is generally placed *after* the term *qualified;* this rule holds good—

(*a*) with *Nouns* and *Verbal Nouns* qualifying *Nouns;* as,

Le timbre-**poste**, the *postage*-stamp; la salle **à manger**, the *dining*-room; le moulin **à vent**, the *wind*-mill; la machine **à coudre**, the *sewing*-machine.

(*b*) with *Adjectives* and *Participles* qualifying *Nouns* (see, however, §§ 21-22); as,

La langue **française**, the *French* language; le ver **luisant**, the *glow*-worm.

(*c*) with *Adverbs* qualifying *Verbs* (see § 103); as,

Il me taquine **toujours**. *He* **always** *teases me.*

Special Rules. *A.*—Affirmative Sentences.

§ 122. (I.) *Subject and Predicate.* The *Normal* order is —the *Subject*, with its adjuncts if any, stands *before the Predicate;* as,

Les grandes pensées **viennent** du cœur. *Lofty thoughts come from the heart.*

but if emphasis is to be thrown on the *Predicate*, it must stand in a striking, and therefore *exceptional*, position, that is—*before the Subject;* as,

Alors eut lieu le déluge.	*Then it was that the deluge occurred.*
Venait ensuite la noblesse en habit noir.	*Then followed the nobility in black dress.*

This inversion takes place—

(*a*) with the *Pronoun-Subject*, in Clauses introduced by the Adverbial Conjunctions — **aussi**, *accordingly, consequently;* **aussi bien**, *besides;* **encore**, *even then;* **à peine**, *hardly, scarcely;* **toujours**, *anyhow;* **à plus forte raison**, *much more;* **peut-être**, *perhaps;* **du moins, au moins**, *at all events;* **tout au plus**, *at most;* as,

S'il n'est pas riche, 'du moins' **a-t-il** de quoi vivre.	*Though he is not rich, he has at all events enough to live upon.*
S'ils n'ont pas réussi, 'toujours' **ont-ils** fait leur devoir.	*Though they have not succeeded, at any rate they have done their duty.*
Cet homme ne travaille point, 'aussi' **est-il** dans la misère.	*This man never works, consequently he is in distress.*
'Peut-être' ne **viendra-t-il** pas.	*Perhaps (May be) he will not come.*
'A peine' **eut-il** prononcé ces paroles, que sa voix fut couverte de huées.	*Scarcely had he pronounced these words, when his voice was drowned by hootings.*

Obs. If the Subject is a Noun, the Interrogative Construction, § 124 (*a*), must be adopted : as,

'A peine' le **roi fut-il** parti que...	*Scarcely had the king started, when...*
'Peut-être' votre **ami viendra-t-il.**	*Perhaps your friend will come.*

(*b*) with the *Noun-Subject*, but only if the Verb is *Intransitive, Reflexive* or *Passive*,

(1) in sentences introduced by one of the following Adverbs :—**ici**, *here;* **là**, *there;* **de là**, *hence;* **là-dessus**, *thereupon;* **déjà**, *already;* **tant**, *so much;* **ainsi**, *thus;* **aussitôt**, *immediately;* **bientôt**, *soon;* **tout à coup**, *suddenly;* and after *Adverbial Phrases;* as,

'Ainsi' **périt** le dernier des Tarquins.*	*Thus died the last of the Tarquins.*
'Tout à coup' **s'élève** une tempête furieuse.	*Suddenly there arose a furious storm.*
'De là' **sont venues** les guerres civiles.	*Hence arose the civil wars.*
'En Italie' **règne** un printemps éternel.	*In Italy there prevails an everlasting spring.*
'Ce soir' **aura lieu** une brillante illumination.	*This evening there will be a brilliant illumination.*

Obs. Thus also, after **tel**, and other Adjectives, used as Predicative Complements :—

'Telle' **fut** la fin de ce grand homme. 'Grande' **fut** notre surprise.

(2) in *Relative* and *Adverbial Clauses*, if on account of its adjuncts, the Subject is longer than the Verb ; as,

Le temps et l'argent que **coûte** 'l'éducation' sont toujours bien employés.	*Time and money spent on education are always well employed.*
Quand **arriva** à Paris 'la nouvelle de la déroute de l'armée française.'	*When the news of the rout of the French army arrived in Paris.*

(3) after *Impersonal Verbs*, the Impersonal Pronoun **il** then standing as grammatical Subject ; as,

'Il' **est arrivé** un grand malheur.	*A great misfortune has happened* (Lit.—*There has happened a great misfortune*).
'Il' lui **est né** un fils.	*A son was born to him.*

(4) in *Official* language, *i. e.*, in *decrees*, *resolutions*, *enumerations*, and a few *idiomatic phrases ;* as,

Sont éligibles : tous les citoyens de l'âge de vingt ans révolus.
Vienne une disgrâce, il sera abandonné de ses amis.
N'est pas poète qui veut.

(5) in *Optative*, *Conditional*, and *Interjectional* Clauses (see, § 79) ; as,

---

* Comp. German : 'So' *endete* der letzte der Tarquinier.

Vive la reine !	*Long live the queen !*
Ira qui voudra.	*Let him go who likes.*
Un homme vous flatte-il, ne vous y fiez pas.	*If a man flatters you, don't trust him.*

(*c*) after **ce** for the sake of emphasizing the Object or Complement; as,

C'est 'un grand trésor' que la santé (Instead of—La santé est un grand trésor).	*A great treasure indeed is health.*
Ce n'est pas 'vivre' que de végéter ainsi.	*Surely it is not living to vegetate thus.*

See also Infinitive, § 82, *a.**

Obs. In like manner any other member of a sentence may be made emphatic :—

C'est moi qui ai remis hier votre lettre à son adresse.
C'est hier que j'ai remis votre lettre à son adresse.
C'est votre lettre que j'ai remis hier à son adresse.
C'est à son adresse que j'ai remis hier votre lettre.

§ 123. (II.)—*Objects and Complements.*—

The *Normal* order is—

(*a*) *Subject.*	*Verb.*	*Direct Object, if a Noun.*	*Indirect Object or Complement, if a Noun.*
Il	inspire	le courage	à ses soldats.
(*b*) *Subject.*	*Indirect Obj., if a Pronoun of 1st or 2nd Person.*	*Direct Object, if a Pronoun of 3rd Person.*	*Verb.*
Il	me	le	dira.
(*c*) *Subject.*	*Direct Obj., if both Objs. are Pronouns of 3rd Person.*	*Indirect Obj., if both Objs. are Pronouns of 3rd Person.*	*Verb.*
Il	le	lui.	dira.

For full details and exceptions, see §§ 28, 29.

§ 124. The *Exceptional* Order, used for the sake of emphasis or euphony, is—

(*a*) to place the *Indirect* Noun-Object or Noun-Complement *before the Direct* Noun-Object, especially if the latter, on account of its adjuncts, is longer than the former; as,

Un décret	enleva	**aux Maures**	la liberté religieuse que le traité de Grenade leur avait laissée.
Jérome Savonarole	voulait rendre	**au clergé** **au peuple** **aux arts**	la pureté des mœurs, la liberté, le sentiment religieux.

(*b*) to commence the sentence with the word in closest logical connexion with the preceding clause; especially with Verbs of *adding, joining, replying, etc.*:—**ajouter, joindre, se rattacher, s'opposer, répondre, succéder, substituer, préférer**; as,

(1) *Indirect Object or Complement.*	*Verb, if Intransitive, Passive, or Reflexive.*	*Noun-Subject.*
A ces matins brumeux	succédaient	des soirées froides et des nuits glaciales.
A son cou	était attachée	une feuille de palmier.
A un peuple nouveau	il* fallait	une langue nouvelle.
(2) *Indirect Object.*	*Subject.*	*Verb, if Transitive.*
A cela	nous	ne répondîmes rien.

Obs. The inversion of the Genitive is restricted to the style of poetry; as,

Du temple orné partout de festons magnifiques
Le peuple saint en foule inondait **les portiques.**

B.—INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

§ 125. An Affirmative sentence may be made Interrogative—

(*a*) by the process of *Inversion*, and here two different cases must be distinguished:—

(1) when the *Subject is a Conjunctive Personal Pronoun*, or the *Demonstrative Pronoun* **ce**, it is placed *after* the Verb (as is the case in English when the Verb is an auxiliary); as,

---

* **il** is here only the Grammatical Subject.

Viendra-t*-**il** aujourd'hui ?	*Will he come to-day ?*
Le sait-**elle** déjà ?	*Does she know it already ?*
Est-**on** venu me demander ?	*Has any one come for me ?*
Irez-**vous** ou n'irez-**vous** pas ?	*Shall you go or not ?*
Sera-**ce** lui qui aura la préférence ?	*Will he have the preference ?*

(2) when the *Subject is a Noun,* or another part of speech (except Conjunctive Personal Pronoun) used Substantively, the Subject stands before the Verb, but is repeated after it in the form of a Conjunctive Personal Pronoun ; as,

Votre ami viendra-t-**il** aujourd'hui ?	*Will your friend come to-day ?*
La reine le sait-**elle** déjà ?	*Does the queen know it already ?*
Personne n'est-**il** venu me demander ?	*Has no one inquired after me.*

(*b*) by the use of an *Interrogative Pronoun* or Adverb: here again two different cases must be distinguished :—

(1) when the *Predicate is simple, i.e.,* when it is an Intransitive or Reflexive Verb without Complement, then the *Noun-Subject may be placed* after the Verb ; as,

(*a*) With a *Pronoun-Subject :—*

Quand viendra-**t-il ?**	*When will he come ?*
Comment se portent-elles ?	*How are they doing ?*

(*b*) With a *Noun-Subject :—*

Quand viendra **votre ami ?**
or Quand **votre ami** viendra-t-**il ?**

Combien se vend **le sucre ?**
or Combien **le sucre** se vend-**il ?**

Comment se portent **vos cousines ?**
or Comment vos cousines se portent-**elles ?**

(2) when the *Predicate is complex, i.e.,* when it is a Transitive Verb with a Noun-Object, or an Intransitive

* This so-called euphonic **t** is generally admitted to be the original 3rd Person inflection now dropped in the uninverted affirmative form of conjugation

Verb with a Complement, and then the *Noun-Subject must be repeated* in the form of a Personal Pronoun, as under (*a*) 2—

(*a*) With a *Pronoun-Subject*:—

Où trouve-t-on le corail?	*Where are corals to be found?*
A quelle heure se couchent-**ils?**	*At what o'clock do they go to bed?*

(*b*) With a *Noun-Subject*:—

Où **les hommes** cherchent-**ils** le bonheur?	*Where do men seek their happiness?*
A quelle heure **ton frère** attend-**il** son ami?	*At what o'clock does thy brother expect* **his friend?**

(*c*) by a *Circumlocution, i.e.*, by introducing the sentence with the Interrogative phrase **est-ce que...?** if doubt or astonishment is implied, or **n'est-ce pas que...?** when an affirmative answer is expected; as,

Est-ce qu'il viendra?	*Do you think he will come?*
N'est-ce pas qu'il viendra?	*He will come, will he not?*
Est-ce que les nôtres se sont bien battus?	*Did our men fight well?*
N'est-ce pas que les nôtres se sont bien battus?	*Our men did fight well, didn't they?*

Obs. 1. **Est-ce** may be combined with any Interrogative Pronoun or Adverb; as,

Qui est-ce qui vous l'a dit? **Quand est-ce qu'**il viendra?

Obs 2. For the sake of avoiding the grating sound of such forms as—sers-je? cours-je? trouvé-je? entends-je? the interrogative form with **est-ce que** is preferred; as,

Est-ce que je sers? Est-ce que j'entends, etc.

EXERCISES, IDIOMS, DIALOGUES, AND COMPOSITIONS.

N.B.—The Numbers in parentheses refer to the Sections in the Syntax.
Words in parentheses ( ) *are to be inserted.*
Words in brackets [ ] *are to be omitted.*

1. Première Leçon : Emploi de l'Article défini.—Syntaxe §§ 2—3.

Thème.

1. The bee is the emblem of order, industry, and foresight. 2. Man undertook to make himself master of the brutes, and he succeeded (in it, 33, *b*) sometimes by strength and courage, sometimes by skill and patience. 3. The largest islands are—Britain and Ireland in the west of Europe, inhabited by the English people ; Sicily and Sardinia between Europe and Africa ; Iceland [and] Newfoundland, renowned for cod fisheries, in the north of America ; Madagascar in the south of Africa ; Japan in the east of Asia ; Sumatra, Java, and Borneo between Asia and Australia; Cuba between North America and South America. 4. Idleness is the mother of all vices. 5. Fear is the ruling passion (21, *a*, 2) of tyrants.

Gallicismes dialogués.

1. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un *gallicisme ?*—Selon la définition de l'Académie française, c'est une construction propre et particulière à la langue française contraire aux règles ordinaires de la grammaire, mais autorisée par l'usage.

2. Et par analogie on doit donc dire *anglicisme* pour toute façon de parler particulière à la langue anglaise?—Oui, monsieur ; il se dit aussi des façons de parler empruntées à la langue anglaise et transportées dans une autre langue.

3. Comment appelle-t-on les expressions empruntées du Grec ?—Les tours qui tiennent du génie de la langue grecque s'appellent *hellénismes*. Les anciens Grecs, par exemple, faisaient des hellénismes en parlant latin, comme nous faisons des gallicismes en parlant une autre langue que la nôtre.

COMPOSITION.

The three great Physicians.—Dumoulin, a celebrated physician, being in his agony, surrounded by several physicians who deplored his loss : "Gentlemen," he said to them (121), "I leave behind me three great physicians." Each fancied he was one of the three ; they pressed him to name them. "They are," he replied, "water, exercise, and diet."

On the Utility of History.—It (40, *a*) is not without reason that history has always been looked upon as the light of ages, the depository of events, the faithful witness of truth, the source of good counsels and of prudence, the rule of good conduct and of manners. Without it, confined within the limits of the age and country in which we live, encompassed within the narrow circle of our individual knowledge and of our own reflexions, we always remain (103) in a kind of infancy which leaves us strangers with regard to the *outer* (*rest of the*) world, and in a profound ignorance of everything *that* (= *ce qui*, 46) has preceded us and of everything that surrounds us.

2. Deuxième Leçon : Emploi de l'Article partitif.—Syntaxe § 4.

THÈME.

1. Water, milk, fruits, herbs, and roots were the food of *primitive* (= *first*) men. 2. Many men look upon courage as rashness, whilst others treat caution as cowardice. 3. With common sense and good will one often overcomes considerable difficulties. 4. Christopher Columbus had to struggle with many difficulties before (85, *c*) he discovered America. 5. Never did a nation prepare war with so much prudence and carry it on with so much boldness as the Roman people. 6. Many people take friends as one takes up a pack of cards ; they use them when they hope to win. 7. Pleasures are flowers sown among the thorns of life. 8. It is not money that I ask for, it is advice, disinterested advice, such as one has a right to expect from those who are ready to make sacrifices for the good of their friends. 9. Napoleon said to his soldiers : "You have yet battles to fight, rivers to cross, forced marches to undertake,

enemies to subdue, laurels to gather, insults to avenge." 10. There is a certain kind of politeness which is necessary in the intercourse of respectable people; it teaches [how] to joke, and prevents them from shocking others by certain ways of speaking. 11. He has not learnt any rules. 12. One does not learn rules in order to forget them.

Gallicismes dialogués (Suite).

1. Dans notre dernière leçon n'en étions nous pas au chapitre des idiotismes?—En effet; poursuivons, je vous en prie.

2. Je suppose que nous autres Anglais ne faisons pas mal d'anglicismes en parlant français?—Je vous en réponds; témoin ce fils d'Albion, qui voulant décommander un article de consommation, dit à un garçon de café à Paris: "J'ai changé mon esprit autour de cette tasse de café."

3. Avez-vous jamais entendu l'anecdote de cet autre Anglais qui voulait dire en français à un garçon d'hôtel: "Do not let the fire *go out?*"—Je gage qu'il traduisit par: "Ne laissez pas le feu *sortir.*"

4. Vous y êtes; et, pour surcroît d'embarras, il prononça "feu" comme "fou," ce qui donna lieu à un étrange quiproquo. Mais je présume qu'en voilà assez sur ce chapitre?—Oui, brisons là.

Composition.

When I enter a house, I see in it (40, *a*) solid foundations of stone, laid in order to render the edifice durable; I see in it high walls, with a roof which prevents the rain from entering; I meet with stairs the steps of which (44, ***a***) are evidently made to ascend; rooms with doors to enter in, locks and keys to shut and open, windows by *which* (= *where*) light enters without the wind being (78, *a*) able to enter with it, a chimney to make fire [in] without being inconvenienced by smoke, a bed to sleep [in], chairs to sit down [upon], a table for eating, an inkstand for writing.

Never will any sensible man take it into his head to say that this house, with all its furniture, was built and arranged by itself. The order, proportion, symmetry, the manifest design of the whole work forbid [us] to attribute it to a blind cause, such as hazard.

The work of the whole world *displays* (= *has*) a hundred times more art, order, proportion, and symmetry than the most industrious works of men. It would then be obstinately blinding one's self (insert *que*, 82, *a**) not to recognize the all-powerful hand which has shaped the universe.

3. Troisième Leçon : Omission de l'Article.—Syntaxe §§ 5—6.

Thème.

1. Although (78, *c*) Holland is small in extent, [yet] the industry of her inhabitants has made her very important; Dutch cheese and Dutch linen [Holland] are commodities known everywhere, and the merchants of Holland *enjoy* (= *have*) also everywhere a deserved reputation *for* (= *of*) honesty. 2. The poets speak of four ages of the world : the first is called the golden age, the second the silver age, the third the brazen age, and the fourth the iron age. 3. Albinos have eyes so sensitive that they cannot bear daylight. 4. The invention of steam-engines is of paramount importance, especially on account of their application to steamboats and railways. 5. One can live as happy in a cottage, nay even under a thatched roof, as in a marble palace. 6. I have wished to do good, but I did not wish to make any fuss, because I felt that fuss did not do any good, just as goodness did not make any fuss. 7. Do not make fun of a man's self-love ; on that score he does not know how to take a joke. 8. The whole house is let, there is not a single apartment left. 9. Ladies and gentlemen, be welcome all. 10. *How long have you been learning* (= *Since when do you learn*, 64, *b*) Latin ?—I began (Indef.) to learn it last winter, and next year I shall begin Greek.

Gallicismes dialogués.

1. Dans notre dernier entretien vous avez employé le mot " décommander " ; comment se fait-il que ce verbe ne se trouve pas dans le Dictionnaire de l'Académie que vous vous plaisez tant à citer à l'appui de vos observations ?—Ce serait trop long à vous expliquer ici ; je vous renvoie à la Préface de la septième édition, qui vient de paraître.

2. Vous en parlez bien à votre aise ; mais comment voulez-vous que je m'y prenne, moi qui n'ai que la sixième édition ?—Dans ce cas je vous prêterai un exemplaire de la septième édition ; regardez par exemple, à la page xi. : " Un dictionnaire est le moins impérieux des maîtres, s'y soumet qui veut."

3. Fort bien, mais encore vous faudrait-il citer vos auteurs pour justifier l'emploi de ce terme !—Eh bien, consultez le dictionnaire de Littré, autorité qui, certes, n'est pas à dédaigner, et qui vaut bien celle de l'Académie.

COMPOSITION.

The Gauls.—The houses, spacious and round, are constructed with posts and hurdles coated outside and inside with clay; their high roofs are formed with oak shingles and covered with thatch and cut straw kneaded with clay; wooden tables, skins of wild animals serving for beds, seats, and carpets, are nearly all the furniture of these vast and bare dwellings. Sometimes silver vases, contrasting with this simplicity, reveal the mineral wealth of the country. This wealth appears much more strikingly on the neck, arms, and fingers of men and women. Gold necklaces, bracelets, [and] rings sparkle everywhere on the warriors of renown; gold, silver, coral bedeck their sabres and shields; their short cloaks of thick or thin wool, according to the season, are chequered with showy colours or strewn with spangles and dazzling flower-work.

4. Quatrième Leçon: Emploi et Omission de l'Article indéfini.—Syntaxe § 8.

THÈME.

1. Alexander the Great had regular features, a fine rosy complexion, an aquiline nose, large eyes, fair and curly hair, a lofty head and a well proportioned body. 2. David, who was a shepherd, was made King of the Jews. 3. This gentleman is a Spaniard, but he speaks English so well that one would take him for an Englishman. 4. What a pretty child! it has fair hair, blue eyes, and a little rosy mouth. 5. I wish you a happy new year. 6. Fabius Maximus *managed* (= *found means*) to stop Hannibal without giving battle; never did a general watch with closer attention every step of his enemy. 7. Our music master comes three times a week and charges four francs a lesson. 8. General Ney exclaimed: "I was born a Frenchman and shall die a Frenchman!" 9. He has shown himself a faithful friend. 10. The eldest of his sons has become a soldier and the youngest a sailor.

GALLICISMES DIALOGUÉS.

1. Accepteriez-vous son invitation, si vous étiez à ma place?—Acceptez, puisqu'il a fait les premières avances; cela n'est pas de refus.

2. Y aura-t-il beaucoup de monde?—Non, pas ce soir; vous souperez en petit comité.

3. En petit comité? Je ne vous comprends pas!—En langage familier, "petit comité" se dit d'une société restreinte à un petit nombre de personnes entre lesquelles règne ordinairement une certaine familiarité.

4. Et qu'est-ce qui me procure l'honneur d'une telle marque de distinction?—Vraiment, vous êtes trop modeste, à l'avenir sachez vous faire valoir.

Composition.

The Frenchman and the Englishman.—A Frenchman and an Englishman quarrelled with one another *which* (= *lequel*, 50) of the two nations surpassed the other in military glory, in the advancement of sciences and arts, language and literature. It can easily be imagined that at the end of the discussion they were as far advanced as at the beginning, that is to say that each of them was persuaded that his nation was the first of all. However, the Frenchman, wishing to terminate in a polite manner a dispute which threatened to become somewhat bitter, exclaimed: "For the rest, sir, if I were not a Frenchman, I should like to be an Englishman." "And I (34), sir," proudly replied (121) the son of Albion, "if I were not an Englishman I should like to be an Englishman."

5. Cinquième Leçon: Régime direct (Accusatif). —Syntaxe §§ 9—10.

Thème.

1. An Italian inn is a habitation tolerable enough in summer; but in winter it (39, 40) is something of which one cannot conceive any idea. 2. Why have you not sent for him?—Because we were waiting for his return. 3. What is he looking for?—He is looking for his spectacles; I told him they were in the case, but he will not listen to me. 4. The inhabitants of the island supplied the crew of our ship with everything (that) we wished for. 5. You have nothing to hope for in this world. 6. On Tuesday next I shall send for our steward, and if he comes in my absence tell (to) him to wait for me. 7. When one has worked the whole day it is right that one should rest in the evening. 8. Have you met with my partner?—There he is. 9. What languages does your master teach you?—He teaches us Latin and a little Greek. 10. The Romans called Cicero the father of *his* (= *the*) country.

GALLICISMES DIALOGUÉS.

1. Sur quoi la conversation a-t-elle roulé ?—Belle demande ! sur la pluie et le beau temps !

2. Et n'a-t-on pas parlé politique ?—A vrai dire, on a parlé un peu de tout.

3. Avez-vous jamais entendu Madame de Girardin ?—Je n'en perdrai jamais le souvenir ! voilà ce qui s'appelle parler.

4. Et sa sœur aussi possède le talent de la parole au plus haut degré ?—Je n'en disconviens pas ; mais malheureusement, elle fait de l'esprit en pure perte.

5. Tranchons le mot, c'est un bas bleu !

COMPOSITION.

The Bee and the Fly.— One day a bee perceived a fly near her hive. "What do you want here?" said she to it *in* (= *of*) a furious tone. "Indeed, it behoves you, vile animal, to mix with the queens of the air." "You are right," replied the fly coolly, "one is always wrong to approach a nation as fiery as yours [is]."— "Nothing *could be* (= *is*) wiser than we," said the bee ; "we alone have laws and a well organized republic ; we feed only on fragrant flowers ; we make nothing but delicious honey which is like nectar. Take yourself off, ugly importunate fly [you], who do nothing but hum and get your living on dirt." "We live as best we can," replied the fly ; "poverty is not a vice ; but anger is a great one (32, *d*, 1). You make honey that is sweet, but your heart is always bitter. You are wise in your laws, but violent in your behaviour ; your anger which stings your enemies, *is your* (= *gives you*) death ; and your mad cruelty does more harm to you than to any one else. It is better to have less brilliant qualities, but more moderation."

6. Sixième Leçon : Régime indirect (Datif).— Syntaxe §§ 11—12.

THÈME.

1. England owes to her sea-coast a great part of her riches ; she is also indebted to it for beautiful scenery, often celebrated by poets and novelists. 2. The vice of calumny is a secret pride which discloses to us the straw in the eye of our brother and conceals from us the beam which is in our own. 3. One cannot get a word from them. 4. Racine (has) borrowed from the ancient Greeks and Romans most of the subjects of his tragedies. 5. Crœsus one day (103) asked Solon whether he had met in his travels a man perfectly happy. Surprised to

hear him mention a common man as a model of happiness, he asked him if he had not found people happier than Tellus. 6. How do you spend your time in the evening?—We play chess. 7. By his noble self sacrifice, Winkelried saved his native country from subjection. 8. After the unfortunate battle of Cannæ, the Roman senate went to meet that one of the two consuls who had survived his defeat and thanked him *that* (= *de ce que*) he had not despaired of the safety of the republic. 9. Priests had taught Moses the language and sciences of the Egyptians. 10. Agesilaus was asked *what* (= *ce que*) he would like *children to be taught* (= *that one should teach children*)—"I should like," replied he, "that one taught (76, *a*) them what they will have to do *when they are* (= *being*) men."

Gallicismes dialogués.

1. De quoi s'agit-il, messieurs? vous voilà à couteaux tirés?—Nous parlions politique, et comme d'ordinaire nous ne pouvons tomber d'accord.

2. Trève de politique! vous autres Français, vous avez la tête si près du bonnet qu'au moindre choc de vos opinions vous en venez aux gros mots.—Vous le prenez bien haut, messieurs les Anglais; si j'en crois les rapports de vos journaux, vous n'y allez pas non plus de main morte, une fois que vous vous y mettez.

3. Je ne disconviens pas que dans la chaleur de la discussion nous frappons comme des sourds, mais encore gardons-nous des mesures.—Témoin les discours tenus lors de la dernière élection, où les candidats rivaux se traitaient de menteurs, de brigands, etc.; je passe sous silence d'autres termes flatteurs empruntés au langage des halles.

Composition.

A good Lesson.—A nobleman of the household of Louis XII. had ill-treated a peasant. The king, who was informed of it, ordered that the bread should be taken away from this nobleman and that they (52) should serve him nothing but wine and meat. The officer having complained of it to the king, the latter (42, Obs.) asked him if the wine and dishes which they served him did not suffice him. On *his reply* (= *the reply that he made*, 38, *d*) that bread was the principal food, the king said sternly: "Well! why then are you unreasonable enough to ill-treat those who put bread into your (38, *b*) hand?"

Phocion.—When Phocion was condemned to death, one of his friends asked him if he had no message for his son. "Tell him," replied he, "that I forbid him ever to remember the injustice (that one has) done to his father."

7. Septième Leçon : Locutions adverbiales précédées de à.—Syntaxe § 13.

THÈME.

1. The coffee-tree is a pretty little tree with greyish bark [and] glossy green foliage, and the branches of which (44, *a*) bear tufts of flowers as white as jessamine. 2. How Italy with her hundred princes and great historical associations contrasts with republican Switzerland ! 3. I often think of my old friends in Japan (3 *a*). Diogenes used to walk about (68, Obs. 3) with a lantern in his (38 *b*, Obs. 1) hand. 4. When we go (72) to the fancy dress ball, we shall dress in the Turkish fashion. 5. It strikes me your friend looks uneasy. 6. To the right of the Eurotas, at a small distance from the bank, was the town of Sparta. 7. He wanted to borrow some money from me, but I told him to apply to that old Jew who is ever ready to help those who are in need ; at a good interest, be it well understood. 8. I have heard an old man say that. 9. The enemy ravaged everything with fire and sword. 10. Are these articles sold by the dozen or by the pound? 11. They live from hand to mouth.

GALLICISMES DIALOGUÉS.

1. Vous a-t-on fait bon accueil?—On m'a accueilli à bras ouverts.

2. Moi qui croyais qu'ils étaient d'un abord si difficile !—C'est ce qui vous trompe ; ils sont, au contraire, de très facile accès ; à telles enseignes qu'ils sont venus au-devant de tous mes désirs.

3. Eh bien, je suis bien aise d'apprendre qu'ils ne se soient pas fait tirer les oreilles. Ainsi vous êtes au comble de vos vœux?—Oui, tout me sourit ; le succès n'a point trompé mon attente.

COMPOSITION.

The Watch of the Prussian Grenadier.—A grenadier of the King of Prussia used to wear, by way of a watch, a rather big bullet tied to a string. Frederick was informed of it (32 *b*). On the parade he asked the soldier to show him his watch ; the latter at first refused, but had at last to comply. "Well," said the king to him, "what time (hour) can this bullet tell you?" "It tells me," the soldier replied, "that at any time I must be ready to die for your majesty." Frederick, pleased with (16, *a*) this reply, pulled out his watch and gave it to the grenadier.

The Physician and Frederick the Great.—Every time (that) the great Frederick met a physician the first thing he asked him was, what was (68, Obs. 1) the number of persons (that) he had despatched into the other world. One of them replied to him one day: "Not so many as you, sire." Frederick turned his back on him and never spoke to him again.

8. Huitième Leçon: Complément avec 'de.'—Syntaxe §§ 14—19.

Thème.

1. Youth lives on illusions, old age on recollections. 2. Before the invention of paper, people used to write on tablets coated with wax, on barks of trees and skins. 3. English is not derived from German, as some people would like to *have* (*make*) us believe. 4. Where do you come from?—We come from Dresden, the most pleasant town by far in Germany. 5. I use Littré's great French dictionary every day, I cannot do without it. 6. The English Channel separates England from France. 7. Do you enjoy good health?—No, my head aches. 8. Switzerland occupies the space which stretches from the Alps to the Rhine and to the Jura mountains. 9. Do you doubt his sincerity?—Yes, and I think he does not fulfil his duties. 10. What Latin grammar do you use now?—We use *Roby's Shorter Latin Grammar*, a work of sterling merit. 11. Are you then not aware of your mistake? 12. I did not expect such a cool reception. 13. That depends on circumstances.

Gallicismes dialogués.

1. N'y aurait-il pas moyen d'obtenir de vous un petit moment d'entretien?—Je suis à vos ordres, parlez!

2. Je venais vous demander vos bons offices pour un homme de bien. Oserais-je me flatter que vous lui accorderez votre protection?—Cela dépend; si c'est un homme qui mérite protection, la mienne lui est acquise.

3. Avant de m'adresser à vous, je suis allé aux renseignements; et partout on ne m'en dit que du bien!—Dans ce cas vous pouvez faire fond sur moi; je ne fais jamais la sourde oreille à une demande raisonnable.

Composition.

Epaminondas asked us to visit him often. We were present at the conversations which he had with the most enlightened

Thebans and with the ablest officers. Although he had enriched his mind with every kind of knowledge, he preferred listening to talking. His reflexions were always deep and to the point. On great occasions when he was called on to defend himself, his replies were prompt, vigorous, and precise.

The Sculptor and his Critics.—Polycletus, a Greek sculptor, out of all patience with the advice which he received from would-be connaisseurs, resolved to avenge himself. The Athenians had charged him to work out a statue ; he made two, but showed only one in public, and touched it up according to the liking of all persons who criticized it. When he thought it likely to satisfy everybody, he exhibited it again to the gaze of the crowd and showed at the same time *the one* (= *celle*) which he had kept at home ; the latter was unanimously praised, and *the other was considered* (= *one found the other*) ridiculous. "Learn," Polycletus then said to them, "that you admire my work and that you despise your own."

9. Neuvième Leçon : Complément avec 'de.'—Syntaxe § 16—19.

THÈME.

1. "The ancient Germans," says Tacitus, "were simple, warlike, not talkative, more anxious to act well than to talk well." 2. Beware of those who flatter you. 3. We heartily (103) rejoice at the success of your bold undertaking. 4. The ancient Mexicans were quite astonished at the sight of the Spanish horsemen ; they thought that horse and rider were but one being. 5. Have you informed him of the arrival of his friend? —Yes, but he has not even honoured me with a reply. 6. I am very sorry for the great loss you have suffered. 7. A thrill of joy ran through the army on seeing their leader again. 8. I shall not see him again for a week. 9. Take your seat on this side, you will see better. 10. Do you know that his life is at stake? —Yes, I think it is all over with him. 11. We do not answer for his integrity.

GALLICISMES DIALOGUÉS.

1. Avez-vous donné un coup d'œil à la traduction que voici?—Pour vous parler franchement, elle me fait l'effet d'avoir été faite à coups de dictionnaire.

2. Moi qui me flattais déjà d'avoir fait merveille !—Mais je ne dis pas qu'elle soit mauvaise, pour une traduction littérale, bien entendu.

3. Et que trouvez-vous donc à y redire?—Mais, vous n'êtes pas sans savoir qu'une traduction demande une grande intelligence des deux langues, et de la matière dont il s'agit.

4. Eh bien, est-ce à dire que cette intelligence me fasse défaut? — Non-seulement vous n'avez pas saisi le sens de l'original, mais, ce qui pis est, vous n'avez pas même étudié à fond votre langue maternelle.

Composition.

1. I congratulate you less on your victory, Montausier wrote to the Dauphin, than on the humanity with which you have treated the vanquished. In braving all dangers you have only done what (46) others have done also; but by assisting the unhappy inhabitants of the hostile country you have shown that you have inherited the magnanimity of your ancestors.

2. Regulus hurrying from victory to victory soon made himself master of Tunis; the capture of this town threw the Carthaginians into consternation; they asked the proconsul for peace. The Roman husbandman proved that it was more easy to handle the plough after having gained (85, *c*) victories than to direct with a firm hand a glorious prosperity; a truly great man is especially fit for shining in adversity. Regulus proposed to the enemies such hard terms that they saw themselves compelled to continue the war.

10. Dixième Leçon: Place des Adjectifs.—Syntaxe §§ 20—23.

Thème.

1. The fundamental maxim of the Roman republic was to look on her liberty as inseparable from the Roman name. 2. Great events are almost always unforeseen events. 3. Paternal tenderness and filial love are innate feelings which nature has impressed on all hearts. 4. The white hair of a virtuous old man is like a crown with which time has adorned his head. 5. The third Punic war lasted only four years; it terminated in the frightful destruction of Carthage. 6. The pine is an evergreen tree which has long, thin, and sharp leaves. 7. He is (40) a gentle and well-bred man; he has in his (38) look that straightforward, frank, and lively glance, the certain symptom of a prompt, energetic, and intelligent resolution. 8. The straight line is the shortest road. 9. The illusions of the ideal world make us forget the real world. 10. We have all a natural taste for rural life.

GALLICISMES DIALOGUÉS.

1. Vous venez de citer un bon mot attribué à Voltaire ; n'est-ce pas à Diderot que revient l'honneur de l'avoir trouvé?—Je confesse mon erreur ; pour bien citer, il faut une grande sûreté de mémoire, sinon on s'expose à d'étonnantes substitutions de personnes, ce qui est un délit en matière de littérature, comme en matière d'état civil.

2. Puisque nous voilà sur le chapitre des citations, pourquoi dit-on tant de mal des citations, aussi bien de celles qui interviennent dans la conversation que de celles qui courent dans les livres?—On dit que c'est de l'esprit prêté sur mauvais gages ; que c'est le "mont-de-piété" des esprits pauvres qui n'ont jamais la réplique en poche, et qui ne peuvent parler argent comptant ; enfin, que c'est l'esprit des gens qui n'en ont pas.

COMPOSITION.

The last period of Greek Freedom.—It was not difficult for the Persians to subjugate Asia Minor, and even the Greek colonies which the effeminacy of Asia had corrupted. But when they came to Greece herself, they found what they had never seen, a well-trained militia, efficient chiefs, soldiers accustomed to live on little, bodies hardened to work, [and] which wrestling and other athletic sports honoured in that country had made agile; indifferent armies indeed, but similar to those vigorous bodies in which it seems that all is muscle and in which everything is full of animal spirits, and, besides, so well commanded and so docile to the orders of their generals that one would have believed that the soldiers had all but one soul.

11. Onzième Leçon: Place des Adjectifs (Suite). —Syntaxe §§ 20—23.

THÈME.

1. What is flattery?—It is a false or exaggerated praise dictated by personal interest in order to make one's self agreeable. 2. The Milky Way is in the azure of the skies a white stripe in which (47) the naked eye *can* (= *does*) not distinguish a single star. 3. The French Revolution is one of the most remarkable events of the last century. 4. Nearly all great men have been brought up in the rough school of adversity. 5. Tell us a funny story and not an absurd tale like that of yesterday. 6. The aspect of a large city deserted, the

remembrance of past times, the comparison [of these] *with* (= *of*) the present state, all [this] elevated my heart to sublime thoughts. 7. A poor blind man, led by a little girl, asked us for alms.

Dialogue sur la Place des Adjectifs.

1. Quelle est la place des adjectifs dans l'ordre naturel?—Ils se placent généralement après leurs substantifs, car il faut connaître un objet avant de le qualifier.

2. Comment expliquez-vous l'usage d'en placer plusieurs avant le substantif dans certaines circonstances?—Par l'impatience de caractériser un objet d'abord par les qualités dont on est préoccupé; par l'empressement de préparer le vrai jour dans lequel on veut le faire voir.

3. N'est-ce pas que le désir de prévenir toute équivoque sur l'idée qu'on s'en est faite et qu'on veut communiquer aux autres y est pour quelque chose?—Sans doute; aussi est-ce particulièrement dans les cas où parlent les passions que les adjectifs se montrent avant les substantifs.

4. Et cette dernière remarque ne s'applique-t-elle pas aussi au langage poétique?—Oui, c'est surtout dans la poésie, qui a sans cesse besoin d'images que ces inversions se multiplient d'une manière qui est interdite à la prose.

Composition.

Tadmor or Palmyra.—Tadmor or Palmyra stood in the midst of the desert between Damascus and the Euphrates, at a hundred and fifty miles north-east of the town and ninety miles from the river. "Noble and bright Palmyra," said Pliny, "sees her fertile fields and beautiful waters shut up by the immensity of the desert." "In all times," says a celebrated traveller (Volney), "Palmyra has been a natural emporium for the wares that came from India by the Gulf of Persia, and which, from there, following the Euphrates upwards, went into Phœnicia and Asia Minor and spread amongst the nations which were ever eager for them. Commerce could not but settle there, from the remotest ages, a nucleus of population, and make it an important place, *when* (= *though*) as yet unrenowned. The two sources of fresh water contained in its soil were especially a powerful attraction for settling in this desert, barren and dry everywhere else. These (39) were no doubt the two motives which attracted the *eye* (= *looks*) of Solomon, and which induced this merchant prince to carry his arms to this remote border of Judæa. . . ."

12. Douzième Leçon: Accord et Régime des Adjectifs.—Syntaxe §§ 24—25.

Thème.

1. Corneille has reformed the comic and tragic theatre by excellent imitations. 2. A sensitive person cannot see a poor and suffering old man or woman without being deeply touched. 3. The good French authors of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries will ever serve *as* (= *of*) models. 4. One may trace the origin of the principal nations of Europe to three great principal races—the Latin, the Teutonic, and the Slav. 5. This young man has acquirements and talents far in advance of his age; he has learned the Latin and the Greek languages with an astonishing facility. 6. Diogenes used to go about barefooted and to sleep in a cask. 7. What one admires in the style of Bossuet is an extraordinary force and energy. 8. We attacked the enemies unawares; they had neither their usual presence of mind nor their usual prudence. 9. He looks very haughty. 10. Your proposal does not seem to be serious. 11. You are not angry with me, are you?—No, but I am sorry for the mishap that has befallen me through your fault; I am not at all satisfied with your behaviour. 12. These old books of yours are good for nothing!—If that is the case, please accept them as a token of my high esteem.

Dialogue sur la Place des Adjectifs (Suite).

1. Veuillez me citer quelques exemples à l'appui de votre théorie?—Ce n'est pas ma théorie à moi, c'est celle émise par Laveaux.

2. Eh bien; sur quoi Laveaux appuie-t-il son opinion?—Il donne de nombreuses pièces à l'appui; entre autres un passage du *Tartufe*.

3. Poursuivez, je vous en prie!—Orgon, sortant de dessous la table où il a connu toute la scélératesse de Tartufe, ne dit pas: voilà un *homme abominable*, mais:—*Voilà, je l'avoue, un abominable homme*.

4. Je suppose donc que l'homme en colère ne voit pas seulement dans celui qui l'a irrité un homme *méchant*, mais un *méchant* homme?—Oui, et ainsi l'amour ne voit pas seulement un objet *aimable*, *charmant*, *adorable*, etc., il voit un *aimable* objet, un *charmant* objet, un *adorable* objet.

13. Treizième Leçon: Adjectifs de Comparaison et de Dimensions.

Exemples.

Ce mur est **haut de** sept pieds. Ce mur a sept pieds **de haut** (or **de hauteur**).	*This wall is seven feet* **high.**
Cette cour a vingt mètres **de longueur** (profondeur) sur six **de largeur.**	*This courtyard is twenty metres* **long** (*deep*) *by six.*
Ce royaume a trois cents lieues **de long** et deux cents **de large.**	*This kingdom is three hundred leagues* **long** *and two hundred* **broad.**
Il est **plus grand** que moi **d'un pouce.**	*He is* **an inch taller** *than I am.*
Une garnison **forte de** douze mille hommes.	*A garrison twelve thousand men* **strong.**
Un chapeau **haut de** forme.	*A high-crowned hat.*
Le chameau est **haut de** jambes.	*The camel has long legs.*
Ce bâtiment est **haut de** bord.	*That vessel has high sides.*
Les hommes de cette tribu sont **larges des** épaules.	*The men of this tribe are broad-shouldered.*
L'aigle a le vol très **haut.**	*The eagle flies very high.*
Vous le prenez sur un ton bien **haut.**	*You carry it very high.* *You talk very big.*
Ne parlez pas si **haut** (bas).	*Do not talk so loud* (*low*).
Ces arbres sont **longs à** pousser.	*These trees are of slow growth.*
La prêtresse, pénétrée de joie et de reconnaissance, supplia les dieux d'accorder à ses enfants **ce que** les hommes pouvaient désirer **de mieux.**	*The priestess, overcome with joy and gratitude, entreated the gods to bestow upon her children* **the best that** *men can wish for.*

Thème.

1. What is most surprising, is (39, *d.* 2) that you did not know it before. 2. Even the best cultivated land produces ill weeds. 3. It is in Holland, Belgium, and England that the land is best cultivated. 4. His brother is fully two inches taller than he. 5. You are very slow in coming. 6. These old gipsy women have an ill-natured look. 7. The more enlightened men

are, the more free they will be. 8. Which is the planet most distant from the sun?—Neptune. 9. And which is the nearest? —Mercury. 10. When is the moon in her apogee?—When she is the most distant from the earth. 11. Vanity is dangerous; idleness is more (so).

DIALOGUE SUR LE SYSTÈME MÉTRIQUE.

1. Pourquoi appelle-t-on le nouveau système des poids et mesures, système *métrique?*—Le nouveau système de poids et mesures est appelé métrique, parce que le *mètre* en est la base. La mesure nouvelle dérive d'une mesure linéaire qui sert de type à toutes les autres : on l'appelle mètre.

2. Combien emploie-t-on de mots pour exprimer les diverses unités des poids et mesures?—Sept mots ont suffi pour la disposition de tout le système : en ajoutant à ces sept mots les six noms des nouvelles unités, on aura en tout treize mots nouveaux qu'il faut confier à sa mémoire pour connaître les multiples, les subdivisions et les unités de tout le système métrique.

3. Quels sont-ils?—Sept mots employés pour la méthode. Six mots en expriment les 6 unités :—

				Mètres.
Myria	= 10,000 ; par exemple :—	1 Myriamètre	=	10,000
Kilo	= 1,000 „	1 Kilomètre	=	1,000
Hecto	= 100 „	1 Hectomètre	=	100
Déca	= 10 „	1 Décamètre	=	10
(*Ici se place l'unité* = 1)	„	1 *Mètre*	=	1
Déci	= ·01 „	1 Decimètre	=	$\frac{1}{10}$
Centi	= ·001 „	1 Centimètre	=	$\frac{1}{100}$
Milli	= ·0001 „	1 Millimètre	=	$\frac{1}{1000}$

14. Quatorzième Leçon : Pronoms personnels.— Syntaxe, §§ 26—30.

THÈME.

1. If any one tells you that you can get rich otherwise than by work and economy do not listen to him, he is a corrupter. 2. Do not trust a friend who flatters you; he who flatters you is not really your friend. He is really your friend who does not conceal the truth from you. 3. Nothing prevents us so much from being natural as the desire to look so. 4. A certain witty man used to call his body his animal; he clothed it, he fed it, he took it out for a walk, tended it with care, but he never listened to it. 5. The other day I lent you my French-English dictionary, why have you not yet returned it to me?—I should have returned it to you long ago if you had asked

me for it. 6. Have you not told me that you had (Imparf., § 68, Obs.) a fine photograph of our new Catholic church?—Yes.—Then show it to me. 7. Tell me with whom you associate, and I will tell you who you are. 8. I really must abridge my story; let me finish it in two words.

GALLICISMES DIALOGUÉS.

1. Monsieur, j'ai l'honneur de vous souhaiter le bon jour!—Asseyez-vous, je vous en prie.

2. Comment allez-vous?—J'ai eu des maux de dents atroces, mais je vais très bien aujourd'hui.

3. Je suis charmé de vous voir rétabli. Et monsieur votre oncle se porte toujours bien?—Il crève de santé, le digne homme, quoiqu'il se plaigne toujours.

4. Il faut convenir, tout de même, qu'il ne paye pas de mine! —C'est vrai, à le voir on ne dirait pas qu'il a une santé de crocheteur.

COMPOSITION.

1. *The Peasant and the Snake.*—A peasant found one day a snake quite benumbed and half dead with cold. Touched with compassion, he carried it to his dwelling and stretched it out near the fire to warm it. Hardly did (§ 122, I., *a*) the benumbed animal begin to revive when it only thought of wounding him who had saved its life. "Ungrateful [one]," said the peasant to it, full of (a) rightful anger, "thy wicked disposition and thy desire to hurt vents itself even against those who have done thee good." Saying these words he took his axe and cut the snake to pieces.

2. *Chrysostomos.*—The emperor of Constantinople was very angry with Chrysostomos. One day, [being] incensed with anger, he said in presence of his courtiers, "I should like to avenge myself on this bishop." Four or five of those officious souls, wishing no doubt to curry favour with their sovereign, *offered* (*gave*) their advice. The first said, "Send him into exile, so that you may never see him again." The second, "Confiscate all his property." The third, "Throw him into prison, loaded with fetters." The fourth, "Are you not the master. Put him to death, and get rid of him by his death." A fifth, more cautious than the four preceding [ones], "You are mistaken," said he, "that is not the means of avenging one's self on him, and of punishing him. If you send him into exile, the whole earth is his native country; if you confiscate his property, you take it from the poor and not from him; if you put him into a dungeon, he will kiss his fetters and will esteem himself happy; if you condemn him to death, you open (the)

heaven to him. Sire, do you wish to avenge yourself on him? Compel him to commit a sin; I know him, that man fears in this world only sin. No; he fears neither exile, nor the loss of his property, nor fetters, nor fire, nor torments: he fears nothing but sin."

3. Socrates was told one day that somebody had spoken very ill of him. "What *is* (*does*) that to me?" he said; "let him talk; I even consent that he beat me, when I am not present."

4. *A Friend in Need is a Friend indeed.* — Two travellers, united by the bonds of friendship, were travelling one day by the same road, when a bear came across them. One of them fled instantly and took refuge on a tree; the other laid himself down on the ground and feigned to be dead. The bear went to him, turned him over and over again, and believing him to be dead he continued his way. He who climbed on the tree came down and asked his comrade what the bear had whispered into his ear. "He told me," (*Past Indef.*) the other replied, "not to trust a friend before (85, *c*) having tested him in need."

5. The ass said to Æsop, "If you invent again a fable in which I act a part, make me say something sensible and very witty." "[Make] you [say] something witty?" retorted Æsop, "will it not be said that you have become the moralist and I . . . . the ass?"

6. La Rochejaquelin by way of [a] harangue to his soldiers at the hour of battle, said to them, "If I advance, follow me; if I retreat, kill me; if I die, avenge me."

15. Quinzième Leçon: Pronoms personnels: En.

Syntaxe, §§ 31, 32.

THÈME.

1. The best way to get rid of an enemy is (c'est) to make a friend of him. 2. The weight of a body that is falling accelerates its motion. 3. I add nothing to the story that I am relating, but I do not warrant the truth of it. 4. You have spoken for your country like a worthy man; I esteem you for it. 5. As early as 1465 there were printers in Rome; in 1469 there were (some) in Venice and Milan. 6. We love flowers, we admire their beauty and variety. 7. Columbus asked Isabella and Ferdinand for ships; they only allowed him three small ones. 8. The pleasant life I lead has none the less its serious aspect. 9. He is poor, but he is all the more proud on that account. 10. There are men whom resistance emboldens, there are others whom it discourages. 11. Is he not ashamed of his bad behaviour?—No; on the contrary he boasts of it. 12. What will he do with it?—I know nothing about it.

GALLICISMES DIALOGUES : *en*.

1. Reprenons ce discours où nous *en* étions restés !—Vous *en* parlez bien à votre aise ; moi, je ne m'*en* souviens plus du tout.

2. N'*en* étions-nous pas restés à la troisième partie ?—Franchement, je n'*en* sais rien du tout ; mais si vous *en* êtes sûr, je m'*en* tiens là, je n'*en* veux pas savoir davantage.

3. Quoi qu'il *en* soit, je n'*en* démordrai pas !—Eh, faites *en* à votre guise.

4. De grâce, ne m'*en* veuillez pas ! si nous *en* venons aux gros mots, ce sera à n'*en* plus finir !—Vous avez raison, au point où *en* sont les choses, le plus sage parti est de n'*en* plus parler.

COMPOSITION.

Lightly come, lightly go.—Two thieves having stolen a mule had driven it into a forest. There they consulted about the price which they were to ask for it, and about the share which should fall to the lot of each. But a quarrel arose between them, and they soon came to blows. In the thick of the quarrel a third thief quietly stole near to them, mounted on the mule and made off without being seen. They did not become aware of it until the beast was already too far off to be caught again. A good application of the proverb :—Lightly come, lightly go.

16. Seizième Leçon : Pronoms personnels conjoints ; "en" et "y."—Syntaxe, §§ 31—33.

THÈME.

1. He meddles with politics, and understands nothing about them. 2. In fact, there is neither port nor commerce there ; nor [is there] any man who would willingly land in it. One sees there nothing but unfortunate men whom the storms have cast ashore on it. 3. Prince Henry of Portugal was so anxious to discover the way *to* (*of*) the Indies that he meditated about it day and night, and sacrificed his power and his wealth to it. 4. When the cats are not at home, the mice dance under the table. 5. One has few friends when one is unhappy, but the small number one has (of them) is only the more precious on that account. 6. Animals have senses, they have to learn [how] to make use of them ; they have wants, and they have to learn [how] to satisfy them. 7. In whatever country one may be, one must live in it as if one *were going to* (= *would*) spend his life there. 8. The limits of sciences are like the horizon ; the nearer

one approaches them the farther they recede. 9. This tool is still good; have a handle put (81, *e*, Obs. 2) to it; you will be able to make use of it.

Gallicismes dialogués : *y*.

1. *Y* va-t-il de la vie?—Non, mais il *y* va de l'honneur; prenez-*y* garde.
2. Comme vous *y* allez !—Que voulez-vous, quand je m'*y* mets, je n'*y* vais pas de main morte.
3. Votre associé s'*y* engage; vous *y* engagez-vous aussi?—Non, au contraire, je m'*y* refuse.
4. *Y* comprenez-vous quelque chose?—Non, je n'*y* vois goutte.
5. Me promettez-vous de ne pas *y* toucher?—Je vous le promets.
6. Monsieur le directeur *y* est-il?—Non, il n'*y* est pas.

Composition.

1. Cleopatra had one day laid a wager with Anthony that she would spend a million in one meal. As he denied the possibility (of it), she ordered one of her slaves to bring her a cup of vinegar and *ordered it to be placed* (= *made it place*, 81, *e*, Obs.) before her. Then she took a pearl *worth* (= *of the value of*) a million, *had it dissolved* (= *made it dissolve*) in it, and smilingly swallowed it (103).
2. Languages, like natural sciences, *cannot be learned* (= *do not learn themselves*) from books; grammars and dictionaries can procure a certain knowledge of them, but they do not give the *consciousness* (= *the feeling*) of them; for languages will be felt.
3. The Tiber, says Chateaubriand, runs now in a corner of Rome as if it were not there; people do not look at it; one does not speak of it; one does not drink its water, and the women do not even use it to wash their linen in it.
4. *A Remedy against Health.*—A very clever physician was one day called to a lady. He felt her pulse, made her show him her tongue, and found no sign of illness. He questioned her; she confessed that she ate, drank, slept well, and that she had all the symptoms of a perfect health. "Well, madam," said the doctor, "leave that to me, I will give you a remedy that will rid you of all that."

17. Dix-septième Leçon: Pronoms personnels disjoints.—Syntaxe, §§ 34—36.

Thème.

1. What is good for you would perhaps not be good for me. 2. Do not forget me, think sometimes of me.—I forget you! I shall remember you for ever. 3. As for me, if I had been at his house, I should not have stayed there. 4. Have you your knife about you?—No, I left it at home. 5. Do you trust them?—Not much, but I trust her. 6. They hastened to us. 7. A friend is a *second* (= other) self. 8. You must renounce her!—I renounce her! I appeal to you whether I alone am to blame for this misunderstanding. 9. Try to ingratiate yourself with him. 10. Are these beautiful pictures yours?—Yes; and these photographs are mine also. 11. When one has need of men, one must adapt oneself to them.

Gallicismes dialogués.

1. Qui est donc cette personne dont il fait tant de bruit?—C'est moi qui vous le demande!

2. Il ne parle que d'elle, il ne pense qu'à elle, il ne respire que pour elle!—Moi, j'avoue que je ne comprends pas comment il a pu s'amouracher de cette sotte.

3. Vous savez bien qu'il ne faut pas disputer des goûts! chacun à son dada.—Vous avez raison: à chaque fou plaît sa marotte.

Composition.

The Lion, the Ass, and the Fox.—A lion, an ass, and a fox entered into partnership, and went hunting. When they had killed (71) a great quantity of game, the lion ordered the ass to apportion it. The latter (42, Obs.) made three equal parts, and asked the lion to choose. The lion, who wanted to receive a larger share than the two others, flew into a passion and killed the ass. He then (103) ordered the fox to make a new division. The latter gave the lion almost everything, and kept but very little for himself. "Who has taught thee to divide thus?" the lion asked him. "The accident which happened to the ass," replied the fox.

Other people's misfortunes ought to make us wise.

18. Dix-huitième Leçon: Pronoms et Adjectifs possessifs.—Syntaxe, §§ 37, 38.

Thème.

1. The rose has its beauty, its freshness, and its fragrance; but it has also its thorns. 2. A general must always be cool-headed and warm-hearted. 3. Have you heard from him?—Yes; but his letters to me are not edifying in the least. 4. Why have you changed your mind about that project of yours?—Because its success is very doubtful. 5. Our feet are cold; let us draw near the fire. 6. Why fear death if one has lived so as not to dread its consequences? 7. "What is the strength of the army of your king?" a general asked a captured soldier.—"That of steel and iron." 8. Henry the Fourth said one day to his soldiers: "I am your king; you are Frenchmen; there is our enemy." 9. Cheerfulness is the health of the soul; sadness is its poison. 10. Tired of awaiting our enemy behind our retrenchments, we went to meet him. 11. An acquaintance of ours is just now in Switzerland; if you see him, remember us to him, and remind him that he has promised to let us hear from him. 12. Everything in the situation that we covet seems beautiful to us; we see its flowers, but we do not feel its thorns.

Gallicismes dialogués.

1. Pourquoi n'êtes-vous pas allé à leur rencontre?—Parce que j'ai mal à la tête.

2. Est-ce votre migraine qui vous reprend?—Oui, et pour comble de malheur, les yeux me cuisent.

3. Je vous plains; mais je vous conseille de ne pas trop vous écouter.—Grand merci; je vous suis on ne saurait plus reconnaissant de vos touchantes consolations.

4. Ainsi vous ne serez pas des nôtres ce soir?—Mais si, votre excellent conseil m'a fait changer d'avis; comptez sur moi.—A la bonne heure!

Composition.

1. *The Wolf and the Crane.*—A wolf swallowed a bone, which stuck fast in his throat. Suffering great pain, he begged a crane to extract this bone from his throat, and promised him a reward. The latter, thanks to his long neck, successfully performed the operation. But when he asked him for the promised reward: "Thou art an ungrateful [one], my dear gossip," he said to him; "what! thou hast withdrawn thy neck safe and sound from my jaws, and thou darest to claim a reward!"

2. *Leonidas at Thermopylæ.*—King Xerxes, astonished at the equanimity of the Lacedæmonians, waited a few days to allow them time for reflection. On the fifth he wrote to Leonidas: "If thou wilt submit, I shall give thee the rule over Greece." Leonidas replied: "I would rather die for my country than enslave it." A second letter of the king only contained these words: "Deliver me thy arms." Leonidas wrote underneath: "Come [and] fetch them."

19. Dix-neuvième Leçon: Pronoms démonstratifs.—Syntaxe, §§ 39–42.

Thème.

1. The most slavish of all men is he who is a slave to his passions. 2. Those who have always something to do ought to shun those who have always something to say. 3. There is none *so deaf as* (= *more deaf than*) he who will not hear. 4. The last moments of Marcus Aurelius were those of a great and wise man. 5. The great secret to be happy is to be content with what (46) one has. 6. Say what is true, do what is right. 7. Those are mistaken who expect wealth without work, or honours without trouble. 8. What one rightly admires in the fables of Lafontaine is the delicate poetical charm with which he has contrived to invest them. 9. As for me, I peruse and re-peruse Lafontaine; he is my favourite author; he is admirable. 10. They spoke of this and of that, it is true; but what we wanted to know is just what they did not tell us.

Gallicismes dialogués (Suite du Dialogue de la Dixième Leçon).

1. A propos de citations, qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un *poncif?*—L'homme qui, toujours fouillant dans sa mémoire, cite toujours, cite quand même, cite à jet continu, cet homme s'appelle un *poncif.*

2. Serait-ce parce que le travail de son intelligence ressemble si singulièrement à celui du dessinateur qui crible de piqûres le dessin qu'il veut contre-tirer et sur lequel il passe ensuite la *ponce?*—C'est cela même; le citateur, par un procédé pareil, contre-tire et décalque l'esprit des autres à travers les trous du sien.

3. Eh bien, malgré tout ce qu'on en dit, ne croyez-vous pas les citations chose utile, chose ingénieuse, chose excellente lorsqu'on n'en abuse pas, et qu'on les fait à propos?—Pourvu qu'on ne cite pas pour ostentation de savoir, comme il arrive parfois!

4. N'est-ce pas souvent le fait d'un esprit qui doute de soi, qui, se défiant de sa propre autorité, s'abrite derrière des esprits consacrés, et s'efface pour leur laisser la parole?—Oui, il arrive souvent qu'on a trouvé la pensée, mais, trop timide, on craint de s'aventurer ; l'expression nous fait défaut, la formule nous manque ; invoquée à propos, notre mémoire nous la prête, et voilà que l'idée jaillit avec la citation ! Sur ce chapitre consultez l'excellent ouvrage d'Ed. Fournier :—*L'Esprit des Autres.*

Composition.

1. A Roman citizen, on getting up, saw with surprise that the rats had gnawed his shoes. He hastened to call on Cato, and asked him with anxiety what that might (*Impf.*) forebode. "My friend," Cato said to him, laughing, "it is not a miracle that the rats should have (76, *d*) gnawed your shoes, but it would be one if your shoes had gnawed the rats."

2. Some one said one day to a Greek philosopher, "It is a great happiness to possess what (46) one desires." "It is a still greater one" (32, *d*, 1), he replied, "to be content with what one possesses."

20. Vingtième Leçon: Pronoms relatifs.

Syntaxe, §§ 43—47.

Thème.

1. He has a few friends on whose experience he places the greatest reliance. 2. The country will for ever deplore the premature death of that prince whose energy no one ever doubted. 3. You can see from here the church on the spire of which the lightning struck. 4. It is related by Roman historians that Regulus had to fight an enormous serpent, against which it was necessary to employ nearly the whole Roman army. 5. That is a calamity the end of which nobody can foresee. 6. What is useless is always too expensive. 7. The Japanese bear with an admirable constancy all the inconveniences of life, which they do not value much. 8. Men of high character ennoble their misfortune by the fortitude with which they bear it. 9. O you who do not suffer now, have pity on those who do suffer. 10. I do what pleases me. 11. The sun round which the earth turns, and whose rays light up this planet, is a fixed star which revolves round its axis. 12. Yesterday was a day over the events of which it would be better to throw a veil. 13. That to which I exhort you most strongly is to obey your superiors. 14. The tiger, whose cruelty has become proverbial, is the only one of all animals the ferocious nature of which one cannot subdue. 15. I have known (64, *b*) for a long time whom

you honour with your confidence; I also know very well to whom I am indebted for the bad turn they have served me; but what I cannot understand is your blindness and, what is worse, the levity with which you give your confidence to a man who is despised by everybody.

Gallicismes dialogués.

1. Où en étions-nous restés à la troisième leçon?—Nous parlions des rigueurs exercées par l'Académie française contre certaines expressions, auxquelles elle refuse le droit de cité.

2. Comment est-ce qu'elle justifie ses sévérités?—Elle prétend, et pour cause, que trop souvent on ne forge un mot nouveau que pour ne pas se donner la peine de chercher le mot ancien qui valait mieux.

3. Est-il probable que l'expression "un tableau réussi" trouve jamais grâce devant une Académie française?—Non, la faute de français blesse trop la grammaire et l'oreille: *réussir* n'a jamais été qu'un verbe neutre.

4. Mais, l'Académie aurait-elle la prétention de traiter la langue en sujette?—Au contraire, elle dit formellement que si son dictionnaire se fait obéir c'est en obéissant tout le premier, quoique avec mesure et discrétion.

Composition.

The Hôtel des Invalides.—What a sight to see assembled in the same place all these victims of their native country, who only breathe to defend it, and who, feeling (*reflex*) the same heart, but not the same strength, only complain of their (38, *d*) inability again to devote themselves for her.

What [could be] more admirable than to see these disabled soldiers, in this retreat, observing (Infinit. 81, *d*) a discipline as strict as if they were constrained to it by the presence of an enemy, seeking their last satisfaction in this image of war, and dividing their heart and mind between the duties of religion and those of military art. I would that the names of those who die for their country were (Subj. 76, *a*) preserved in the temples, and written in annals which would be, as it were, the source of glory and of nobility.

21. Vingt-et-unième Leçon: Pronoms interrogatifs.—Syntaxe, §§ 48—51.

Thème.

1. What do you think of my pupils?—I hardly know yet what I am to think of them. 2. Of what man are you

speaking?—Of that one there with the red nose. 3. What is the matter?—I cannot tell you what it is about. 4. Which of these Latin grammars would you recommend me to use?—I do not know which is the best. 5. What is he looking for?—I think it is his dictionary he is looking for.—Which?—His English Greek dictionary. 6. Which way did you come (70)?—This way. 7. What [could be] more unfortunate than his situation? 8. What is that good for? I ask you (it). 9. What will become of them? 10. What must men do to become happy? 11. What can inspire us [with] confidence in the future?—What, unless it be a good education, which may enable us to help ourselves! 12. What does that mean?—I am sure I do not know what it means. 13. Whose daughter was Queen Elizabeth? 14. With which of my pupils are you best satisfied?

Gallicismes dialogués : *quoi*.

1. De quoi s'agit-il?—Il s'agit de savoir à quoi nous en tenir

2. En quoi vous puis-je être de service?—Donnez-moi, s'il vous plaît, un coup d'épaule.

3. Que répondit le bûcheron à la Mort qui était accourue à son appel!—Aide-moi à recharger ce bois.

4. Qu'est-ce la sentinelle a crié?—Qui vive?

5. Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?—Ce n'est rien ; de quoi vous mettez-vous en peine?

6. Votre voisin a-t-il de quoi?—Oui, il a mis du foin dans ses bottes.

Composition.

On the Utility of History (continued from page 115).—What is this small number of years which make up the longest life? What is the extent of country that we can occupy or overrun on earth *but* (= *sinon*) an imperceptible point *as compared with* (= *à l'égard de*) those vast regions of the world and with that long series of centuries which had succeeded (97, *b*) each other from the origin of the world? However, it is to this imperceptible point that our knowledge (pl.) is limited, unless we call to our aid the study of history, which opens to us all countries and all ages ; which puts us in communication with *all* (= *all that which there has been of*) great men in antiquity ; which places *before* (= *under*) our eyes all their actions, all their undertakings, all their virtues, all their faults ; and which by the wise reflections which it suggests procures us in a short time a precocious prudence far superior to the lessons of the cleverest masters.

22. Vingt-deuxième Leçon : Pronoms indéfinis.

Syntaxe, §§ 52—58.

Thème.

1. People are always eager to oblige those from whom they expect favours. 2. The haughty [man] despises public approbation ; the vain [man] is its slave ; the wise [man] is happy if he obtains it ; comforted if it is denied him. 3. *As men have* (= *men, having*) each their faults, they ought to be more indulgent for one another.—And yet I am told that so many hate each other instead of helping each other. 4. They were just sitting down to dinner when there was a ring. 5. Did you not tell me that you knew somebody who could (impf. subj. 77) help me in this undertaking ; some have advised me to apply to Mr. B.—Why, I doubt if anybody is (76, *c*) less qualified to help you in this matter than he. 6. Is there anything more sublime than virtue struggling with adversity ? 7 Is there any one among mortals who can (77) flatter himself *he is* (= *to be*) always happy ? 8. Give every one what is due to him. 9. Among the news we read in the evening papers there are some very doubtful (ones). 10. He has just gone out without asking anybody's leave. 11. Had he not forbidden you to touch anything here ?—I deny that anybody ever forbade me anything whatsoever. 12. It is said that both are guilty. 13. He is wanted. 14. Look at those unlucky anglers seated on the banks of the Ouse ; they have been fishing the whole day without taking anything !

Gallicismes dialogués.

1. Votre ami a-t-il jamais lu *L'Esprit des Lois*, par Montesquieu ?—Lui, y pensez-vous ? Il n'a pas le moindre soupçon de littérature.

2. Et vous, avez-vous jamais étudié cet auteur ?—J'ai lu et relu ses *Lettres persanes*.

3. Y a-t-il rien dans la littérature anglaise qu'on puisse y comparer ?—Mais oui, il me semble, à moi, que le *Citizen of the World*, où un Chinois consigne ses impressions sur les mœurs et les contumes des Anglais, a beaucoup d'analogie avec les *Lettres persanes*.

Composition.

The Judgment of the Dead in Egypt.—There was a lake which it was necessary to cross in order to reach the burial-place ; on the banks of that lake the dead [man] was stopped. "Whoever thou be, give an account of thy actions to thy

country. What hast thou done with time and life? The law examines thee; the country listens to thee; truth will judge thee!" Then he appeared without title and without power, left to himself, and attended only by his virtues and his vices. There *were disclosed* (= *disclosed themselves*) the secret crimes and those which the influence and power of the dead had stifled in his lifetime. There he whose innocence had been tarnished came in his turn to brand the slanderer and to claim the honour of which he had been deprived. The citizen convicted of not having observed the laws was condemned; the penalty was infamy. But the virtuous citizen was rewarded with public eulogy. The honour of pronouncing it (82, *c*) was reserved to the relatives. The family were assembled. The children came to receive lessons of virtue in hearing their father praised (81, *e*). The people congregated there in crowds. The magistrate presided (in it). Then they extol the just man *within* (= *at*) the sight of his ashes (sing.). The place (pl.), the moment, the days were recalled in which (47) he had done virtuous deeds. He was thanked for having served his country and mankind. His example was proposed to those who had yet to live and to die.

23. Vingt-troisième Leçon: Accord du Verbe avec son Sujet.—Syntaxe, §§ 59—61.

Thème.

1. Neither time nor misfortune ought to efface from our heart the recollection of a friend. 2. Hardly had Cæsar entered the senate when a great number of conspirators surrounded him. 3. Neither your brother nor your friend wishes me well. 4. The vivacity or the languor of the eyes constitutes one characteristic feature of physiognomy. 5. A swarm of barbarians devastated the country. 6. It is not I who said that. 7. Books, said Alphonso, are amongst my counsellors those that please me most: neither fear nor hope prevents them from telling me what I am to do. 8. You and I are happy to be together. 9. My partner and I have come to terms. 10. Who are you?—We are two monks of St. Bernard *travelling* (= *who travel*) for our concerns. 11. It is you who first broke our fetters. 12. The army of the enemy was all but destroyed; artillery, standards, baggage (pl.), provisions, everything was taken by our men. 13. All our friends perished before our eyes; the captain and I alone swam ashore.

Gallicismes dialogués.

1. Où allez-vous comme ça?—Je vais aux emplettes.
2. Y aurait-il de l'indiscrétion à vous demander chez qui vous vous fournissez?—C'est Monsieur Duboc qui est mon fournisseur; voici son adresse.
3. Vend-il à prix fixe?—Oui; il ne fait jamais de rabais; ainsi il est inutile de marchander dans son établissement.
4. Et est-il ponctuel à exécuter vos commandes?—Il est la ponctualité même.
5. Savez-vous s'il vend ses marchandises à crédit?—Il ne fait crédit que de la main à la bourse.
6. De la main à la bourse? Je ne vous comprends pas.—Cela veut dire qu'il ne vend qu'argent comptant.

Composition.

1. Every time when La Rochefoucauld, the author of the *Maximes*, had composed a few sentences, he brought them on the carpet (66, I.); they were discussed (52); they were examined; observations were made by which he profited. As concerns the substance, one may be of the opinion of Rousseau, who calls them a sad book, since they suggest self-love as the motive of most human actions, except those which have a still baser source; but everybody is agreed in assigning to their author a very high rank as a writer. The rival of La Rochefoucauld, with whom he has more than one point of resemblance, is Cardinal de Retz. Both have written highly esteemed *Mémoires;* those of de Retz, who is the historian of the Fronde, offer a more general interest; those of La Rochefoucauld are written with more care and correctness. La Rochefoucauld and de Retz are two writers of talent, but neither equals their illustrious contemporary Pascal, *who* (= *who, he,* disj. pr.) is a man of genius, and who, in his *Lettres provinciales* and in his *Pensées,* has by turns the pathos of Corneille, the sharp and profound wit of Molière, and the sublimity of Bossuet.

2. *Episode of the Civil War in the Vendée.*—Everybody was overcome with fatigue. The day's work had been arduous. The wounded and sick, whose numbers kept on increasing every day, asked entreatingly that a longer stay should be allowed in a large town in which neither provisions nor resources were wanting. Besides, they wanted to try to *reorganise* (= *to put a little order in*) the army, to concert some plan, and to raise the spirits a little. Generals, officers, soldiers, everybody was downcast. One *could* clearly *see* (= *saw*) that *sooner* or *later* (= *one day or the other*) we were going to be exterminated,

and that the efforts that one could make were the convulsions of agony. Every one saw *suffering* (= *suffer*) around him. The sight of the women, children, [and] wounded, disheartened the strongest minds, at a time when a miraculous fortitude would have been necessary. Misfortune had embittered the minds, and divided all the chiefs. The reverse *suffered at* (= *of*) Angers, the loss of the hope which one had conceived of returning into the Vendée, had dealt the finishing blow to the opinion of the army. Every one wished for death; but as one faced it with certainty, one preferred to await it with resignation rather than to fight to defer it. Everything foreboded that it was all over with us.

24. Vingt-quatrième Leçon: Le Présent de l'Indicatif.—Syntaxe, §§ 62—64.

Thème.

1. How long have you been here?—I have been here half a year. 2. We have long been desirous to call on you. 3. Are you going for a walk?—No, we are going to school. 4. From what I gather, he is to come to-day fortnight. 5. It is now a year and a half since I saw him last. 6. I have met this morning the man whom I have been inquiring for so long. 7. As soon as they come, tell them to wait for me. 8. I *shall be* (= *am*) back in a minute. 9. There he comes. 10. There now, if he isn't come back again!

Gallicismes dialogués.

1. N'est-ce pas que le mot *coup* entre dans la composition d'une foule d'expressions particulières à la langue française?—Mais oui, on n'en finirait pas à énumérer toutes les façons de parler où figure ce mot.

2. Ne s'allie-t-il pas avec les noms de presque toutes les parties du corps?—En effet, rien de plus pittoresque que ces expressions, comme par exemple—*coup de tête, coup de bec, coup de dent, coup de langue, coup d'épaule, coup de poing, coup de pied, etc.*

3. Y a-t-il encore d'autres combinaisons où il entre?—Vous n'êtes pas sans avoir entendu parler de *coups de bâton, coup de ciseaux, coup de brosse, coup de balai; coup de canon, coup d'épée; coup de grâce.*

4. Comment exprime-t-on en anglais la locution proverbiale "faire d'une pierre deux coups"?—Les Anglais disent "tuer deux oiseaux avec une pierre."

COMPOSITION.

(*N.B.—For the sake of vividness the narrative is to be put in the Present.*)

The Passage of the Niemen by the French Army.—At nightfall Napoleon approached the Niemen ; a few sappers cross the stream in a small boat, the Emperor watched them *as they disappeared in the dusk* (= *in the shadow into which they plunge*) ; they land on the Russian shore ; the hostile army which was there the day before seemed to have vanished. After a short moment of silence and of solitude, an officer of the Cossacks appeared ; he was alone, and seemed to be astonished to find soldiers on the bank of the river. "Who are you?" he asked. "Frenchmen," replied the sappers. "What do you want?" "[To] cross the Niemen." "What *is your business* (= *are you coming to do*) in Russia?" "War, of course!" At this declaration the Cossack, without replying, rode away towards Vilna, and disappeared like a vision of the night. Three shots were fired at him without hitting him ; at *the* (= *this*) report Napoleon was startled—the Russian campaign was opened.

25. Vingt-cinquième Leçon : Imparfait.—Syntaxe, §§ 65–69.

COMPOSITION.

N.B.—As the proper use of these tenses can only be illustrated by reference to the context, no detached *sentences are given here.*

1. *The Ancient Egyptians.* — The ancient Egyptians worshipped stars and animals. They had several castes. The caste of the priests was the most powerful of all ; but that of the warriors supplied the kings. The Egyptians built pyramids and raised obelisks. They embalmed their dead. They established tribunals in order to judge the actions of the dead. The laws of the ancient Egyptians forbade to strangers *an* (= *the*) entrance *into* (= *of*) the country. The priests possessed alone the knowledge of hieroglyphs. These are (= *one called thus*) the signs which the Egyptians used in lieu of letters and which represented the words of their language. Every year the Nile watered Egypt by its inundations. The fertile plain of the Nile supplied many rich products.

2. Every time *when* (= *that*) Cato gave his opinion in the Senate, he finished with these words : "Carthago delenda est

(Carthage must be destroyed)." In a sitting in which they were deliberating on the war with that power, Cato showed a fig to his colleagues. "Since when," said he, "do you think (that) this fig has (76, *b*) been gathered? To judge from its freshness, (it is) a little while ago. Well, this fig was hanging on the tree only three days ago, and it comes from Carthage! Judge how near to us the enemy is." War was instantly decided.

3. *The Judgment of the Dead in Egypt.*—The sovereigns themselves were subjected to this judgment, like the rest of men, and they were praised only when they had deserved it. It is just that the tomb should be a barrier between flattery and the sovereign, and that truth should begin where power ceases. We know from (by) history that several of the kings of Egypt who had oppressed their people in order to raise those immense pyramids, were branded by the law and deprived of the tombs which they had constructed for themselves. When one of those princes had died and when the people had assembled, there appeared then different accusers to give evidence against his memory. One would come in mourning and say, "He has caused the death of my wife and children; I bring here the last complaints which they uttered *when* (= *in*) dying: 'O judges, avenge us.'" Another, "He has deprived me of my liberty, though I was innocent; these are my chains; they bear witness against him; and I come to shake them over his tomb." Unfortunates in rags would say, "We have been snatched from our homes to build these pyramids and palaces; on each of these stones that you see some of our tears have been shed." And often thousands of men, women and children, stretching out their arms together, exclaimed, "He has caused the death of our fathers, brothers, husbands, who all have perished in an unjust war; O judges, when you pronounce judgment on him, think of their blood!"

4. At a small distance from the house, my predecessor had made a seat, overshadowed by a hedge of hawthorn and honeysuckle. Here, when the weather was fine and our labour soon finished, we usually sat together to enjoy an extensive landscape in the calm of the evening. Here, too, we drank tea, which now *was* become an occasional banquet; and as we had it but seldom, it diffused a new joy, the preparations for it being made with no small share of bustle and ceremony. On these occasions, our two little ones always read for us, and they were regularly served after we had done. Sometimes, to give a variety to our amusements, the girls sang to the guitar; and while they thus formed a little concert, my wife and I would stroll down the sloping field that was embellished with blue-bells and centaury, talk of our children with rapture, and enjoy the breeze that wafted both health and harmony.

26. Vingt-Sixième Leçon: Imparfait et Défini.—Syntaxe, §§ 65–69.

Composition.

1. The history of the successors of Theodosius bears no small analogy to that of the successors of Aurungzebe. But perhaps the fall of the Carlovingians furnishes the nearest parallel to the fall of the Moguls. Charlemagne was scarcely interred when the imbecility and the disputes of his descendants began to bring contempt on themselves and destruction on their subjects. The wide dominion of the Franks was severed into a thousand pieces. Nothing more than a nominal dignity was left to the abject heirs of an illustrious name, Charles the Bald, Charles the Fat, and Charles the Simple. Fierce invaders, differing from each other in race, language and religion, flocked, as if by concert, from the farthest corners of the earth, to plunder provinces which the government could no longer defend. The pirates of the Northern Sea extended their ravages from the Elbe to the Pyrenees, and at length fixed their seat in the rich valley of the Seine. The Hungarian, in whom the trembling monks fancied that they recognised the Gog or Magog of prophecy, carried back the plunder of the cities of Lombardy to the depths of the Pannonian forests. The Saracen ruled in Sicily, desolated the fertile plains of Campania, and spread terror even to the walls of Rome.

2. It was under the reign of Aurungzebe that this wild class of plunderers first descended from their mountains; and soon after his death, every corner of his wide empire learned to tremble at the mighty name of Mahrattas. Many fertile vice-royalties were entirely subdued by them. Their dominions stretched across the peninsula from sea to sea. Mahratta captains reigned at Poonah, at Gualior, in Guzerat, in Berar and in Tanjore. Nor did they, though they had become great sovereigns, therefore cease to be freebooters. They still retained the predatory habits of their forefathers. Every region which was not subject to their rule was wasted by their incursions. Wherever their kettledrums were heard, the peasant threw his bag of rice on his shoulder, hid his small savings in his girdle, and fled with his wife and children to the mountains or the jungles, to the wilder neighbourhood of the hyena and the tiger. Many provinces redeemed their harvests by the payment of an annual ransom. Even the wretched phantom who still bore the imperial title stooped to pay this ignominious black-mail. The camp-fires of one rapacious leader were seen from the walls of the palace of Delhi. Another, at the head of his innumerable cavalry, descended year after year on the rice-

fields of Bengal. Even the European factors trembled for their magazines. Less than a hundred years ago it was thought necessary to fortify Calcutta against the horsemen of Berar; and the name of the Mahratta ditch still preserves the memory of the danger.—MACAULAY.

27. Vingt-Septième Leçon : l'Indéfini.—Syntaxe, § 70.

COMPOSITION.

1. *Louis XI. and his historian Philip de Commines.*

Louis XI. I am told that you have written my history.

Philip. It is true, sir, and I have spoken as a good servant.

Louis. But they assure me that you have related many things which I could very well have dispensed with.

Philip. That may be. But on the whole I have made of you a very flattering portrait . . . . . .

Louis XI. I am told that you have described all my grimaces, all my contortions when I used to speak alone. I am told that you have mentioned the influence of my provost, my doctor, my barber, and my tailor : you have exposed to the public gaze my old clothes.

2. *Letter from a Bivouac.*—I was, in consequence of a false alarm, sent three leagues from here into the mountains to protect a friendly tribe threatened *with* (= *of*) *an* inroad. I spent there thirty-six hours with my company. I slept under the Arab tent of camel's hair and lived the life of the Arabs, smoked, drank coffee, ate couscousse and Barbary figs. I brought back many skins and an awful heart-sickness which renews itself every time *when* (= *that*) I think of my excursion. The chief of that tribe came on the following Thursday, a market day, to pay me a visit, and asked me for breakfast. I amply returned his hospitality. He went over the whole camp and examined everything. I am on intimate terms with my friend Ali-Hussein, who, after having (81, *e*, N.B.) confessed to me that since 1830 he had cut off many French heads, swore to me by Allah that he would not cut off any more (32, *d*), and that if the holy war compelled him to fight us again, he would spare them, especially mine. I laughed, took him by the arm and led him into my tent where I had excellent pistols, and [then] I conducted him within thirty steps of a cactus ; I pointed out to him a leaf about as large as this paper, and a bullet pierced it. Poor Ali was struck dumb. He fired ten shots without coming near the mark, and consoled himself *by* (= *in*) saying to me, "Yes, but all Frenchmen *cannot* (*do not*) *do* that ; as for thee (34, *a*, 4), thou art a great chief."

28. Vingt-huitième Leçon: Plusqueparfait et Passé Antérieur.—Syntaxe, § 71.

Thème.

1. Charles the Twelfth *felt an* (= *had some*) aversion for Latin, but as soon as they had told him that the king of Denmark and the king of Poland knew it he learned it very quickly. 2. When the Persians had conquered Egypt they only thought of weakening their new subjects. 3. As soon as Constantine had taken the reins of the government, he put a stop to the persecutions of the Christians which had lasted during all the reign of his predecessor. 4. Hardly had Telemachus pronounced these words when all the people in an uproar clamoured that it was necessary to put to death the son of that cruel Ulysses whose artifices had ruined the city of Troy. 5. When Nero had poisoned his brother he was told that he had saved Rome; when he had caused his wife to be murdered (81 *c*, Obs. 2), the people hastened to the temples to thank the gods.

Gallicismes Dialogués. (Suites de la 24e Leçon.)

1. Vous dites que 'donner un coup de pied' signifie '*to kick*'; comment donc faut-il entendre '*donner un coup de pied jusqu'à tel endroit*'?—Cela signifie tout simplement *aller* jusqu'à un certain endroit peu éloigné.

2. Et que veut dire '*un coup d'épée dans l'eau*'?—Cela se dit d'une tentative qui n'a point d'effet.

3. D'où est dérivée l'expression '*le coup de pied de l'âne*'?—N'avez-vous jamais lu la fable du *lion devenu vieux?*

4. Je crois bien me souvenir de l'avoir lue quelque part; serait-ce dans Lafontaine?—Vous y êtes:—

"Le cheval en s'approchant lui donne *un coup de pied;*
Le loup, *un coup de dent;* le bœuf, *un coup de corne;*
Quand voyant l'âne même à son antre accourir:
Oh! c'est trop, dit le lion, je voulais bien mourir;
Mais c'est mourir deux fois que souffrir tes atteintes!"

Composition.

1. A stag having escaped the hunters, went to hide himself under a vine. When the hunters had passed, the stag believed *he was* (= *himself*) already forgotten, and began to browse the leaves of his benefactor. At the noise of the leaves the hunters retraced their steps, saw the stag, and killed him.

2. *The Course of Things.*—"I passed one day," says Khidhz in the Arab allegory, "by a very ancient and wonderfully populous city, and asked one of its inhabitants how long it had been founded. 'It is indeed a mighty city,' replied he, 'we know not how long it has existed, and our ancestors were on this subject as ignorant as ourselves.' Five centuries afterwards, *as I passed* (= *passing*) by the same place, I could not perceive the slightest vestige of the city. I demanded of a peasant who was gathering herbs upon *its former site* (= *the site it occupied formerly*) how long it had been destroyed. 'In sooth, a strange question!' replied he. 'The ground *here* (= *of this country*) has *never been different from* (= *has always been*) what you now behold it.'—'Was there not of old,' said I, 'a splendid city here?'—'Never,' answered he, '*so far as* (= *que* with the Subjunct.) we have seen, and never did our fathers speak to us of any such.' On my return there, five hundred years afterwards, I found the sea in the same place, and on its shores were a party of fishermen, of whom I inquired how long the land had been covered by the waters? '*Is this a question,*' said they, '*for a man like you* (= *how can a man like you make such a question*)*?* This spot has always been what it is now.' I again returned five hundred years afterwards, [and] the sea had disappeared; I inquired of a man who stood alone upon the spot, how long ago this change had taken place, and he gave me the same answer as I had received before. Lastly, [on] coming back again after *an equal* (= *the same*) lapse of time, I found there a flourishing city, more populous and more rich in beautiful buildings than the city I had seen (*there*) the first time; and when I would fain have informed myself *concerning* (= *of*) its origin, the inhabitants answered me:—'Its rise is lost in remote antiquity; we are ignorant how long it has existed, and our fathers were on this subject as ignorant as ourselves.'"

29. Vingt-neuvième Leçon: Future et Conditionnel.—Syntaxe, §§ 72—74.

THÈME.

1. Do what you like!—Yes, I will do what I like. 2. They must have been detained. 3. Gentlemen, you must know that I am the only son of a rich citizen of Madrid. 4. I flattered myself he would come, but now I think he will not come. 5. I should not have succeeded in completing my work, even if I had worked the whole day. 6. Though a miser had all the gold of Peru he would still want more. 7. According to certain modern critics, Numa Pompilius never existed (73, *b*, Obs. 1); and he

is supposed to be nothing but the personification of the epoch of religious and civil legislation of the Romans. 8. Formerly history used to be written for the use of the prince royal (*in usum delphini*); now it is for the use of the people that it ought to be written, and the sons of kings will *in* (= *at*) their turn derive instruction *from* (= *in*) books made for the people. 9. Some one asked Diogenes at what time he ought to dine. The latter replied to him: "If you are rich, when you like; if you are poor, when you can."

Causeries Scientifiques.

1. Qu'est-ce que le soleil?—Le soleil n'est en réalité que l'une des nombreuses étoiles qui peuplent les espaces célestes.

2. Alors comment nous apparaîtrait-il s'il se trouvait transporté à la distance des étoiles les plus voisines de nous?—C'est à peine si nous pourrions l'apercevoir, à l'œil nu, comme une étoile de cinquième ou de sixième grandeur.

3. Quelle est la constitution intime du soleil?—Le soleil est très probablement une masse gazeuse contenant à l'état de vapeurs incandescentes la plupart des substances qui font partie de notre globe.

4. Quel est le rôle du soleil dans l'univers?—Son activité extérieure se manifeste de deux manières:—Par la *gravitation* ou *l'attraction* qu'il exerce, il est le premier moteur d'où dépendent tous les mouvements du système planétaire. Par ses *radiations* il produit tous les phénomènes physiques ou physiologiques qui s'accomplissent à la surface des planètes ou dans leur intérieur.—*D'après le* Dr. Brewer.

Composition.

The Arabian Camel.—The desert would become uninhabitable, and it would be necessary to leave it if nature had not attached to it an animal of a temper as hardy and as frugal, as the soil is ungrateful and barren—if she had not placed the camel there. No animal offers so striking an analogy with its climate; one would say that a premeditated intention has taken pleasure in adapting the qualities of the one to those of the other, wishing that the camel should inhabit (76, *a*) a country in which it would find but scanty food, nature has economized the substance in the whole framework of it.

30. Trentième Leçon : Emploi du Subjonctif.— Syntaxe, §§ 76, 1. (*a*)

Thème.

1. What do you wish me to do?—I want you to renounce that bad habit of yours. 2. What did you want me to do?—I wanted you to renounce that bad habit of yours. 3. It were to be wished that these truths were spread in all countries. 4. I wish you had not persuaded us to come here. 5. We do not always like to be told the truth. 6. How is it that you never come to see me? 7. I have sent him word to come himself. 8. Do you want me to teach you the principles of logic?—No, I want you to teach me the elements of geometry. 9. This vain girl likes *to be told* (= *that one tells her*) that she is pretty. 10. Why did nature give to man a straight and lofty head?—Because she wanted him to look up to the skies and to turn his face towards the stars. 11. Christopher Columbus wished to be buried in the chains which he had borne. 12. I have ordered that this be done this very evening as you wish it.

Dialogue entre Confucius et Socrate.

Confucius. J'apprends que vos Européens vont souvent chez nos Orientaux et qu'ils me nomment le Socrate de la Chine. Je me tiens honoré de ce nom.

Socrate. Laissons les compliments, dans un pays où ils ne sont plus de saison.* Sur quoi fonde t-on cette ressemblance entre nous?

Confucius. Sur ce que nous avons vécu à peu près dans les mêmes temps, et que nous avons été tous deux pauvres, modérés, plein de zèle pour rendre les hommes vertueux.

Socrate. Pour moi, je n'ai point formé, comme vous, des hommes excellents pour aller dans toutes les provinces semer la vertu, combattre le vice et instruire les hommes.

Confucius. J'ai été plus heureux parmi les Chinois ; je les ai laissés avec des lois sages, et assez bien policées.

Socrate. De la manière que j'entends parler sur les relations de nos Européens il faut en effet que la Chine ait eu de bonnes lois et une exacte police. Il y a grande apparence que les Chinois ont été meilleurs qu'ils ne sont. Je ne veux pas désavouer qu'un peuple, quand il a une bonne et constante

---

* Ce dialogue, extrait des *Dialogues des Morts*, est censé avoir lieu au royaume des ombres.

forme de gouvernment ne puisse devenir fort supérieur aux autres peuples bien moins policés.

(*La Suite à la prochaine Leçon.*)

COMPOSITION.

1. The French writer Diderot wrote to a minister : " I hope the king will not disapprove of my going to spend some time in Russia."—" Not at all," the minister replied to him, " his majesty even allows you to stay there."

2. " Sir," said Fouquet to his judge, " allow at least that I reply to you. I do not mean that you should always question me, and that you should never give me time to reply. Has the king ordered that I be treated in this manner? Equity certainly does not require that I be *treated thus* (= *so*, 30)."

3. " I would," says Fénelon, in his letter on the occupations of the French Academy, " that an orator should prepare himself for a long time in general knowledge, to acquire a stock of information and to render himself capable of writing good works. I should like this general preparation to enable him to *require less preparation* (= *prepare himself less*) for each particular speech. I should like him to be naturally very sensible, to go through a regular training ; and to practise himself in reasoning with correctness and accuracy, discarding all subtleties. I should like him to distrust his imagination, in order never to allow himself to be ruled by it (33, *d*, Obs.) ; finally, I should like him to ground every speech on an incontestable principle, from which he might draw natural inferences."

31. Trente et unième Leçon : Emploi du Subjonctif (Suite).—Syntaxe, § 76, I. (*b* and *c*).

THÈME.

1. The fame of the conquests of Alexander the Great *made the Carthaginians fear* (= *made fear to the Carthaginians*) lest he should intend turning his arms in the direction of Africa. 2. I shall never believe that he wishes to deceive me. 3. You look very uneasy ; are you afraid lest some accident has happened to your children. 4. Keep your shop if you want it to keep you. 5. Do you think he will come?—No, I do not think he will come.—And I think he will come. 6. I do not deny that I have been mistaken, but I deny that I have had *any* (= *the*) intention to deceive you. 7. We shall for ever deplore that so many immortal works were lost *through* (= *in*) the destruction of the library of Alexandria. 8. I am very glad that you

recover your strength a little, and that my visit is doing you good. 9. I am ready to believe that you feel what you say, and do not doubt that your words are sincere.—If you think that my words are not sincere, I shall give you proofs to the contrary. 10. I do not think you are wrong; but I cannot affirm that you are right. 11. We fear he will succeed!—As for me I don't fear he will succeed. 12. But we are afraid that if he does not succeed now he will make another attempt.

Dialogue entre Confucius et Socrate (Suite).

Confucius. Peut-être avons-nous été plus heureux que vous, car la vertu a été grande dans la Chine.

Socrate. On le dit. Mais pour en être assuré par une voie non suspecte il faudrait que les Européens connussent de près votre histoire, comme ils connaissent la leur propre.

Confucius. Mais pourquoi n'en croyez-vous pas nos historiens et vos propres relateurs?

Socrate. Vos historiens nous sont inconnus; on n'en a que des morceaux extraits et rapportés par des relateurs peu critiques. Il faudrait savoir à fond votre langue, lire tous vos livres, et attendre qu'un grand nombre de savants eût fait cette étude à fond, afin que, par le grand nombre d'examinateurs, la chose pût être pleinement éclaircie. Jusque-là votre nation me paraît un spectacle beau et grand de loin, mais très douteux et équivoque.

Confucius. Voulez-vous ne rien croire, parceque Fernand Mendez Pinto a beaucoup exagéré? Douterez-vous que la Chine ne soit un vaste et puissant empire, très peuplé et bien policé; que les arts n'y fleurissent; qu'on n'y cultive les hautes sciences; que le respect des lois n'y soit admirable.

Socrate. Par où voulez-vous que je me convainque de toutes ces choses?

Confucius. Par vos propres relateurs.

Socrate. Il faut donc que je les croie, ces relateurs?

Confucius. Pourquoi non?

Socrate. Et que je les croie dans le mal comme dans le bien. Répondez de grâce.

Confucius. Je le veux.

Socrate. Selon ces relateurs, le peuple de la terre le plus vain, le plus superstitieux, le plus intéressé, le plus injuste, le plus menteur c'est—le Chinois.

Composition.

The Benevolent Bakers.—The bakers in Lyons wished that bread should become dearer. They went to the commissioner

of police of that town and asked *him to* (= *that he should*) allow them to raise the price of bread. Having explained their reasons, they went away, (*in*) leaving on his table a purse containing two hundred louis d'or. They did not doubt that this purse would well plead their cause. A few days after they returned to this magistrate and asked him to give them a reply. "Gentlemen," he said, "I do not think it is necessary to make the poor suffer to serve your interest. I have distributed your money to the hospitals of this town, for I did not think that you wished a different use of it. Besides it seems to me that people who are able to give such alms to the poor, are rich enough. I forbid then that you sell bread dearer than now. On the contrary, I should wish you to devise means to lower the prices still more, and I hope you will succeed in this manner in showing yourselves benevolent a second time. At all events, this proposal deserves that you should think of it very seriously!"

32. Trente-deuxième Leçon: Emploi du Subjonctif (Suite).—Syntaxe, § 76, I. (*d*).

Thème.

1. It is important for the welfare of the state that it should be governed by wise and honest men. 2. Is it not strange that a miller should drink water when he has no water, and wine when he has water? 3. It may be that you will succeed, but it is not sure that your success will turn to your advantage. 4. It is necessary that he who speaks should adapt himself to the capacity of those who listen to him. 5. Is it necessary that I write to them?—Yes, and it would be becoming for you to return their call. 6. It is surprising that nobody knows what has become of him. 7. Robinson Crusoe had to reconquer one by one the inventions and acquisitions of human industry. 8. If you want to learn French it is high time that you should begin to work hard; it must not be imagined that a language is learned without painstaking; it may be there are people who wish to make you believe it; but it is evident that they themselves know nothing about it. 9. It is rare that a people unlearn the language of their forefathers as quickly as [did] the Normans who settled in France in 911 A.D. 10. Do you know that these pupils are making rapid progress (*i.e.* these pupils *do* make, etc., are you aware of it?). 11. Do you know if these pupils are making rapid progress (*i.e.* I do not know if, etc., do you happen to know?).

Causeries Scientifiques.

1. Le ciel, est-il conformément à l'apparance qu'il présente, une voûte bleue à laquelle sont attachés les astres?—Ce qu'on appelle la voûte céleste est une pure apparance et la couleur bleue que nous apercevons au-dessus de nous est simplement le résultat de la décomposition des rayons du soleil par l'atmosphère.

2. Mais d'où vient que tous les astres nous paraissent attachés à une surface *sphérique?*—Bien que les astres soient séparés de nous par des distances qui diffèrent prodigieusement les uns des autres, notre vue, n'ayant aucun moyen d'apprécier ces différences suppose toutes ces distances égales.

3. Si la voûte céleste n'est que l'effet d'une illusion d'optique, comment se fait-il que nous la voyions exécuter, toutes les vingt-quatre heures, une révolution complète sur elle-même?—Cette révolution de la voûte céleste est une pure apparence, résultant du mouvement de rotation que la terre exécute sur elle-même toutes les vingt-quatre heures.

Composition.

The General.—The man appointed to command others on (the) battlefields has at first, as in all liberal professions, a scientific instruction to acquire. He must be proficient in the exact sciences, the graphic arts, the theory of fortifications. He must besides become a geographer, and not a geographer who merely knows under what rock the Rhine *and* (= *or*) the Danube take their rise, and into what basin they fall; but a profound geographer who has a full knowledge of the map, of its design, of its lines, of their relationship, their importance. He must also have an exact knowledge of the strength, the interests and the character of the nations; he must know their political history; and especially their military history; he must above all know men, for men in war are not machines.

To all this superior knowledge the warrior must add the commonplace, but none the less necessary, knowledge of an administrator. He wants the business habits of a clerk; for it is not enough to make men fight, they have to be fed, clothed, armed and healed. All this vast knowledge has to be displayed at the same time and in the midst of the most extraordinary circumstances.

33. Trente-troisième Leçon: Emploi du Subjonctif (Suite).—Syntaxe, § 77, II.

Thème.

1. The Greeks sent deputies to Delphi who consulted the oracle of Apollo. 2. The Greeks sent deputies to Delphi (who were) to consult the oracle of Apollo. 3. As if to facilitate *Alexander's victory* (= *the victory to Alexander*) it happened that the Persians lost the only general whom they could oppose to the Greeks. 4. I shall inhabit a country which pleases me, where I may be at peace, through which I may roam without fear, and the mild climate of which may be capable of strengthening my delicate health. 5. Louis the Fourteenth asked Tavernier why he had bought a country-seat in Switzerland. "Sire," replied he, "I wished to have an estate which should belong only to me." 6. There is nothing that I would not do for you. 7. In youth one must lay in a store of knowledge and maxims which may nourish and guide the mind *for life* (= *the whole life*). 8. In order to undertake distant voyages, the nations of antiquity lacked an instrument to guide them in storms and in the dark.

Causeries Scientifiques.

1. Qu'est-ce que la *pesanteur?*—C'est la propriété en vertu de laquelle deux corps quelconques s'attirent en raison directe du produit de leurs masses, et en raison inverse des carrés des distances.

2. Mais le mot pesanteur n'est-il pas aussi employé plus spécialement pour désigner l'attraction que la terre exerce sur les corps peu éloignés de sa surface?—C'est vrai, mais quand il s'agit de l'action qu'exercent les uns sur les autres les grands corps qui peuplent l'espace, on emploie plutôt les expressions *d'attraction universelle* ou de *gravitation.*

3. Qu'est-ce que le *poids* d'un corps?—C'est la pression qu'il exerce en vertu de l'attraction de la terre.

4. Et de quoi dépend le poids d'un corps?—Le poids d'un corps dépend de sa masse, c'est à dire, de la quantité de matière dont il est formé.—*D'après le* Dr. Brewer.

Composition.

1. "You blame," said Voltaire to Lord Harvey, "my predilection for Louis the Fourteenth; but, pray, mention to me a monarch who (has) called so many distinguished foreigners into his country and who more encouraged true courage among his subjects."

2. Do not look out for a man who has conquered others in wit or bodily exercise, but [one] who has conquered himself; look out for a man who has your laws written in the bottom of his heart and whose whole life *is spent in obedience to* (= *is the practice of*) these laws; let his actions, rather than his words, induce you to (83, *b*, 2) select him.

3. Confucius (in) speaking of men (has) said: "I have seen some who were unfit for sciences; but I have not seen any who were incapable of virtue."

4. "A Turk whom I met," Chateaubriand relates in his *Itinerary to Jerusalem*, "could not understand that I left my country *from mere* (= *by a simple motive of*) curiosity; but he found it quite natural that I undertook a long journey to go and pray on a grave."

34. Trente-quatrième Leçon: Emploi du Subjonctif (Suite)—Syntaxe, § 78, III.

THÈME.

1. Peter the Great reckoned the life of men as nothing provided he accomplished his object. 2. Wherever you are, conform yourself to the manners of the country. 3. In order that a balloon may rise in the air, it suffices to give it dimensions large enough *for* (= *so that*) the bulk of air which it displaces *to have* (= *has*) a greater weight than its own. 4. He renounced pleasures lest, indulging them too much, he should forget what he owed to the service of his sovereign. 5. He acted so as to deserve your approbation. 6. We shall work so as to deserve the approbation of our superiors. 7. I should like to meet with some one who could give me positive information. 8. Rivals as we are, we none the less esteem each other. 9. Can you not wait until I come back?—No, before you have come back I shall have to leave for Paris. 10. Whatever she may tell me, she will not persuade me. 11. However powerful they may be I do not fear them. 12. I have not yet spoken to him about it, in order that you might have time to consult your friends. 13. Rich as he is, he is not happy. 14. Though you had done what you say, you would none the less be guilty. 15. Romulus disappeared without [any] one ever knowing how he had perished.

DIALOGUE ENTRE DÉMOCRITE ET HÉRACLITE.

Démocrite. Je ne saurais m'accommoder d'une philosophie triste.

Héraclite. Ni moi d'une gaie. Quand on est sage on ne voit rien dans le monde qui ne paraisse de travers, et qui ne déplaise.

Démocrite. Vous prenez les choses d'un trop grand sérieux ; cela vous fera mal.

Héraclite. Vous les prenez avec trop d'enjouement. N'êtes-vous point touché de voir le genre humain si aveugle, si corrompu, si égaré ?

Démocrite. Je suis bien plus touché de le voir si impertinent et si ridicule.

Héraclite. Mais enfin ce genre humain dont vous riez, c'est le monde entier avec qui vous vivez, c'est la société de vos amis, c'est votre famille, c'est vous-même.

Démocrite. Je ne me soucie guère de tous les fous que je vois et je me crois sage en me moquant d'eux.

Héraclite. S'ils sont fous, vous n'êtes guère sage ni bon, de ne les plaindre pas et d'insulter à leur folie. D'ailleurs, qui vous répond que vous ne soyez pas si extravagant qu'eux ?

Démocrite. Je ne puis l'être, pensant en toutes choses le contraire de ce qu'ils pensent.

Héraclite. Il y a des folies de diverse espèce. Peut-être qu'à force de contredire les folies des autres vous vous jetez dans une extrémité contraire, qui n'est pas moins folle.

Démocrite. Croyez-en ce qu'il vous plaira ; et pleurez encore sur moi, si vous avez des larmes de reste ; pour moi, je suis content de rire des fous. Tous les hommes ne le sont-ils pas ? répondez !

Héraclite. Hélas ! ils ne le sont que trop ; c'est ce qui m'afflige ; nous convenons vous et moi, en ce point, que les hommes ne suivent point la raison.

FÉNELON (*Dialogues des Morts*).

COMPOSITION.

1. Although the French army had been almost entirely destroyed in Russia, and though it seemed impossible to raise a new one in so short a time, yet *as early as* (= *dès*) the spring the Emperor again entered Germany at the head of two hundred thousand men, and without waiting till they attacked him he fought the bloody battles of Lutzen and Bautzen, which decided nothing. Many assert that if he had remained near the Rhine, and had limited himself to the defence of that line, he would have been invincible.

2. *Lysimachus.*—When Alexander the Great had destroyed the empire of the Persians he wanted people to believe that he was the son of Jupiter. The Macedonians were indignant to see this prince blushing (81, *d*) to have Philip for [his] father; their discontent increased when they saw *him* (= *lui*) assume the customs, habits and manners of the Persians ; and they all reproached each other with (16, *b*) having (*Infinit.*) done so much for a man who began to despise them . . . .

3. A philosopher of the name of Callisthenes had followed the king in his expedition. One day he greeted him in the Greek fashion : " How is it," said Alexander to him, " that thou dost not worship me ? "—" Lord," said Callisthenes to him, " you are the chief of two nations ; the one, enslaved before you had subjected her, is not less so since you have conquered her ; the other, free before she helped you to carry off so many victories, is still so since you have carried them off. I am a Grecian, lord, and this name, you have raised (it) so high, that, without injuring yourself, you are no longer at liberty to degrade it."

35. Trente-cinquième Leçon : Emploi du Subjonctif (Suite)—Syntaxe, § 79, et Récapitulation.

Thème.

1. Heaven grant that he may be successful. 2. Don't you think that this is the most beautiful sight that we have ever seen ?—Nothing as far as I know can be compared to it. 3. Let him who can explain such a riddle. 4. With all due deference to him, I doubt if he is able to do it. 5. If ill betide him let him blame himself for it. 6. If you speak let it be on a subject that you know thoroughly. 7. May God forgive you as I forgive you ! 8. I am afraid he will be defeated !—Well, it will be a wholesome lesson ; much good may it do him. 9. Whatever you may say, *I cannot see* (= *I see not*) that he deserves all the praise you bestow on him. 10. You cannot deny that a man learns many things in travelling. 11. Take care lest he should see you. 12. I wish you to give me good advice for learning English !—It does not suffice that your teacher be a born Englishman, he must be a gentleman who moves in good society and who has thoroughly studied his mother tongue.

Composition.

1. *Remarks on Letter-writing*.—It has often been said that *a* (= *the*) letter is nothing but a written conversation. This definition may be approved if it is not taken too literally ; for nobody, as far as I know, has *meant* (= *wished*) to assert that one must write exactly as one speaks. *It was only intended to* (= *one has only wished*) say that a letter ought to be *as nearly* (= *as much*) as possible like conversation. Let it be remembered that the gestures, the expression of the countenance, the inflections of the voice give to the spoken language a signification and a colour which cannot be reproduced by the dumb letter. On the other hand, the looks [and] features of him who listens

to us betray the impression which our words produce on him. We can immediately complete a wrongly understood thought [or] retract a rash word. In a word, conversation can correct itself, but a letter once written has but one meaning and causes but one impression. With this reserve, useful precepts can be derived from the definition given above for the method of letter-writing and *an* (= *the*) epistolary style.

Since a letter and its answer are but a conversation between *distant persons* (= *absents*), let one write as one would speak, that is to say, with the simple manner and ease required for a conversation. A conversation must be *clear* and *easy*; let these be the qualities of epistolary style.

2. One speaks and writes in order to be understood. What a distinct and intelligible pronunciation is for conversation, a neat and legible handwriting is for correspondence. Who would dare to affirm that these two qualities are common, even among people who pride themselves on good breeding and politeness? Beware then if you speak, of imitating numerous people who never *open their lips* (= *unlock the teeth*) and who have the impertinence to leave to their hearers the trouble of guessing what they mean *when they move* (= *in moving*) their lips. Let one remember in writing that the invention of writing misses its aim if one sends to one's correspondent a message which in order to be deciphered requires the patience of a scholar accustomed to the explanation of hieroglyphs and cuneiform writing.

36. Trente-sixième Leçon: L'Infinitif sans Préposition.—Syntaxe, § 81.

Thème.

1. Praying, fasting, [and] working were, according to the rule, to be the only occupation of the Benedictine monks. 2. Can you express yourself in German?—No, but I think I can understand you, provided you do not speak too quickly. 3. He admits he has done it. 4. One must eat in order to live, but one must not live in order to eat. 5. If you have no occasion for this book, be so kind as to lend it to me. 6. It is all in vain for you to speak, I will do nothing of the kind. 7. I was to have started yesterday, but all things well considered, I thought I had better stay. 8. Old men always hope to be able to prolong their life. 9. We expected to have left a fortnight ago, but now we hardly hope to be able to leave town to-morrow. 10. I think I ought to tell you that your uncle will come and see you to-day week. 11. A great misfortune well nigh happened to us. 12. I no longer know what to do.

Entretiens familiers sur la Langue française.

1. La question a souvent été agitée, laquelle des deux langues est la plus riche, de la langue française ou de l'anglaise ; qu'en pensez-vous ?—Pour peu qu'on compare les dictionnaries de ces deux langues, il saute aux yeux sous le rapport de la richesse, la langue anglaise l'emporte sur la française ; richesse qui, d'ailleurs, n'est pas sans avoir ses inconvénients.

2. Mais, je ne vois pas trop quel inconvénient il peut y avoir à ce qu'une langue ait un grand fonds de mots ; *abondance de richesse ne nuit pas*, comme dit le proverbe !—D'accord ; mais *l'embarras de richesse* dans une langue, surtout lorsque les éléments qui la constituent sont si hétérogènes, ne tendrait-il point à détruire ce caractère d'unité et d'harmonie qui font que le grec et le latin, par exemple, sont des langues si parfaites ?

3. Je vous accorde ce point ; mais en revanche permettez-moi de vous signaler un fait qui constitue, à mon avis, un vrai danger pour le développement de la langue française.—Je suis tout oreilles ; poursuivez !

4 Le temps me manquerait aujourd'hui pour développer mon sujet !—A demain donc.

Composition.

Avec.—In most (of the) shops the shopmen, after having sold an article, hasten to ask the buyer if he does not want anything else. The stock phrase which they use in Paris for that purpose is : "*Et avec ça*, monsieur (*or* madame) ?" One day a celebrated painter, who was known for his bluntness, entered a large shop to make some purchases. The continual repetition of this phrase at last made him lose his patience. Last of all, he had just bought a pocket-handkerchief. "*Et avec ça*, monsieur ?" the shopman asked him with the blandest of smiles. "*With that* I shall blow my nose, stupid fool ! "

37. Trente-septième Leçon : Infinitif complément du Verbe "faire."—Syntaxe, § 81, Obs. 2.

Thème.

1. In the year 55 B.C. Cæsar caused a bridge to be thrown across the Rhine. 2. Is it true that your cousin who lately became a soldier got killed in Afghanistan ? 3. Have you had your luggage examined yet ?—No, nor have I had my passport viséd.—In that case you run the risk of getting yourself arrested. 4. These French exercises on the use of the Infinitive do not

seem to be well done ; the pupils did not bear in mind that after *faire* the *active* voice of the Infinitive must be used in French. —Well, make them do them again, and properly. 5. Let him alone, I say, he will know well enough how to get out of the scrape. 6. Why have you kept me waiting so long?—I couldn't help it. 7. Why do you not get your coat mended?—Because I shall get a new one made. 8. When the tailor comes, show him upstairs. 9. Have you bought your coat ready-made?—No, I have had it made to measure. 10. Show these gentlemen in. 11. I have seen him do that.

Entretiens familiers sur la Langue française. (Suite.)

1. Ce que j'avais a cœur de vous expliquer dans notre dernier entretien c'est que la perfection même de la langue française peut devenir un obstacle formidable au renouvellement de la nation par la domination invisible qu'elle exerce sur tous.—Fort bien ; mais encore, où en voulez vous venir ? Est-ce donc à tort que nous tenons notre langue pour la langue cosmopolite par excellence, le moyen pour les peuples de communiquer entre eux, en Europe du moins ?

2. Au contraire ; l'Europe entière a reconnu cette suprématie, qui est unique dans les fastes modernes.—Et non contents de faire à notre belle langue des emprunts continuels, les autres peuples lui ont donné une espèce de position internationale ; je suis donc à me demander où est le danger qui la menace !

3. Vous n'êtes pas sans savoir que quand une langue est en voie de formation, le peuple qui l'emploie en est le maître, il lui imprime son propre caractère, il la moule et la transforme selon ses idées et ses besoins !—Pourtant le français est bien une langue vivante en ce sens qu'elle se développe continuellement par la création d'expressions nouvelles.

4. Mais elle se rapproche des langues mortes en ce qu'elle est arrivée à un degré d'achèvement et de perfection qui lui donne désormais une espèce de rigidité. Or, une langue parvenue à son plein épanouissement s'impose à ceux qui en font usage, donne une direction particulière à leurs pensées et exerce sur leur vie toute entière une influence subtile, qui n'en est que plus puissante pour être inconsciente.—Ce qui revient à dire que les siècles passés peuvent peser sur les générations nouvelles sans même qu'elles s'en doutent.

Composition.

On the Utility of History (continued from Lesson 21).—One may say that history is the common school of mankind ; equally accessible and useful to the great and lowly, to

princes and subjects, and still more necessary to the great and to princes than to all others! For how then among this crowd of flatterers who besiege them from all sides, who do not cease praising and admiring them, that is to say, corrupting them and poisoning their minds and hearts; how, I say, will timid truth be able to approach them and make its feeble voice be heard, in the midst of this tumult and confused noise? How will it dare to show them the duties and labours of royalty; make them understand wherein true glory consists; represent to them that, if they will take the trouble to trace their institution to their origin, they will clearly see that they are [made] for the people, and not the people for them? How will it warn them of their faults, make them fear the just judgment of posterity, and dispel the thick mist which the vain phantom of their greatness and the infatuation of their fortune form around them?

38. Trente-huitième Leçon: L'Infinitif avec "de."—Syntaxe, § 82.

THÈME.

1. Every one thinks he has a right to complain of *his* (= *the*) luck. 2. The aim of the writer ought to be to instruct and to please. 3. You risk losing much in order to gain little. 4. He has neither the intention nor the power of hurting you. 5. It is believed that Hannibal made a grievous mistake in not hastening to besiege Rome after the battle of Cannæ. 6. One must avail one's self of the advantages that one possesses, and know how to do without *those* (= *the*) pleasures which one cannot enjoy. 7. Mind you do not lend him any money; if you have already done so, do not hope ever to see it again. 8. One is tired to see in the history of Roman emperors the endless number of people whom they put to death in order to confiscate their property. 9. I cannot help giving you this advice. 10. These plants want watering. 11. I recollect having read it. 12. We have just heard that the government are going to send an ambassador to Constantinople to negotiate peace. 13. I praise you for having acted thus.

Entretiens familiers sur la Langue française. (Suite.)

1. Est-il vrai qu'en français vous n'ayez pas de terme équivalent au mot anglais *listener?*—Nous avons bien le mot *auditeur*, mais qui n'équivaut pas à beaucoup près au terme anglais.

2. Et comment se fait-il qu'un mot dont nous autres Anglais ne saurions nous passer vous fasse défaut?—Que voulez-vous que je vous dise? c'est que la plupart du temps nous sommes tellement occupés à parler tous à la fois qu'il ne nous reste pas de temps pour écouter.

3. Et quelle est la conclusion que vous déduisez de ce fait?—J'en conclus que la présence et l'emploi d'un mot dans une langue et son absence dans une autre sont des indications des mœurs des deux peuples qui parlent ces langues!

4. Ce qui reviendrait donc à dire que, les Français n'ayant pas d'équivalent pour quantité de mots expressifs tel que *gentleman*, *comfort*, etc., ils n'ont pas la chose non plus?—Je vous demande pardon! Vous oubliez que ce sont là des termes essentiellement français dans leur origine, et que vous nous avez volés; or, en les adoptant avec la signification que vous y attachez, nous n'avons fait que reprendre notre bien.

Composition.

The Limbs of the Human Body.—The limbs of the human body one day (103) got tired of serving each other, and resolved to cease doing so (30). The feet said: "Why must we alone carry for others? Procure feet for yourselves if you wish to walk." The hands said: "Why must we work for others? Procure yourself hands, if you want any." The mouth murmured: "I must be very foolish continually to chew food for the stomach, in order that he may digest at his ease. Let him who wants a mouth procure one for himself." The eyes likewise found it very strange to be obliged always to watch alone for the whole body and to see for him. And all the other limbs of the body spoke in the same *strain* (= *manner*) and refused to serve each other. What happened? The feet no longer wanting to walk, nor the hands to work, nor the mouth to eat, nor the eyes to see, the whole body began to *decay* (*dépérir*) in all its limbs and to decline gradually. They found out then that they had acted in a foolish manner, and agreed that that should not happen again in the future. Each limb began again to serve the others, and all recovered health and strength as they had enjoyed them before.

39. Trente-neuvième Leçon: L'Infinitif avec "à." —Syntaxe, §§ 83, 84.

Thème.

1. I should feel weary if I were to spend my time in doing nothing. 2. There is but little left for me to do. 3. I want to know if you have still rooms to let in your house. 4. We have

succeeded in having him appointed. 5. If you have an hour's time to spend, come and spend it with us. 6. Their time was spent in playing. 7. I am anxious to make you understand what remains for you to do. 8. She felt her heart sink and began to cry. 9. If it were to be done again, I should not do it. 10. He delights in making you angry. 11. He is old enough to judge what is good for him. 12. Vienna is a city worth seeing. 13. You need only raise your eyes. 14. We shall have great pleasure in meeting you at the Northern Station. 15. We shall make it a point of honour to satisfy your wishes.

Entretiens familiers sur la Langue française. (Suite.)

1. Ne trouvez-vous pas que la langue française est singulièrement pauvre en expressions de tendresse et d'affection ?—Mais tout au contraire ! Je suis d'avis que sous ce rapport notre idiome l'emporte de beaucoup sur le vôtre.

2. Par exemple ! Je vous défie de me citer aucun mot qui puisse se comparer à notre *darling ;* car votre *chéri* ne saurait en rendre le sens profond !—D'accord ! mais en revanche, là où nous l'emportons sur vous autres Anglais, c'est dans cet adorable tutoiement, dans ce doux emploi du *tu* qui marque avec tant de relief la différence entre ceux que nous aimons et le monde glacial du dehors.

3. Franchement, je ne vois pas ce qu'il y a de si affectueux dans ce tutoiement dont vous faites tant de cas !—Ah, il est impossible de faire sentir à un Anglais les charmes indicibles du tutoiement ; rien ne saurait lui suggérer l'idée de la profondeur d'affection qui se trouve dans le *tu.*

4. A vous en croire, ce serait donc par le cœur plutôt que par la raison qu'il faut en pénétrer la mystérieuse profondeur ?—Oui, et nous prenons en compassion les gens assez malheureux pour dire *vous* à leur femme et à leurs enfants. Pour de plus amples détails sur cette matière, je vous renvoie à l'intéressante série d'articles publiés sous le titre de *French Home Life* dans " Blackwood's Magazine."

Composition.

1. *Education of the Spartan Youths.*—In Sparta one accustomed the children very early to remain alone, to walk in the dark in order that they should contract the habit of fearing nothing. One accustomed them also not to be particular nor dainty about their food ; not to give way to bad temper, crying, weeping, passionate outbursts ; to walk barefoot, to sleep on a hard couch and often on the ground ; to wear the same garment in winter and in summer in order to harden

themselves against cold and heat. Their education was, properly speaking, nothing but an apprenticeship in obedience, the legislator having well understood that the safest means of having citizens submissive to the laws and magistrates was to teach the children from their earliest years to be entirely submissive to their masters.

2. It is a great pity *when a man has not* (= *not to have*) sense enough to speak well, nor judgment enough to keep silent.

40. Quarantième Leçon : L'Infinitif avec les Prépositions "pour," "après," "sans," "par," "afin de," etc.—Syntaxe, §§ 85, 86.

Thème.

1. In order to derive instruction from what one reads, one must make it a law for one's self to understand everything. 2. One studies in order to learn, and one learns by dint of studying. 3. Before entering upon a war, the ancient Greeks consulted the oracle, for they did not venture to undertake anything without the consent of the gods. 4. We are getting old without perceiving it. 5. After having crossed the Alps, one enters another climate; one fancies one has left (the) winter behind and is breathing a more genial air. 6. He has hid his money for fear of losing it. 7. There are occasions *in which* (= *where*) we must humour people if we will not pass for whimsical and ridiculous. 8. In friendship there are two principal blessings—the first is to love, the second, to trust; to enjoy these two blessings, you understand what is wanted—kindness in order to love; esteem in order to trust.

Gallicismes dialogués.

1. Pour en revenir à nos moutons, ne disiez-vous que pour bien traduire il faut posséder à fond sa langue maternelle et celle de l'original?—Oui, trois conditions me semblent particulièrement nécessaires à l'œuvre complète de la traduction.

2. Et quelles sont ces trois conditions indispensables?—Aimer son modèle ou lui ressembler; écrire avec talent et selon le génie de sa propre langue; comprendre à fond la langue et le génie de l'auteur qu'on traduit.

3. Supposons que la première de ces conditions manque au traducteur?—L'œuvre ne laissera d'être ingrate.

4. Et si c'est la seconde?—Alors l'œuvre est barbare.

5. Et mettant que ce soit la troisième qui lui fasse défaut?—Dans ce cas la prétention est ridicule.

Composition.

The Gossips.—One of the faults that I notice among Parisians is (39) the mania of all wanting to talk together, without listening or replying to one another, and to speak at the same time. I have already been invited to dinner in several houses ; whenever there are ten or twelve persons at table, towards the end of the meal at least three or four conversations are started, or, more correctly speaking, every one holds one of his own. The worst is that there is not a single guest but speaks very loud as if he *claimed the right** of being heard alone ; it is enough to make one deaf. It is the same in assemblies, in clubs : if one happens (122, *b.* 5) to quote a fact, every one relates it to the others ; or to start a question, every one *expresses* † his opinion about it ; every one wants to show *his* (= *some*) wit and to engross the attention of the listeners. *Comp. Dialogue to* 39*th Lesson.*

* avoir la prétention de. † élever, or soulever.

41. Quarante-et-unième Leçon : Participe présent.—Syntaxe, §§ 87—91.

Thème.

1. I am writing this letter with a trembling hand. 2. The barbarians were overrunning the flourishing country, [and] burning everything on their way. 3. You risk losing everything by wishing to gain too much. 4. By neglecting your duties and putting everything off from day to day, you will not fail to make *your life* (=*yourself*) miserable. 5. As Hannibal urged King Prusias to give battle, this monarch excused himself by saying that the priests did not want it. 6. Minerva was represented on the shield of Telemachus with her lance and aegis, taking Ulysses by his hand, exciting the fugitive troops of the Greeks, and supporting the efforts of the most valiant chiefs. 7. All the inhabitants spent the night in the street, some sobbing and imploring the saints, (the) others blaspheming and staring with stupor at the yawning mountain. 8. There are men who grow richer by giving than others by receiving. 9. Whilst complaining that the dinner was detestable, he kept on eating like an ogre. 10. The Troubadours went about singing the love and glory of those who rewarded them. 11. What are your nieces doing ?—I found them reading a treatise on philosophy, but evidently not understanding anything about it.

Dialogue entre Achille et Homère.

Achille. Je suis ravi, grand poète, d'avoir servi à t'immortaliser. Ma querelle contre Agamemnon, ma douleur de la mort de Patrocle, mes combats contre les Troyens, la victoire que je remportai sur Hector, t'ont donné le plus beau sujet de poème qu'on ait jamais vu.

Homère. J'avoue que le sujet est beau ; mais j'en aurais bien pu trouver d'autres. Une preuve qu'il y en a d'autres, c'est que j'en ai trouvé effectivement. Les aventures du sage et patient Ulysse valent bien la colère de l'impétueux Achille.

Achille. Quoi ! comparer le rusé et trompeur Ulysse au fils de Thétis, plus terrible que Mars ! Va, poète ingrat, tu sentiras...

Homère. Tu as oublié que les ombres ne doivent point se mettre en colère. Une colère d'ombre n'est guère à craindre. Tu n'as plus d'autres armes à employer que de bonnes raisons.

Achille. Pourquoi aussi viens-tu me désavouer que tu me dois la gloire de ton beau poème ? L'autre n'est qu'un amas de contes de vieilles ; tout y languit ; tout sent son vieillard dont la vivacité est éteinte et qui ne sait point finir.

(*La Suite à la prochaine Leçon.*)

Composition.

1. *Death and the Woodcutter.*—An old man having cut some wood, and having loaded it on his back, was about to carry it home ; but finding the burden too heavy, he threw it down and called [for] Death. The latter having hastened near, and having asked the old man why he called him, "To help me to reload this burden," replied the unfortunate man, quite frightened.

2. *The Avalanche.*—A sudden noise *is* (= *makes itself*) heard from the top of the mountains—it is an avalanche rushing down with [a] crash. The enormous mass, disturbing and upsetting all the strata of air which it traverses whilst falling, gives birth to gusts of wind, the forerunners of a violent crisis. Soon the storm bursts out : frightful lightnings, flashing with an awful glare, succeed each other without intermission ; thunderclaps, pealing in all directions, are repeated by the echoes of the valley ; the waters of the lake are violently agitated, and roaring raise their foaming billows ; the gales, blowing with fury, strew the earth with the *débris* of old pine trees rolling from the top of the mountain ; the clouds bursting pour floods of rain from their womb rent by lightning. In an instant the whole region is inundated : the swollen brooks, bouncing with the impetuosity of torrents, carry with them everything *they meet* (= *that which encounters itself*) on their passage, and this valley, only lately so smiling and so beautiful, offers to the dismayed (*consterné*) glance nothing but a vast scene of devastation and ruins.

42. Quarante-deuxième Leçon : Constructions dans lesquelles l'emploi du participe est contraire au génie de la langue française.—Syntaxe, § 88 ; récapituler §§ 80—86.

Thème.

1. Don't keep me waiting long for your letter.—You may depend upon hearing from me. 2. He denied having seen or heard anything. 3. I will insist upon doing what pleases me. 4. On the rising of the curtains the prima donna was greeted with a burst of applause. 5. The tower was called so from having been a retreat of Boabdil. 6. From his being so lordly, I thought he must be a man of importance. 7. He flew into a passion with her for presuming to contradict him. 8. I should like to know the reason of your behaving as you do. 9. I can hear you without your shouting so loud. 10. It is very fine walking in this garden. 11. Whilst continuing to read, he could not help laughing at the absurdity of the story. 12. Reading by candle light hurts the eyes. 13. Early rising is very good for the health. 14. I hear somebody crying out. 15. We propose going to Paris to-morrow and returning next week. 16. We cannot remember having ever seen such a sight.

Dialogue entre Achille et Homère (Suite)

Homère. Parle de guerre, c'est ton fait, et ne te mêle jamais de décider sur la poésie en ma présence.

Achille. Oh que tu es fier, bonhomme aveugle ! tu te prévaux de ma mort.

Homère. Je me prévaux aussi de la mienne. Tu n'es plus que l'ombre d'Achille, et moi je ne suis que l'ombre d'Homère.

Achille. Ah ! que ne puis-je faire sentir mon ancienne force à cette ombre ingrate !

Homère. Puisque tu me presses tant sur l'ingratitude, je veux enfin te détromper. Tu ne m'as fourni qu'un sujet que je pouvais trouver ailleurs ; mais moi je t'ai donné une gloire qu'un autre n'eût pu te donner et qui ne s'effacera jamais.

Achille. Comment ! tu t'imagines que sans tes vers le grand Achille ne serait pas admiré de toutes les nations et de tous les siècles ?

Homère. Plaisante vanité, pour avoir répandu plus de sang qu'un autre au siége d'une ville qui n'a été prise qu'après ta mort ! Hé, combien y a-t-il de héros qui ont vaincu de grands peuples et conquis de grands royaumes ! Cependant ils sont

dans les ténèbres de l'oubli, ou ne sait pas même leurs noms. Les Muses seules peuvent immortaliser les grandes actions.

FÉNELON (*Dialogues des Morts*).

COMPOSITION.

Mrs. Peerybingle's Teakettle.—The kettle was aggravating and obstinate. It wouldn't allow itself to be adjusted on the top bar; it wouldn't hear of accommodating itself kindly to the knobs of coal; it would lean forward with a drunken air, and dribble, a very idiot of a kettle, on the hearth; it was quarrelsome, and hissed and spluttered morosely at the fire. To sum up all, the lid resisting Mrs. Peerybingle's fingers first of all turned topsy-turvy, and then, with an ingenious pertinacity deserving of a better cause, dived sideways in—down to the very bottom of the kettle. And the hull of the Royal George has never made half the monstrous resistance to coming out of water which the lid of that kettle employed against Mrs. Peerybingle before she got it up again.

It looked sullen and pig-headed enough, even then; carrying its handle with an air of defiance, and cocking its spout pertly and mockingly at Mrs. Peerybingle, as if it said, "I won't boil. Nothing shall induce me."

DICKENS (*The Cricket on the Hearth*).

43. Quarante-troisième Leçon: Participe passé. —Syntaxe, §§ 92—97.

THÈME.

1. Several letters have reached us yesterday evening. 2. My sisters have gone to the ball, and have met there a great many persons whom they had not known before. 3. She has written to us that her cousin (f.) and *herself* (= *she*) had planned to take a tour in Switzerland, and they had undertaken to be ready in a fortnight. 4. "Sire," the Marshal de Luxembourg wrote to Louis XIV., "your enemies have done wonders, your troops better still; you (have) told me to take a town and to win a battle—I have taken it and I have won it." 5. "Let them speak," exclaimed Coriolanus, "let them speak those whom I have rescued in battles, let them appear those whom I have snatched from the sword of the enemies, and whose lives (sing.) I have saved." 6. The festivities have succeeded each other. 7. These ladies had fancied that we had been reconciled. 8. The information (pl.) that we have procured has not turned out favourable. 9. It is generally the trouble which an author has taken in polishing and perfecting his writings which *is the*

reason why (= *makes that*) one has no trouble in reading them. 10. These merchants have mutually acknowledged the receipt of their letters. 11. The two criminals have accused each other of the crime. 12. They have racked their brains to get out of the difficulty. 13. We have perceived too late that a number of mistakes had crept into our work. 14. Constantinople had been taken by the Turks in 1453; at that time many Greeks had taken refuge in Italy, where they had been well received. 15. These girls have pledged their word to each other never to allow themselves to be separated.

Dialogue entre Démosthène et Cicéron.

Démosthène. Il y a longtemps que je souhaitais de vous voir: j'ai entendu parler de votre éloquence ; César, qui est arrivé ici depuis peu, m'en a instruit.

Cicéron. Il est vrai que ç'a été un de mes plus grands talents.

Démosthène. Parlez m'en en détail, je vous en prie.

Cicéron. D'abord j'ai défendu plusieurs gens accusés injustement ; j'ai fait bannir Verrès, préteur de Sicile ; j'ai parlé pour et contre des lois ; j'ai abattu Catiline et son parti ; j'ai plaidé pour Sextius, tribun du peuple, qui avait toujours été pour moi même pendant mon exil ; enfin j'ai couronné ma vie par ces Philippiques si célèbres, qui...

Démosthène. J'entends, ...ont surpassé les miennes; je ne pensais pas que vous eussiez apporté ici votre vanité; mais laissons cela: comment vous êtes-vous gouverné dans la rhétorique ?

Cicéron. J'ai fait des ouvrages qui dureront éternellement, j'ai parlé des orateurs les plus célèbres ; j'ai ..

Démosthène. Je vois bien que vous voulez toujours revenir à vos oraisons ; ne croyez pas me tromper, j'en sais autant qu'un autre, et...

Cicéron. Tout beau, vous me reprenez de ma vanité, et vous vous louez vous-même !

Fénelon (*Dialogues des Morts*).

Composition.

Rome and the Barbarians.—Divided by inveterate hatred (plur.), unnerved by the luxuries which they had brought from the East, crushed by a despotism which had enslaved them, the Romans have allowed themselves to be subjugated by the barbarians which the North had poured forth, and who, hardened by warlike expeditions, had gloriously (103) served in the Roman armies, and had settled in close proximity to the empire which they in some manner had divided (among)

themselves beforehand. Several sovereigns, guided by a blind policy, had employed in their armies whole corps of these barbarians, and had given them settlements in the border provinces of the empire to reward [them for] the services they had received from them ; but they (have) soon repented of their imprudence, for they *saw* (= *have seen*) them invade their beautiful native land, which had made itself master of the world.

44. Quarante-quatrième Leçon : Participe passé. —Syntaxe, §§ 98—102.

Thème.

1. In that year three Romans (have) allowed themselves to be beaten by Hannibal. 2. Have you heard them quarrel?—No, but I have seen them come to blows to settle their difference in a more expeditious manner. 3. The boots which I have had made in Paris are so tight that I thought I should never be able to put them on. 4. What have you seen acted in the theatre?—The *Magic Flute*, one of the masterpieces of Mozart, the overture of which was played to perfection. 5. The weather having prevented us from going out, we began (Past Indef.) to do the lessons which you had set us (to do). 6. Those are secrets which your mother confided to me, and which she did not want you to know. 7. The steps which I (have) thought I ought to take have not been successful. 8. They have sent for us, but we have declined to go out. 9. They (have) sent us to fetch some provisions, and we did not return until very late. 10. Those are trees which I have caused to be planted and which I have seen grow up ; the fruit (pl.) which I have gathered from them has already compensated me for the trouble which they have cost me. 11. Experience is not so much the fruit of a great number of years that one has lived as of a great number of moments *spent in observing* (=*that one has observed*). 12. How many men we have found on whose gratitude we had relied, and who not only have not helped us, but who moreover have done us an ill turn. 13. If you had taken more trouble to follow the advice (pl.) that I had given you, you would not have failed in your enterprise. 14. The great heat (pl.) which has prevailed this week has prevented us from setting out. 15. The true cause of this war was the spite of the Carthaginians at *having seen** Sicily and Sardinia snatched† from them. 16. What time, what reflections has it not required to watch and to know the wants, freaks, and resources of nature?

* se voir, Past Infinit. † Infin. Active, § 81, *c*, Obs. 2.

COMPOSITION.

1. *William Pitt.*—The situation which Pitt occupied at the close of the reign of George II. was the most enviable ever occupied by any public man in English history: he had conciliated the king; he domineered over the House of Commons; he was adored by the people; he was admired by all Europe. He was the first Englishman of his time, and he had made England the first country in the world. . . . . The old party distinctions were almost effaced; nor was their place yet supplied by distinctions of a still more important kind. A new generation of country squires and rectors had arisen who knew not the Stuarts. The Dissenters were tolerated; the Catholics not cruelly persecuted. The Church was drowsy and indulgent. The great civil and religious conflict which had began at the Reformation seemed to be terminated in universal repose. . . . . A few years sufficed to change the whole aspect of affairs. A nation convulsed by faction, a throne assailed by the fiercest invective, a House of Commons hated and despised by the nation, England set against Scotland, Britain set against America, a rival legislature sitting beyond the Atlantic, English blood shed by English bayonets, our armies capitulating, our conquests wrested from us, our enemies hastening to take vengeance for past humiliation, our flag scarcely able to maintain itself in our own seas, such was the spectacle which Pitt lived to see.

MACAULAY.

2. *Pyrrhus and Cineas.*—Cineas, seeing Pyrrhus determined to cross over to Italy, one day said to him, "You meditate carrying your arms against the Romans; if we succeed in conquering them, what advantage shall we derive from this victory?"—"The Romans once conquered," replied Pyrrhus, "all Italy will be ours."—"And when we are masters of it, what shall we do?"—"Sicily stretches out her arms to us."—"And Sicily [once] taken, will *that* (=*she*) be the end of our expeditions?"—"Certainly not. Carthage, Africa, Macedonia, all Greece, will become our prey."—"And when we have conquered all, what shall we do?"—"We shall live in peace, we shall spend whole days in banquets, pleasant conversations, festivities, and we shall only think of amusing ourselves."—"Why, my lord," then said Cineas, "what prevents us this very day from living in peace, giving banquets, celebrating festivities, and enjoying ourselves well? Why go so far for a happiness which we have in our hands, and buy so dearly what we can obtain without difficulty?" This sensible speech did not convince Pyrrhus.

45. Quarante-cinquième Leçon: L'Adverbe.—Syntaxe, §§ 103—108.

Thème.

1. You always confound the adverbs *davantage* and *plus;* in fact, they are both adverbs of comparison, but *plus* is used with *que* followed by a second term of comparison; *davantage* is only used when the second term has already been expressed, or when it is understood. 2. It has not been raining for a long time. 3. That despot had flatterers, but no friends. 4. Many people have the foolish vanity to wish to appear more than they are. 5. Take care lest he surprise you. 6. You cannot deny that he has spoken to you. 7. I do not trust him any more than his brother. 8. There is hardly any friendship possible except between equals. 9. He is not only not learned, but he is even very ignorant. 10. You say you don't like this man; in truth, he does not like you either. 11. You look very uneasy; are you afraid something awkward has happened? 12. The man who is continually pursued by sad ideas cannot enjoy any rest. 13. No one doubts that the sea (has) once covered a great part of the earth now inhabited. 14. Do not walk so quickly. 15. He walks, sleeps, eats, and drinks like (the) others; that does not prevent him from being very ill. 16. Take care lest one should see you. 17. I do not understand what he has to say to us.—Nor do I either. 18. I should know him among a thousand, were it only by his gait. 19. I am much afraid he will not succeed. 20. He acts differently from what he says.

Dialogue entre Lucullus et Crassus.

Lucullus. Jamais je n'ai vu un souper si délicat et si somptueux.

Crassus. Et moi je n'ai pas oublié que j'en ai fait de bien meilleurs dans votre salle d'Apollon.

Lucullus. Point; je n'ai jamais fait de meilleure chère. Mais voulez-vous que je vous parle d'un ton libre et gai? ne vous en fâcherez-vous point?

Crassus. Non; j'entends raillerie.

Lucullus. Quoi, un souper pendant lequel nous avons eu une comédie de pantomimes, plusieurs parasites affamés et bien impudents, qui par jalousie ont pensé se battre; c'est une fête merveilleuse!

Crassus. J'aime le spectacle, et je sais que vous l'aimez aussi; j'ai voulu vous faire ce plaisir.

COMPOSITION.

The Elephant.—In the savage state, the elephant is neither bloodthirsty nor ferocious; he is of a gentle disposition, and he never makes any ill use of his weapons or of his strength; he only uses them to defend himself or his kindred. He has social habits; one hardly ever sees him rambling or solitary. He generally walks in company, the eldest leads the troop, the next in age drives them on, and follows behind; the young and the weak are in the midst of the others; the mothers carry their young ones, and hold them grasped with their trunks. They only observe this order in perilous marches, when they go to graze on cultivated lands. . . . It is only when they are provoked that they kill men; they do no harm to those who do not go after them; however, as they are sensitive and ticklish with regard to insults, it is advisable to avoid *encountering them* (*their encounter*).

Tableau des Prépositions anglaises et des différentes manières de les rendre en français.

ABOUT.

(1) = AROUND :—

Look **about** *you*	Regardez **autour de** vous; prenez garde **à** vous
To beat **about** *the bush*	Tourner **autour du** pot
Why keep such people **about** *you?*	Pourquoi garder de telles gens **auprès de** vous?
There is something **about** *him which displeases me.*	Il a quelque chose **en** lui, qui me déplaît.

(2) denoting NEARNESS in TIME and SPACE :—

He is **about** *ten years old*	Il a **environ** dix ans
It is **about** *noon*	Il est **vers** midi (L. circiter meridiem) Il s'en va midi
About *eight o'clock*	**Sur** les (**vers**) huit heures
I am (*I was*) **about to** *leave*	Je **vais** (j'**allais**) partir
About *nightfall*	**A** la nuit tombante (L. sub noctem)
Have you your knife **about** *you?*	Avez-vous votre couteau **sur** vous?

(3) = CONCERNING, WITH REGARD TO :—

What are you talking **about**?	**De** quoi parlez-vous?
What are you thinking **about**?	**A** quoi songez-vous?
I am uneasy **about** *him*	Je suis inquiet **sur** son compte

ABOVE.

(1) = HIGHER THAN, MORE THAN, UPWARDS OF :—

2,000 *feet* **above** *the sea-level*	2,000 pieds **au-dessus du** niveau de la mer
Above *his reach*	**Au-dessus de** sa portée
That is **above** *my strength*	Cela est **au-dessus de** mes forces
Dukes are **above** *earls*	Les ducs sont **au-dessus des** comtes
Above *an hour*	**Plus d'**une heure
Above *mentioned*	**Ci-dessus** mentionné

(2) figuratively = BETTER THAN :—

He is **above** *such dealings*	Il se respecte trop pour en agir ainsi

AFTER.

(1) with respect to TIME, PLACE, ORDER, RANK :—

After *noon ;* **after** *a time*	**Après** midi ; **au bout de** quelque temps
Day **after** *day*	**De** jour **en** jour
The day **after**	Le lendemain
Let us breakfast, **after which** *we will start*	Déjeunons, **après quoi** nous nous mettrons en route.

(2) = FROM, ACCORDING TO :—

After *nature*	**D'après** nature
He **takes after** *his mother*	Il **tient de** sa mère
After *the French fashion*	**À** la (mode) française
N.B.—**After** *having said that* (§ 85)	**Après** avoir dit cela

AT.

(1) TIME WHEN, PLACE WHERE :—

At *noon ; all* **at** *once*	**À** midi ; tout **à** la fois
At *what time ?*	**À** quelle heure ?
At *first ;* **at** *last*	**D'**abord ; **en**fin (à la fin)
At *the same time*	**En** même temps
At *London ;* **at** *home*	**À** Londres ; **à** la maison (**chez** moi, *etc.*)
At *school ;* **at** *church*	**À** l'école ; **à** l'église
At *sea ;* **at** *hand*	**Sur** mer ; **sous** la main
He entered **at** *the window*	Il entra **par** la fenêtre
At *a fountain*	**Auprès d'**une fontaine

(2) = IN RESPECT OF :—

He is good **at** *husbandry*	Il s'entend (se connaît) **en** agriculture
To play **at** *cards*	Jouer **aux** cartes
A game **at** *billiards*	Une partie **de** billard

BEFORE (see also Syntax, § 111)

(1) in TIME, RANK, ORDER :—

Before *ten o'clock*	**Avant** dix heures
The day **before** *yesterday*	**Avant** hier
In English the adjective is put **before** *the noun*	En anglais l'adjectif se place **avant** le substantif

(2) in PLACE :—

Before *the house*	**Devant** la maison
Before *my eyes*	**Sous** mes yeux
(Law) *To appear* **before** *the judge*	Comparaître **par-devant** le juge
N.B.—(*a*) *A year* **before** (adverb)	Un an **auparavant**
(*b*) **Before** *you go there* (conjunction)	**Avant d'**y aller, *or* **avant que** vous y alliez (see § 85)

BY.

(1) indicating NEIGHBOURHOOD, NEARNESS :—

By *the fire ;* **by** *the wayside*	**Près du** feu ; **sur** le bord de la route
Sit **by** *me ; close* **by**	Assieds-toi **à côté de** moi ; tout **près**
I have none **by** *me*	Je n'en ai pas **sur** moi

(2) indicating TIME :—

By *day ;* **by** *night* (Syntax, § 19)	**De** jour ; **de** nuit (L. de nocte)
By *the end of the week,*	**Vers** la fin de la semaine
By *this ;* **by** *this time twelve-months*	**A** ce moment ; **d'**ici à un an

(3) denoting INSTRUMENT, MEDIUM, WAY, etc. :—

By *post ;* **by** *this means*	**Par** la poste ; **par** ce moyen
By *land and* **by** *water*	**Par** terre et **par** eau
By *steamer*	**Par** le bateau à vapeur
By *passenger* (*luggage*) *train*	**Par** train de grande (petite) vitesse
To know **by** *name,* **by** *sight*	Connaître **de** nom, **de** vue
He is known **by** *that name*	Il est connu **sous** ce nom-là
By *word of mouth*	**De** vive voix (L. vivâ voce)
It is six **by** *my watch*	Il est six heures **à** ma montre
To live **by** *one's wits*	Vivre **d'**industrie (comp. chevalier d'industrie)
To judge **by** *his appearance*	À en juger **d'après** son air
You will gain nothing **by** *it*	Vous n'**y** gagnerez rien
He is a baker **by** *trade*	Il est boulanger **de** son état
To sell **by** *pounds ;* **by** *weight*	Vendre **à** la livre ; **au** poids
By *the week* (see Syntax, § 13, (*a*), Obs.)	**À** la semaine

N.B.—For rendering **by** after a Verb in the Passive Voice, see Syntax, § 16, (*c*), Obs. 1.

(4) denoting COMPARISON, PROPORTION (see Lesson 13):—

Older **by** *ten years*	Plus âgé (mon, ton, *etc.*, aîné) **de** dix ans
Five yards **by** *six*	Cinq mètres **sur** six
By *far; less* **by** *half*	**De** beaucoup; moindre **de** la moitié

FOR.

(1) = INSTEAD OF, IN EXCHANGE:—

He offered me a pound **for** *my dog*	Il m'offrit vingt-cinq francs **de** (**pour**) mon chien
That will serve me **for** *a blanket*	Cela me servira **de** couverture
In reward **for** *his services*	En récompense **de** ses services
This word is often used **for** *another*	Ce mot s'emploie souvent **pour** tel autre

(2) = IN BEHALF OF, FOR THE SAKE OF:—

To die **for** *the fatherland*	Mourir **pour** la patrie
I have written it **for** *my pupils*	Je l'ai écrit **à l'intention de** mes élèves
For *example*, **for** *instance*	**Par** exemple

(3) = CONCERNING, ABOUT, AS REGARDS, WITH RESPECT TO:—

As **for** *me* (**for** *my part*)	**Quant à** moi
Were it not (*but*) **for** *him*	**Sans** lui, *or* N'était lui
For *beauty she excels them all*	**En** beauté elle les surpasse toutes
So much **for him**	Voilà **pour ce qui le concerne**
For *all I know*	**Que** je sache

(4) = BECAUSE OF, OUT OF:—

He cannot contain himself **for** *joy*	Il ne se sent pas **de** joie
For *fear of offending him*	**De** crainte de l'offenser
I am sorry **for** *it*	J'**en** suis fâché

(5) = FOR THE PURPOSE OF, BY WAY OF:—

He works **for** *his living*	Il travaille **pour** vivre
To provide stores **for** *the winter*	Faire des provisions **pour** l'hiver
I said it **for** *fun*	Je l'ai dit **pour** rire

(6) denoting FITNESS, MEETNESS:—

It is **for** *tyrants to fear*	C'est **aux** tyrans à trembler
It is not **for** *me to advise you*	Il ne m'**appartient** pas de vous donner des conseils
It was **for** *you to obey*	C'était votre **devoir** (à vous) d'obéir

(7) = AS, AS BEING, AS GOOD AS:—

They gave themselves up **for** *lost*	Ils se considérèrent **comme** perdus
Let this serve **for** *an example to you*	Que cela vous serve **d'**exemple

(8) = IN SPITE OF :—

For *all that*	**Malgré** tout cela
For *all that I could do*	**Quoi que** je pusse faire

(9) = BOUND FOR, DESTINED TO :—

We are going to leave **for** *Paris*	Nous allons partir **pour** Paris
They set sail **for** *America*	Ils firent voile **pour** l'Amérique
This ship is bound **for** *H.*	Ce vaisseau est en partance **pour** H.

(10) denoting PERIOD (TIME) TO COME :—

I am your friend **for** *life*	Je suis votre ami **pour** la vie
He is provided with linen and clothes **for** *a hundred years*	Il a du linge et des habits **pour** cent ans

N.B.—**For** denoting PERIOD, *past or pending*, is generally not rendered by **pour** :—

I have not seen him **for** *a long time*	**Il y a** longtemps **que** je ne l'ai vu
He has been playing **for this half** *hour.*	**Voilà** une demi-heure **qu'**il est **à** jouer
He only stayed **for** *a week*	Il ne s'arrêta que **(pendant)** une semaine
We have watched him **for** *hours*	Nous l'avons regardé faire des heures **entières,** *or*
	Nous avons **passé** des heures **à** le regarder faire
He has been known **for** *many years*	On le connaît **depuis** bien des années

(11) = REGARD BEING HAD TO, THAN THAT :—

This coat is very warm **for** *the season*	Cet habit est bien chaud **pour la** saison
***You** have rendered me too many services* **for** *me ever to doubt of your friendship.*	Vous m'avez rendu trop de services **pour** que je puisse jamais douter de votre amitié
He is very ignorant **for** *one who has studied so long*	Il est bien ignorant **pour** avoir étudié si longtemps

FROM.

(1) = AWAY FROM :—

From *Paris to Lyons ; I come* **from there**	**De** Paris à Lyon ; j'**en** viens
From *door to door*	**De** porte en porte
They took several banners **from** *the enemy*	Ils prirent plusieurs bannières **sur** l'ennemi
We don't gather figs **from** *thistles*	On ne cueille pas des figues **sur** des épines
He was **from home**	Il était **sorti**

(2) = DOWN FROM :—

He looked **from** *the hill*	Il regarda **du haut de** la colline

(3) = ON THE PART OF :—

Greet him **from** *me*	Saluez-le **de** ma **part**
Have you **heard from** *him?*	Avez-vous **eu de ses nouvelles?**
I have not heard **from home**	Je n'ai pas eu de nouvelles **de chez moi**

(4) = ACCORDING TO, AFTER :—

To draw **from** *nature*	Dessiner **d'après** nature
From *what I can see*	**D'après** ce que je puis voir

(5) = OUT OF, BECAUSE OF :—

He did it **from** *ignorance*	Il le fit **par** ignorance
I speak **from** *my heart*	Je parle **du** cœur

(6) = SINCE, FROM THE TIME OF :—

From *his infancy*	**Depuis (dès)** sa jeunesse
From *time* (*day*) *to time* (*day*)	**De** temps (jour) en temps (jour)
From *this day* **henceforward**	**À partir d'**aujourd'hui
On and from *the* 1*st of July*	**À partir du** premier juillet

N.B.—**From** after Verbs of *Taking, Removing*, etc., is, according to Syntax, § 12, (*b*), generally rendered by **à**; if followed by a Personal Pronoun, by the Indirect Objective case :—

They took his watch **from** *him*	On **lui** prit sa montre

IN.

(1) = INSIDE, INTO (after Verbs of *Motion*), PLACE WHERE, TIME WHEN :—

(*a*) *before Nouns qualified by an Article, Adjective, or Pronoun* (see §§ 109, 110).

In *this house* (*town*)	**Dans** cette maison (**ville**)
In *Southern France*	**Dans** la France méridionale, *or* **dans** le midi de la France
In *the prison of Saint-Mazas*	**Dans** la prison de Saint-Mazas
In *the winter of* 1812	**Dans** l'hiver de 1812
In *the Crimean War*	**Dans** la guerre de Crimée
In *a month* (*fortnight*)	**Dans** un mois (quinze jours)

(*b*) *before Nouns not qualified by any Determinative Article, Adjective, etc.* :—

In *town; in France*	**En** ville; **en** France
In *prison;* **in** *winter;* **in** *times of war*	**En** prison; **en** hiver; **en** guerre
In *a month's time*	**En** un mois

(*c*) *before Names of Towns, Villages, Localities, etc.* :—

In *Paris;* **in** *Dom Remy*	**À** Paris; **à** Dom Remy
In *the first floor*	**Au** premier étage
In *the kitchen, garden,* etc.	**À** la cuisine, **au** jardin, *etc.*
She laughed **in** *his face*	Elle lui rit **au** nez
Sword **in** *hand*	L'épée **à la** main

(*d*) *after a Superlative* :—

The finest house **in** *the town*	La plus belle maison **de** la ville

(*e*) = DURING :—

In *this bad weather*	**Par** ce mauvais temps, *or* **par** le mauvais temps qu'il fait
In *these times*	**Par** le temps qui court

(*f*) = UNDER :—

In *the reign of William the Third*	**Sous** le règne de Guillaume III
In *the press*	**Sous** presse

(2) = WITH RESPECT TO, ACCORDING TO :—

Sound **in** *body and mind*	Sain **de** corps et **d'**esprit
In *this manner ; the manner* **in which**	**De** cette manière ; la manière **dont**
In *a quiet tone*	**D'**un air tranquille
In *my opinion*	**À** mon avis

(3) denoting PROPORTION :—

One **in** *a thousand*	Un **sur** mille
Nine times **in** *ten*	Neuf fois **sur** dix

N.B.—For **in** followed by a *Present Participle* rendered by **à** followed by an Infinitive, see § 84, (*b*), 2.

OF.

N.B.—For **of** answering to **de**, see §§ 14–19; in Compound Nouns, § 6.

(1) = BEYOND, ABOVE :—

I dislike them **of** *all things*	Je les déteste **par-dessus** tout

(2) denoting QUALIFICATION :—

Doctor **of** *law ; student* **of** *medecine*	Docteur **en** droit ; étudiant **en** médecine

(3) denoting POSSESSION :—

A friend **of** *mine*	Un ami **à** moi.
That is no business **of** *yours*	Cela ne vous ne regarde pas.

(4) denoting TIME :—

He used to come **of an** *evening*	Il venait **le** soir (see Syntax, § 10)

(5) = ABOUT, AMONG :—

Think **of** *him ; think* **of it**	Pensez **à** lui ; songez-**y**
Several **of** *them*	Plusieurs **parmi** eux

(6) = ON THE PART OF :—

It is not nice **of** *him to have acted thus*	Ce n'est pas gentil **à** lui d'avoir agi ainsi

OFF.

A mile **off** *the coast*	À un mille **de** la côte
The ship lay **off** *Dover*	Le vaisseau était **à la hauteur** de Douvres
Dido dined, it is said, **off** *the back of a fat turkey*	"Didon dîna, dit-on, **du** dos d'un dodu dindon"
To play **off hand**	Jouer **à livre ouvert**

ON, UPON.

(1) denoting POSITION ABOVE :—

On (upon) *the table*	**Sur** la table
*Frankfort-***on***-the-Main*	Francfort-**sur**-le-Mein
A ring **on the** *finger*	Un anneau **au** doigt
On *our knees*	**À** genoux
On *board a ship*	**À** bord d'un vaisseau
On *horseback ;* **on** *foot*	**À** cheval ; **à** pied

(2) denoting POSITION, NEARNESS, DIRECTION, etc. :—

On *the right side*	**À** droite ; **du** côté droit.
On *the left side.*	À gauche ; **du** côté gauche.
On *this side.*	**De** ce côté-ci.

(3) denoting TIME, DATES, CIRCUMSTANCES, OCCASION, etc. :—

On *the 30th of June*	Le 30 juin (see Syntax, § 10)
On *Monday next*	Lundi prochain
On *a dark night*	**Par** une nuit sombre
On *his arrival*	**À** son arrivée
On *being told*	**Lorsqu**'on lui dit
She has company **on** *Mondays and Thursdays*	Elle reçoit les lundis et les jeudis

(4) used figuratively :—

On *moderate terms*	**À** un prix modéré
On *certain conditions*	**À** de certaines conditions
On *the contrary ;* **on** *the watch*	**Au** contraire ; **aux** aguets
On *his account*	**À** cause de lui
On *a mission ;* **on** *a visit*	**En** mission ; **en** visite
I come **on** *business*	Je viens **pour** affaires
To set out **on** *an expedition*	Partir **pour** une expédition
On *no account*	Pas **pour** tout au monde
Upon *my word of honour*	**Sur** ma parole d'honneur
On *the alert* (*one's guard*)	**Sur** le qui-vive (**sur** ses gardes)
To be **on** *duty*	Être **de** service

N.B.—With names of—

(1) *Titles, headings :* **On Usury**	**De** l'Usure
(2) *Instruments : To play* **on** *the flute*	Jouer **de** la flute (see § 16, (*c*))

OUT OF.

(1) = OUTSIDE, WITHOUT :—

He ran **out of** *the house*	Il courut **hors de** la maison
To throw **out of** *doors*	Mettre **à** la porte

(2) = THROUGH, ACROSS :—

She looks **out of** *the window*	Elle regarde **par** la fenêtre
To be **out of** *a situation*	Être **sans** place
He is **out of** *temper*	Il est **hors de** lui
Out of *reach* (*breath*)	**Hors de** portée (d'haleine)
Out of *season ;* **out of** *fashion*	**Hors de** saison ; **passé de** mode
Out of *print ;* **out of** *time*	Épuisé ; en retard

(3) = FROM OUT :—

To get **out of** *the scrape*	Se tirer **d'**embarras
Out of 500, 50 *were killed*	**Sur** 500 combattants, il y en eut 50 de tués
He drank **out of** *my glass*	Il but **dans** mon verre

(4) = ON ACCOUNT OF :—

Out of *spite* (*cowardice*)	**Par** dépit (lâcheté)
Out of *fun* (*fear*)	**Par** plaisanterie (peur)

OVER.

(1) after Verbs of *Motion :*—

The dog leapt **over** *the chair.*	Le chien sauta **par-dessus** la chaise
To wander **over** *the earth*	Errer **par** (**par**courir) toute la terre
I have looked **over** *the letter*	J'ai **par**couru la lettre
Over *hill and dale*	**Par** monts et **par** vaux
To **swim over** *a river*	**Traverser** une rivière **à la nage**

(2) after Verbs of *Rest :*—

Watch **over** *him*	Veillez **sur** lui
To reign **over** *a people*	Régner **sur** un peuple
See that cloud **over** *us*	Voyez ce nuage **au-dessus** de nous
He lives **over** *the river*	Il demeure **de l'autre côté de** la rivière
Over *the hills*	**Par delà** les montagnes
He lives **over the way**	Il demeure **vis-à-vis (en face)**
I shall not stay **over** *the week*	Je ne resterai pas **au delà de** la semaine
Over *night ;* **over and above**	**Pendant** la soirée ; **en sus**

THROUGH.

(1) = ACROSS, ATHWART, VIÂ :—

He cut his way **through** *the enemy*	Il se fit jour **à travers (au travers de)** l'ennemi
In going to Paris, I passed **through** *Rouen*	En allant à Paris, je passai **par** Rouen

(2) = BECAUSE OF, OWING TO, THANKS TO :—

Through *neglect*	**Par** négligence
It is **through** *him that I obtained it*	C'est **grâce à** lui que je l'ai obtenu

TILL, UNTIL.

Till *to-morrow*	**Jusqu'**à demain, **d'ici à** demain
It was **not until** *then*	Ce **ne** fut **qu'**alors
Not until *this evening*	**Pas avant** ce soir

N.B.—**Till,** conjunction :—

Stay **till** *he returns*	Attendez **jusqu'à ce qu'**il revienne

TO.

N.B.—For **to** answering to the French **à,** see §§ 11–13.

(1) denoting MOTION TOWARDS, *before names of countries used indeterminately* :—

To go **to** *England*	Aller **en** Angleterre
From door **to** *door*	De porte **en** porte

N.B.—Before names of *towns, villages,* etc., see **in = à** (p. 181).

(2) = AS FAR AS :—

Read **to** *the end of the chapter*	Lisez **jusqu'à** la fin du chapitre
***Count* to** *a hundred.*	Comptez **jusqu'à** cent
To go **to the** *church*	Aller **jusqu'à l'**église
To go **to** *church*	Aller **à l'**église

(3) = TOWARDS : (*a*) *Motion* (see Syntax, § 13, (*c*) :—

Raise your eyes **to** *heaven*	Levez les yeux **vers** le ciel
The way **to** *Passy*	Le chemin **de** Passy
A quarter **to** *twelve*	Midi **moins** un quart

(*b*) *Feeling, Disposition* :—

Be charitable **to** *the poor*	Soyez charitables **envers** les pauvres
A traitor **to** *his country*	Traître **envers** sa patrie

(4) = AGAINST :—

To bet ten **to** *one*	Parier dix **contre** un

(5) = CONCERNING :—

As to *that affair*	**Quant à** cette affaire

(6) = ACCORDING TO, IN ACCORDANCE WITH :—

To *my mind*	**Selon** moi

(7) denoting APPOINTMENT :—

Physician **to** *the king*	Médecin **du** roi
Heir **to** *the crown*	Héritier **de** la couronne

(8) = COMPARED WITH :—

He is a fool **to** *her*	C'est un sot **comparé à (auprès d')** elle

(9) = TOGETHER WITH, ALONG WITH :—

She sings **to** *the guitar*	Elle chante **avec accompagnement de** la guitare

TOWARDS (comp. Syntax, § 115).

(1) = IN THE DIRECTION OF :—

The child ran **towards** *the door*	L'enfant courut **vers** la porte

(2) denoting TIME APPROACHING :—

Towards *the end of the year*	**Vers** la fin de l'année

(3) denoting FEELING, DISPOSITION (comp. **to**, 3, (*b*)) :—

Pious **towards** *God*	Pieux **envers** Dieu

UNDER.

(1) = BELOW, BENEATH, literally UNDERNEATH :—

Under *my roof*	**Sous** mon toit
He carried a parcel **under** *his arm*	Il portait un paquet **sous** le bras

(2) used figuratively :—

Under *the penalties of the law*	**Sous** les peines de droit
To be **under** *the necessity of*	Se trouver **dans** la nécessité de
To be **under** *discussion*	Être **en** discussion
Under *the present circumstances*	**Dans** l'état de choses actuel
To be under *the ministry of*	**Relever du** ministère de
To get **under** *weigh*	Lever l'ancre
Under *age*	Mineur

(3) = LESS THAN :—

All men **under** *seventy*	Tous les hommes **au-dessous de** soixante-dix ans
I shall not sell it **under** *a thousand pounds.*	Je ne le vendrai **à moins de** mille livres

WITH.

(1) = TOGETHER WITH, ALONG WITH, ATTENDED BY :—

Come **with** *me*	Venez **avec** moi
The general started **with** *ten thousand men*	Le général partit **avec** dix mille hommes

(2) denoting the MATERIAL or INSTRUMENT :—

To pave **with** *bricks*	Carreler **avec** de la brique
To write **with** *a pen*	Écrire **avec** une plume

(3) denoting the MANNER (comp., however, very carefully, Syntax, §§ 16 and 19) :—

To defend one's self **with** *courage*	Se défendre **avec** courage
With *all my heart*	**De** tout mon cœur (L. ex animo)

(4) denoting an ACCESSORY CIRCUMSTANCE or CHARACTERISTIC FEATURE :—

With *tears in his eyes*	Les larmes aux yeux
The man **with** *the red nose*	L'homme **au** nez rouge

(5) = AT THE HOUSE (HOME) OF, IN POSSESSION OF :—

How is it **with** *you?*	Comment cela va-t-il **chez** vous?
Such was the custom **with** *the Romans*	Telle était la coutume **chez** les Romains
I left the book **with** *him*	J'ai laissé le livre **entre** ses mains

(6) = IN THE MIND OF :—

These considerations had their weight **with** *the minister*	Ces considérations eurent leur poids **auprès du** ministre

(7) denoting MEASURE, FULNESS :—

Supplied (*replete, filled, covered,* etc.) **with**	Fourni, pourvu (rempli, couvert, *etc.*) **de**

(8) denoting CAUSE, FEELING :—

To blush **with** *shame*	Rougir **de** honte
To be satisfied **with**	Être content (satisfait) **de**

(9) = WITH REGARD (RESPECT) TO, WITH REFERENCE TO :—

It is all over **with** *him*	C'en est fait **de** lui
Matters were changed **with** *him*	Les choses étaient bien changées **pour** lui

46. Quarante-sixième Leçon: Prépositions.—Syntaxe, §§ 109–118.

Thème.

1. By dint of reading, writing, and speaking, one learns a foreign language. 2. I have not this sum about me, but you may receive it this very day at my house. 3. Towards eleven o'clock in the evening the steamer left the harbour and steered for the north. 4. We did not want to look out of the window lest it should be remarked that we were at home, but we could observe through the window panes all that was going on. 5. In Southern Italy the heat is often so unbearable in summer that people take their walks in the evening and at night, while they sleep during the day. 6. Peter the Great took Narva by storm, after a regular siege, and after having prevented it from being relieved by sea or by land. 7. I am not nearly so rich as he. 8. Some soldiers hastened to Leonidas, and told him, "The Persians are near us." He replied coolly, "Say rather that we are near them." 9. With regard to the letter that you have written to me, I am happy to be able to comply with your wishes. 10. That is beside the question. 11. The bird was so tame that it used to eat out of my hand. 12. It is for the master to speak, and for the pupil to listen. 13. The condition of actors was [considered] infamous among the Romans, and honourable among the Greeks. 14. If you call on him to-morrow, you will find him at home from morning until evening.

Composition.

Journey from Tripolizza to Misitra.—We continued our journey between the north and west. After having walked for three hours over half cultivated lands, we entered a desert which only terminated at the valley of Laconia. The dried-up bed of a torrent served us instead of a road; we wended our way along it in a labyrinth of low mountains, all resembling each other, offering everywhere nothing but bare summits and slopes covered with a kind of green dwarf oak with holly leaves. On the border of this dried-up torrent, and nearly in the centre of those hillocks, we found a kan shaded by two plane-trees, and kept cool by a little well. We allowed our beasts to take rest: we had been riding for ten hours. We found *in the way of* (= *for all*) food nothing but goat's milk and a few almonds. We resumed our journey before sunset, and we stopped at eleven o'clock in the evening in a glen on the border of another torrent which still contained some water.

47. Quarante-septième Leçon : Conjonctions.—Syntaxe, §§ 119, 120. Consulter aussi § 85.

Thème.

1. I have seen neither your brother nor your sister, I said to him. Nor have I either, replied he. 2. If any one comes this evening and I am out tell him that I shall return to-morrow. 3. He never undertakes a journey but some accident happens to him. 4. He had no sooner said it when he repented of it. 5. As it was late, and as one was afraid of nightfall, it was decided not to proceed. 6. When the traveller had rested, when the rain had ceased, and the storm had abated, he prepared to set out. 7. Why did you not say that at once?—The fact is, I did not know whether you cared to know it. 8. I cannot speak but he interrupts me. 9. If men were wise, and if they followed the dictates of reason, they would spare themselves many sorrows. 10. The sun appears to move because we turn every day with the earth round its axis. Consequently, in saying, "The sun is rising," "The sun is setting," we expres ourselves incorrectly. But as we are accustomed to speak thus, and as everybody understands the meaning of it, it is useless to alter this turn of expression.

Composition.

Mary Stuart at Fotheringay.—Poor Queen Mary in her gloomy prison of Fotheringay was far from expecting the storm [which was] about to burst upon her when one day she saw several lords of the court of Elizabeth arrive at the castle, who announced to her that they were coming to try her on the charge of having conspired against the life of the queen. She at first declined to reply to judges who had no right to examine her, since she was Queen of Scotland, and not a subject of the Queen of England. However, still flattering herself (for the unfortunate never renounce hope) that it would be easy for her to justify herself, she consented at last to yield to their solicitations ; but she soon perceived that it was to enemies, and not to upright judges, that she was expected to reply. The lords retired without hearing her justification, and she understood then that her ruin was decided. In fact, a few days had elapsed since these iniquitous judges had returned to London when one of them came back to Fotheringay to announce to Mary that Parliament had begged Queen Elizabeth to put her to death because her existence was obnoxious to the welfare of the English Church, and that this sovereign, although with regret, had been compelled to comply with their wishes, in order to dispel the fears of her subjects.

48. Quarante-huitième Leçon : Construction.— Syntaxe, §§ 121-124.

THÈME.

1. Suddenly there arose a violent storm, which dispersed our vessels. 2. If he is not very rich, he has at any rate enough to live upon. 3. His piety and his humanity won for him more admiration than his great talents had done. 4. Of whom has your master been speaking? 5. How many years did the Wars of the Roses last? 6. How sad the first days must have appeared to you which followed upon the death of that beloved sister. 7. How frightened I am! 8. How cold your hands are! 9. What a sweet remembrance I have of my pretty birthplace! 10. I do not know whether I am to trust my eyes; do I sleep, or am I awake? 11. *It may be* (= *perhaps*) that Livia was innocent of the death of the grandsons of Augustus; at any rate, no certain proof of her guilt can be found. 12. "I die innocent," said Louis the Sixteenth on the scaffold, "and you, unfortunate people!" . . . . in vain he wished to continue—the beating of drums drowned his voice. 13. Follow the advice of those who tell you the truth. 14. The emperor's army gave up to the enemy the intrenchments which it had erected with so much toil. 15. It is a bad habit always to contradict. 16. If you love peace, never speak of *those* (= *the*) absent except to speak well of them.

DIALOGUE ENTRE HARPAGON ET DORANTE.

Dorante. Non, je ne puis goûter vos raisons ; ce ne sont que de vains prétextes, par lesquels vous voulez m'éblouir, et vous délivrer de mes remontrances. Votre manière de vivre n'est pas soutenable.

Harpagon. Vous en parlez bien à votre aise, vous qui ne vous êtes point marié, et qui êtes sans suite : j'ai des enfants, je veux me faire aimer d'eux en leur amassant du bien, et leur donnant moyen de mener une vie heureuse.

Dorante. Vous voulez, dites-vous, vous faire aimer de vos enfants ?

Harpagon. Oui, sans doute ; et je leur en donne un sujet bien fort en me refusant pour eux les choses les plus nécessaires.

Dorante. Si vous avez envie de vous faire haïr d'eux, vous ne pouvez pas prendre une plus sûre voie.

Harpagon. Ah ! il faudrait qu'ils fussent les plus dénaturés des hommes : un père qui n'envisage qu'eux, qui se compte pour rien, qui renonce à toutes les commodités à toutes les douceurs de la vie !

Dorante. Seigneur Harpagon, j'ai autre chose à vous dire : mais je crains de vous fâcher.

Composition.

1. Philip, King of Macedonia, as clever as he was brave, availed himself so well of the advantages that a small but united kingdom, in which the royal power was absolute, gave him over so many divided towns and republics that in the end, partly by skill, partly by force, he made himself the strongest [man] in Greece, and compelled all the Greeks to march under his standards against the common enemy.

2. Peter of Amiens presented to Pope Urban II. the petitions which the patriarch of Jerusalem, a great many Christians of that city, and numerous pilgrims had given him. He made of the misery of the Christians a description which foreign reports, his own experience, and his enthusiastic desire of delivering Jerusalem had inspired with him.

3. On the 11th of January, 1557, [there] died at Lisbon John III., king of Portugal. It was to the lot of a prince three years old, called Sebastian, that the crown of Portugal had fallen by this event. Hardly was the young prince of age when he announced a campaign against the Moors. Muley-Mahomet, who had been driven out by one of his relatives, had applied to Sebastian for help. In vain did his counsellors and even the king of Spain represent to the young monarch that such an expedition was a dangerous, nay, even a rash enterprise; Sebastian was deaf to all entreaties and warnings.

After great preparations, he crossed over to Africa with his army. On the 4th of August, 1578, the Portuguese army met the enemy in the plain of Alcassar. A stifling heat prevailed on that day. Besides, the Portuguese were during the battle more inconvenienced by the sun and dust than their adversaries. After a frightful combat, their army was completely beaten and dispersed by the Moors.

VOCABULARY, NOTES, ETC.,

TO THE

EXERCISES AND COMPOSITIONS.

N.B.—1. *Words identical in the two languages and those already given in the First or Second Year of this Course are purposely omitted.*

2. *For grammatical difficulties not explained here, the student is referred to the Alphabetical Index at the end of this book.*

3. *The numbers refer to the sections* (§) *in the Syntax.*

I.

THÈME.

1 **bee,** *l'abeille*, f.
emblem, *l'emblème*, m.
foresight, *la prévoyance*
2 **to undertake,** *entreprendre*
to make one's self master, *se rendre maître*
brute, *la bête*
to succeed in, *réussir à* (not *succéder*, which means "**to be the successor**")
sometimes ... sometimes, *tantôt.. tantôt*
skill, *l'adresse*, f.
3 **west,** *l'ouest*, m.
to inhabit, *habiter*
Sicily, *la Sicile*
Sardinia, *la Sardaigne*
Iceland, *l'Islande*, f.
Newfoundland, *la Terre-Neuve*
renowned, *renommé*
cod fishery, *la pêche de la morue* (*des morues*)
south, *le sud, le midi*
Japan, *le Japon*
4 **idleness,** *la paresse*
ruling, *dominant*
tyrant, *le tyran*

GALLICISMES.

1 **qu'est-ce que c'est que...?** *what is...?*
2 **il se dit de,** *it is used of; it is applied to*
3 **tenir de,** *to be peculiar to*

COMPOSITION.

1 **celebrated,** *célèbre* (not *célébré*)
in his agony, *à l'agonie*
surrounded by, *entouré de*
loss, *la perte*
behind, here—*après*
to fancy, *s'imaginer, se figurer*
fancied he was, say—*thought* [*to*] *be*
to press, *presser*

to name, *nommer*
diet, *la diète*
2 **to look upon,** *regarder*
age, *le temps, le siècle*
depositary, *le dépositaire*
event, *l'événement*, m.
witness, *le témoin*
counsel, *le conseil*
manners, *les mœurs*
confined within, *renfermé dans*
limit, *la borne*
in which, *où ;* see § 47
encompassed within, *resserré dans*
narrow, *étroit*
circle, *le cercle*
individual, *individuel*
own, *propre*
to remain, *demeurer, rester*
kind, *l'espèce*, f.
to leave, *laisser*
with regard to, *à l'égard de*
world, *l'univers*, m.
everything that, *tout ce qui*
to surround, *environner*

2.

THÈME.

1 **food,** *la nourriture*
2 **rashness,** *la témérité*
whilst, *tandis que*
to treat, *traiter de*
caution, *la précaution*
cowardice, *la lâcheté*
3 **common sense,** *le sens commun, le bon sens*
good will, *la bonne volonté*
to overcome, *surmonter*
4 **Christopher Columbus,** *Christophe Colomb*
to struggle with, *lutter contre*
to discover, *découvrir*
5 **never did a nation prepare,** say—*never nation prepared*
to carry on, *faire*
boldness, *l'audace*, f.
6 **pack of cards,** *le jeu de cartes*
to use, *se servir de*
when, here—*autant que*
to win, *gagner*
7 **to sow,** *semer*
among, *parmi*
thorn, *l'épine*, f.
8 **it is not,** say—*this is not ;* see § 40
to ask for, *demander*
advice, *le conseil*
disinterested, *désintéressé*
such as, *tels que*
a right to, *le droit de*
to expect, *attendre*
the good, *le bien*
9 **to fight a battle,** *livrer une bataille*
forced march, *la marche forcée*
to subdue, *soumettre*
laurel, *le laurier*
to avenge, *venger*
10 **kind,** *la sorte*
politeness, *la politesse*
intercourse, *le commerce*
respectable people, *les honnêtes gens*
to teach how to joke, *faire entendre la raillerie à*
to prevent from, *empêcher de*
to shock, *choquer*
way of speaking, *la façon (manière) de parler*

GALLICISMES.

1 **en être à,** *to have got to (as far as)*
2 **pas mal de,** *not a few*
en répondre, *to warrant*
3 **changer d'avis,** *to change one's mind*
4 **vous y êtes,** *you have hit it*
pour surcroît d'embarras, *to make matters worse*
brisons-là ! *enough !*

COMPOSITION.

to enter, *entrer dans, pénétrer au-dedans*
in it, *y ;* see § 33
foundation, *le fondement*
to lay, *poser*
high, *élevé*

to meet with, *rencontrer*
stairs, *l'escalier*, m.
step (of stairs), *la marche*
evidently, *visiblement*
to ascend, *monter*
N.B.—When **to** means **in order to,** render it by *pour*
lock, *la serrure*
to be able, *pouvoir*
chimney, *la cheminée*
inconvenienced by, *incommodé de*
smoke, *la fumée*
to sleep in, here—*s'y coucher*
never will, etc., see Thème, 5th sentence, **never did a nation**
sensible, *sensé* (not *sensible*, which means **sensitive, perceptible**)
to take it into his head, *s'aviser de*
furniture, *les meubles, le mobilier*
was built, etc., say—*has built and arranged itself of itself*
symmetry, *la symétrie*
design (plan), *le dessein*
the whole work, *tout l'ouvrage*, m.
to forbid, *ne permettre point de*
to attribute, *attribuer*
blind, *aveugle*
hazard, *le hasard*
the whole world, *le monde entier*
it would be then obstinately blinding one's self, say—*this would be then* [*to*] *blind one's self by obstinacy*
to recognise, *reconnaître*
all-powerful, *tout-puissant*
to shape, *former*

3.

THÈME.

1 **small in extent,** *de peu d'étendue*
to make, followed by an Adj., *rendre*
linen, *la toile*
commodity, *la commodité, l'article de commerce*
deserved, *mérité*
2 **brazen,** *d'airain*
3 **sensitive,** *délicat*
to bear, *supporter*
4 **steam engine,** *la machine à vapeur*
paramount, *très grand, capital, premier*
especially on account of, *surtout par*
5 **nay even,** *même*
thatched roof, *le toit de chaume*
marble, Adj., *de marbre*
6 **good, goodness,** *le bien*
fuss, *le bruit*
just as, *comme, tout comme*
7 **to make fun of,** *se moquer de*
self-love, *l'amour propre*, m.
on that score, *à cet égard*
to know how to take a joke, *entendre raillerie* (*entendre la raillerie*, **to know how to joke**)
8 **let,** *loué*
there is not...left, *il ne reste...*
not a single, *pas un seul*
apartment, *la pièce, chambre, le logement* (not *appartement*, which means a "**suite of rooms**")
9 **welcome,** *le bienvenu.*
10 **last,** see § 23

GALLICISMES.

1 **comment se fait-il**? *how is it that?*
se plaire à, *to take pleasure in*
à l'appui de, *in support of*
renvoyer, *to refer to*
venir de, *to have just*
2 **vous en parlez à votre aise,** *it is all very well for you to talk*
comment voulez-vous que je? *how can you want me to?*
s'y prendre, *to set about*

s'y soumet qui veut, *every one is free to submit to it or not*
3 **valoir bien,** *to be as good as*

COMPOSITION.

spacious, *spacieux*
post, *le poteau*
hurdle, *la claie*
coated with, *revêtu de*
outside and inside, *en dehors et en dedans*
clay, *la terre battue, l'argile*
oak shingles, *les bardeaux de chêne*
with (after Verbs of *filling, covering,* as *couvrir, revêtir*), *de;* see § 16
cut, *haché*
kneaded with, *pétri dans*
serving for, *servant de*
seat, *le siége*
carpet, *le tapis*
sometimes, *parfois*
to appear much more strikingly, *apparaître bien mieux encore*
on the neck, etc., *au cou*
necklace, *le collier*
ring, *l'anneau,* m.
to sparkle (on), *étinceler* (*chez*)
everywhere, *de toutes parts*
renown, *le renom, la renommée*
to bedeck, *orner*
shield, *bouclier*
short cloak, *la saie*
thin, here—*léger*
according to, *suivant*
checked, *bariolé de carreaux*
with showy colours, *aux vives couleurs*
strewn with spangles, *semé de paillettes*
dazzling flower-work, *fleurons éclatants*

4.

THÈME.

1 **feature,** *le trait*
complexion, *le teint*
fine rosy, *beau et vermeil*
curly, *bouclé*
lofty, *haut*
proportioned, *proportionné*
2 **shepherd,** *le berger*
5 **to wish,** *souhaiter* (here not *désirer* nor *vouloir*)
6 **to manage,** *trouver moyen*
never did a general, see note to Lesson 2.
to watch with closer attention, *suivre avec plus d'attention*
7 **to charge,** *demander, prendre*
8 **to exclaim,** *s'écrier*
10 **eldest,** *l'aîné*
youngest, *le cadet*
sailor, *le matelot*

GALLICISMES.

1 **faire les premières avances,** *to take the first step*
cela n'est pas de refus, *that is not to be refused*
2 **beaucoup de monde,** *numerous company*
en petit comité, *with a few intimate friends*
4 **se faire valoir,** *to show one's self off; to maintain one's dignity*

COMPOSITION.

to quarrel with one another, *se disputer ensemble*
to surpass, *l'emporter sur;* use the Impf.; see § 68, Obs. 1
advancement, *le progrès*
it can easily be imagined, say—*one thinks well*
as far...as, *aussi...que*
that is to say, *c'est à dire*
which threatened to become somewhat bitter, *qui finissait par s'aigrir un peu*
for the rest, *du reste*

5.

THÈME.

1 **of which one cannot conceive an idea,** *dont on ne saurait se faire une idée*
3 **spectacles,** *les lunettes*, f.
case, *l'étui*, m.
4 **to supply with,** *pourvoir de*
crew, *l'équipage*, m.
6 **steward,** *l'intendant*, m.
7 **day,** use *journée*, f. (not *jour*)
to rest, *se reposer*
8 **partner,** *l'associé*, m.
there I am, *me voilà*
9 **what,** Adj., see § 51, (*a*)
to teach, *enseigner, apprendre*
10 **Cicero,** *Cicéron*

GALLICISMES.

1 **rouler sur,** *to turn on*
belle demande! *need you ask!*
voilà ce qui s'appelle, *that is what I call*
je n'en disconviens pas! *granted!*
faire de l'esprit, *to be witty*
en pure perte, *to no purpose*
tranchons le mot, *in plain English*

COMPOSITION.

fly, *la mouche*
hive, *la ruche*
what do you want? say—*what dost thou come* [*to*] *do?*
indeed, *vraiment*
it behoves me...to, *c'est bien à moi...à*
to mix with, *se mêler avec*
coolly, *froidement*
to approach, *s'approcher de*
fiery, *fougueux*
organised, *policé*
to feed on, *brouter*
fragrant, *odoriférant*
nothing but, *ne...que*
to be like, *égaler*
to take one's self off, *s'ôter de la présence de quelqu'un* (here—*de ma présence*)
ugly, *vilain*
importunate, *importun*
to do nothing but to hum, *ne faire que bourdonner*
to get one's living, *chercher sa vie*
dirt, *les ordures*, f.
as best we can, say—*as we can*
violent, *emporté*
behaviour, *la conduite*
to sting, *piquer*
mad, *fou, folle*
harm, *mal*, m.
any one else, *personne*
brilliant, *brillant, éclatant*
but more, say—*with more*

6.

THÈME.

1 **sea-coast,** *le littoral*
riches, *la richesse*
to be indebted for, *devoir*
scenery, *les beautés naturelles*
novelist, *le romancier*
2 **to disclose,** *faire découvrir*
to conceal, *cacher*
beam, *la poutre*
3 **to get...from,** *arracher...à*
4 **to borrow,** *emprunter*
most, *la plupart*
5 **Crœsus,** *Crésus*
people, *les gens*
surprised, *surpris*
model, *le modèle*
6 **to spend (time),** *passer,* **(money)** *dépenser*
chess, *les échecs*
7 **self-sacrifice,** *le dévouement* or *devoûment*
to save, *arracher*
subjection, *la sujétion, servitude*
8 **Cannæ,** *Cannes*
senate, *le sénat*
to go to meet, *aller à la rencontre de*
that one, *celui*
to survive, *survivre à*

defeat, *la défaite*
to despair of, *désespérer de*
safety, *le salut*
9 **priest,** *le prêtre*
to like, *vouloir*

GALLICISMES.

1 **de quoi s'agit-il?** *what is the talk about?*
tomber d'accord, *to agree*
2 **trève de,** *a truce to*
avoir la tête près du bonnet, *to be hot-headed*
en venir aux gros mots, *to come to high words*
le prendre bien haut, *to talk big*
n'y pas aller de main morte, *to strike hard*
s'y mettre, *to set about*
3 **frapper comme un sourd,** *to lay about unmercifully*
se traiter de, *to call each other*
le langage des halles, *Billingsgate language*

COMPOSITION.

1 **nobleman,** *le gentilhomme*
household, *la maison*
to ill-treat, *maltraiter*
of it, see § 32, (*b*)
to take away...from, *retrancher à*
to complain of, *se plaindre de*
dish, *le mets*
serve, suffice, was, in the Imperf.; see § 68, Obs. 1
principal food, *l'essentiel*, m.
sternly, *avec sévérité*
unreasonable enough, *assez peu raisonnable*
into your, say—*to you...to the*
2 **to have no message,** *n'avoir rien à faire dire*
to forbid to, *défendre de*
ever, *jamais*
to remember, *se souvenir de*

7.

THÈME.

1 **coffee-tree,** *le cafier,* or *caféier*
greyish, *grisâtre*
bark, *l'écorce*, f.
with glossy green foliage, say—*with the foliage of a green glossy*
glossy, *brillant, luisant*
foliage, *le feuillage*
tuft, *le bouquet*
jessamine, *le jasmin*
how, here—*combien*
2 **with her = to the historical associations,** *les souvenirs*, m.
3 **to walk about,** *se promener*
lantern, *la lanterne*
4 **fancy dress ball,** *le bal costumé*
to dress, here—*se costumer*
5 **it strikes me,** *il me semble que*
uneasy, *inquiet, mal à l'aise*
6 **right, left,** *la droite, la gauche*
bank (of a river), *le rivage, bord*
Sparta, *Sparte*
7 **to want,** *vouloir*
to borrow, *emprunter*
to apply to, *s'adresser à*
ever ready, *toujours prêt* (disposé)
need, *le besoin*
at a good interest, *à gros intérêt*
be it well understood, *bien entendu*
8 **old man,** *le vieillard*
heard say, *ouï dire à*
9 **to ravage with fire and sword,** *mettre à feu et à sang*
10 **are sold,** say—*sell themselves*
from hand to mouth, *au jour la journée*

GALLICISMES.

1 **faire bon accueil,** *to receive kindly, to welcome*

être d'un abord difficile, *to keep one's distance*
c'est ce qui vous trompe, *in that you are mistaken*
à telles enseignes, *so much so that*
se faire tirer l'oreille, *to hang back*
tout me sourit, *fortune smiles upon me*

COMPOSITION.

1 **by way of,** *à défaut de*
rather, *assez*
bullet, *la balle* (**ball,** *le boulet*)
to tie, *attacher*
string, *le cordon*
to inform, *instruire*
on the parade, *à la parade*
to show, *faire voir*
to refuse to, *se défendre de*
at first, *d'abord*
he had to comply, *force lui fut d'obéir*
to reply, *reprendre*
at any time, *à toute heure*
to pull out, *tirer de son gousset*
2 **every time,** *toutes les fois*
was, what was, *c'était*
to despatch, *envoyer*
on him, say—*to him*
never again, *ne plus jamais*

8.

THÈME.

1 **youth,** *la jeunesse*
old age, *la vieillesse*
recollection, *le souvenir*
2 **people,** see § 52
tablet, *la tablette*
to coat, *enduire*
wax, *la cire*
skin, *la peau*
3 **to derive,** *dériver*
some people, *certaines gens*
4 **pleasant,** *agréable*
by far, *de beaucoup*
5 **to use,** *se servir de*
to do without, *se passer de*
6 **English Channel,** *la Manche* (lit. *the sleeve,* from its shape)
7 **to have the head-ache,** *avoir mal à la tête*
8 **to occupy,** *occuper*
the space, *l'espace,* m.
to stretch, *s'étendre*
Jura mountains, *le Jura*
to fulfil, *remplir*
10 **shorter,** *abrégé*
work of sterling merit, *un chef-d'œuvre en son genre; une œuvre magistrale*
work, *l'ouvrage,* m.
11 **to be aware of,** *s'apercevoir de*
12 **to expect,** *s'attendre à*
reception, *l'accueil,* m.
to depend on, *dépendre de*

GALLICISMES.

1 **un moment d'entretien,** *a short audience*
2 **les bons offices,** *kind service*
un homme de bien, *worthy man*
ma...lui est acquise, *he may rely on my...*
3 **aller aux renseignements,** *to make inquiries*
faire fond sur, *to depend on*
faire la sourde oreille, *to turn a deaf ear*

COMPOSITION.

1 **to visit,** *voir*
to be present at, *assister à*
conversation, *l'entretien,* m.
enlightened, *éclairé*
able, *habile*
although, *quoique,* with Subj.
mind, *l'esprit,* m.
every kind of knowledge, *toutes les connaissances*
he preferred listening to talking, say—*he liked better* [*to*] *listen than to speak.*

to the point, *juste*
on great occasions, *dans les occasions d'éclat*
to be called on, *il s'agit de*
Polycletus, *Polyclète*
2 **out of all patience with,** *impatienté de*
would-be, *prétendu*
to work out, *travailler à*
he made two, but showed only one, see § 32, (*d*)
in public, *publiquement*
to touch up, *retoucher*
according to the liking of, *au gré de*
to criticise, *critiquer*
likely to, *digne de*
to exhibit, *exposer* (not *exhiber*, which is used of deeds, titles, documents, etc.)
again, *de nouveau*
gaze, *les regards*
to show, *présenter*
the latter, say—*this latter*
unanimously, *généralement*
to praise, here—*applaudir*
to despise, *mépriser*
your own, say—*yours*

9.

THÈME.

1 **German,** here—*Germain* (not *Allemand*)
warlike, *belliqueux*
talkative, *disert*
anxious to, *curieux de*
to talk, here—*dire*
2 **to beware of,** *se défier de*
3 **heartily,** *cordialement, de bon cœur*
bold, *hardi*
4 **horseman, rider,** *le cavalier*
being, *la créature*
but one, *ne...qu'un seul*
5 **arrival,** *l'arrivée*, f.
6 **to suffer a loss,** *faire* (*essuyer*) *une perte*
7 **a thrill of joy ran through the army,** say—*the army trembled of joy*
on seeing again, *en*, with Pres. Part.
to see again, *revoir*
9 **to take one's seat,** *s'asseoir*
10 **...is at stake,** *il y va de...*
it is all over with, *c'en est fait de.*

GALLICISMES.

1 **donner un coup d'œil,** *to cast a glance, to look through*
faire l'effet, *to give the impression, to look as if*
à coups de dictionnaire, *with the help of scissors and paste*
3 **trouver à redire à,** *to find fault with*
ne pas être sans savoir, *cannot but be aware*
dont il s'agit, *treated*
4 **est-ce à dire?** *am I to understand?*
faire défaut, *to be wanting*
ce qui pis est, *what is worse*

COMPOSITION.

1 **to congratulate on,** *féliciter de*
with which, see § 44, (*b*)
in, here—*en* with Pres. Part.
to brave, *braver*
to assist, *secourir*
to inherit, *hériter de*
magnanimity, *la grandeur d'âme*
5 **to hurry,** *marcher*
to make one's self master, *s'emparer de*
capture (of a town), *la prise*
threw ... into consternation, say—*threw the consternation among...*
husbandman, *le laboureur*
to handle, *conduire*
plough, *la charrue*
to gain, *remporter*
to direct, *diriger*
glorious, *éclatant*

a truly, etc., say—*the truly*
fit for, *fait pour,* with Infinit.
such hard terms, say—*some conditions so hard*
to compel, *forcer*

10.

THÈME.

1 **maxim,** *la maxime*
2 **unforeseen,** *imprévu*
3 **innate,** *inné*
to impress, *imprimer*
4 **hair,** *les cheveux*
with which, *dont ;* see § 44*
to adorn, *orner*
5 **to last,** *durer*
to terminate in, *se terminer par*
frightful, *terrible*
6 **pine,** *le pin*
evergreen, *toujours vert*
thin, *menu*
sharp, *pointu*
7 **gentle,** *doux*
well-bred, *bien élevé*
straightforward, *droit*
lively, *vif*
glance, *le regard*
symptom, *le symptôme*
8 **straight,** *droit*
9 **real,** *réel*
10 **rural,** *champêtre*

GALLICISMES.

1 **bon mot,** *witty thing, good joke, witticism*
l'honneur revient à, *honour is due to, belongs to*
en matière d'état civil, *in matters of civil law*
nous voilà sur, etc., *we have got to*
aussi bien...que, *both...and*
le mont de piété, *pawnbroker's shop*
avoir la réplique en poche, *to be wide awake*
parler argent comptant, *to be quick-witted*

COMPOSITION.

difficult for, *malaisé à*
to subjugate, *dompter*
Asia Minor, *l'Asie Mineure*
effeminacy, *la mollesse*
to corrupt, *corrompre*
well-trained, *réglé*
militia, *la milice*
efficient, *entendu*
to live on, *vivre de*
to harden, *endurcir*
wrestling, *la lutte*
athletic sports, *les exercices,* f.
agile, *adroit*
indifferent, *médiocre*
indeed, *à la vérité*
similar, *semblable*
to seem, *sembler* (followed by the Subj.)
animal spirits, *l'esprit,* m.
docile, *souple*
but one, *ne...qu'un seul*

11.

THÈME.

1 **what is ?** *qu'est-ce que ?* or, *qu'est-ce que c'est que ?*
praise, *la louange*
exaggerated, *exagéré*
dictated, *dicté*
2 **milky way,** *la voie lactée*
stripe, *la raie, bande*
naked, *nu*
to distinguish, *distinguer*
single, *seul*
4 **rough,** *rude*
5 **to tell,** *raconter*
6 **remembrance,** *le souvenir*
7 **blind man,** *l'aveugle,* m.
to lead, *guider*
to ask for alms, *demander l'aumône*

DIALOGUE.

2 **être préoccupé de,** *to be engrossed by*
jour, *light*
faire voir, *to show*
3 **y être pour quelque chose,** *to be concerned in*

COMPOSITION.

to stand, *s'élever*
Damascus, *Damas*
north-east, *nord-est*
bright, *riant*
Pliny, *Pline*
fertile, *fécond*
to shut up, *enfermer*
in all, etc., say—*of all times*
emporium, *l'entrepôt*, m.
Gulf of Persia, *le Golfe persique*
to follow...upwards, *remonter par...*
Phœnicia, *la Phénicie*
to spread among, *se répandre chez*
ever, *toujours*
eager for, *avide de*
could not but, *dut*
to settle, *fixer*
from, *dès*
remote, *reculé*
nucleus, *le commencement*
make it, say—*make of it*
unrenowned, *peu célèbre*
fresh water, *l'eau douce*
contained in, say—*which its soil possesses*
especially, *surtout*
attraction, *l'attrait*, m.
barren, *aride*
these were...the, say—*it were these*
to induce, *engager*
merchant prince, *prince commerçant*
to, *jusqu'à*
border, *la limite*
Judæa, *la Judée*

12.

THÈME.

1 **theatre**, here—*la scène*
2 **sensitive**, *sensible* (not *sensitive*; see Lesson 2)
deeply, *vivement*
3 **to trace**, *rapporter*
Teutonic, *germanique*
Slav, *slave*
5 **acquirements**, *connaissances*, f.
far in advance, *supérieur*
astonishing, *étonnant*
6 **barefooted**, *nu-pieds*
cask, *le tonneau*
8 **to attack**, *tomber sur*
unawares, *à l'improviste*
usual, *habituel*
presence of mind, *le sang-froid*
9 **haughty**, *fier, hautain*
11 **mishap**, *le contre-temps*
to befall, *arriver* (*à*)
through, *par*
12 **good for nothing**, *bon à rien*
that is the case, *il en est ainsi*
please, *veuillez*
token, *le témoignage*
esteem, *l'estime*, f.

DIALOGUE.

la pièce à l'appui, *corroborating proof*
la scélératesse, *villany*

13.

THÈME.

1 **surprising**, *surprenant* (followed by Subj.)
2 **to cultivate**, *cultiver*
to produce, *produire*
ill weeds, *les mauvaises herbes*
4 **fully**, *pour le moins*
inch, *le pouce* (lit. *thumb*)
5 **to be slow in**, *être lent à* (with Infin.)
6 **gipsy woman**, *la bohémienne*
8 **distant**, *éloigné*
9 **near**, *rapproché*
Mercury, *Mercure*
10 **apogee**, *l'apogée*, f.
11 **idleness**, *la paresse*

14.

THÈME.

1 **to get rich**, *s'enrichir*
otherwise than, *autrement que*

to listen to, *écouter*
corrupter, *l'empoisonneur*, m.
2 **to trust,** *se fier à*
to conceal from, *taire à*
3 **to prevent from,** *empêcher de*, with Infin.
to look, *paraître*
4 **animal,** *la bête*
clothed, fed, etc., in the Imperf.
to take out for a walk, *promener*
to tend with care, *soigner avec attention*
5 **to return,** (transit.) *rendre*, (intransit.) *retourner*
6 **photograph,** *la photographie*
7 **to associate with,** *fréquenter*
8 **to abridge,** *abréger*

GALLICISMES.

2 **aller bien,** *to be in good health*
3 **crever de santé,** *to be in exuberant health*
4 **payer de mine,** *to look well*
une santé de crocheteur, *the constitution of a horse*, lit. *porter*

COMPOSITION.

1 **snake,** *le serpent*
benumbed, *transi, engourdi*
half dead, *à demi mort*
to carry, *emporter*
to stretch out, *étendre*
to warm, *réchauffer*
to revive, *se ranimer*
when, here—*que*; see § 120, (*b*)
to think of, *songer à*
to wound, *blesser*
ungrateful, *ingrat*
rightful, *juste*
disposition, *le naturel*
to hurt, *nuire*
to vent itself against, *s'exercer sur*
axe, *la cognée*
to cut to pieces, *mettre en pièces*
2 **incensed,** *enflammé*
courtier, *le courtisan*
bishop, *l'évêque*
officious, *officieux*
to curry favour with, *complaire à*
so that, *pour que*, with Subj.
property, *les biens*
to load, *charger*
fetters, *les fers*, m.
to put to death, *faire périr*
to get rid of, *se débarrasser de*
cautious, here—*intelligent*
preceding, *précédent*
to be mistaken, *se tromper*
the means, *le moyen de*, with Infinit.
to take from, *enlever à*
dungeon, *cachot*
kiss, *baiser*
sin, *le péché*
nor...nor, *ni...ni*
3 **what is that to me?** *qu'est-ce que cela me fait?*
to talk, here—*dire*
to be present, *y être*
4 **united,** *uni*
bond, *le lien*
to travel by the same way, *faire le même chemin*
to come across (me, thee etc.), *venir à* (*ma, ta,* etc.), *rencontre*
to flee, *s'enfuir*
to take refuge, *se réfugier*
to lay one's self on the ground, *se coucher par terre*
went, here—*came*
to turn over and over again, *tourner et retourner*
to climb, *grimper*
to whisper into the ear, *dire à l'oreille*
before, *avant de*, with Infinit.
to test, *éprouver, mettre à l'épreuve*
5 **Æsop,** *Ésope*
witty, *spirituel*
to retort, *répliquer*
will it not be said? say—*will not one say?*
6 **by way of,** *en guise de, pour toute*
to advance, *avancer*

15.

THÈME.

1 **to get rid of,** *se défaire de*
weight, *la pesanteur, gravité*
to accelerate, *accélérer*
motion, *le mouvement*
3 **to add,** *ajouter*
to warrant, *garantir*
4 **like a,** *en*
5 **as early as,** *dès*
printer, *l'imprimeur*
Venice, *Venise*
7 **to allow,** *accorder*
8 **none the less,** *ne...pas moins*
9 **all the more,** *d'autant plus*
proud, *fier*
10 **to embolden,** *enhardir*
to discourage, *décourager*
11 **to be ashamed of,** *avoir honte de*
to boast of, *se vanter de*
12 **do with,** say—*do of*

GALLICISMES.

1 **en rester à,** *to leave off at*
2 **s'en tenir là,** *to be satisfied*
3 **n'en pas démordre,** *not to give in*
en faire à sa guise, *to have his own way*
4 **en vouloir à,** *to bear a grudge*
c'est à n'en plus finir, *there is no end of it*

COMPOSITION.

lightly come, lightly go, *ce qui vient par la flute s'en va par le tambour*
to steal, *dérober*
mule, *le mulet*
to drive, *chasser*
to consult about, *se consulter sur*
they were to, say—*they would*
share, *la part*
to fall to the lot of, *en revenir à*
to arise, *s'élever*
to come to blows, *en venir aux mains*
in the thick, *pendant le plus fort*
to steal, *se glisser*
near to, *près de*
to make off, *s'éloigner*
without, *sans,* with Infin.
to become aware, *s'apercevoir*
not...until, *ne...que quand*
beast, *animal*
to catch again, *rattraper*

16.

THÈME.

to meddle with, *se mêler de*
politics, *la politique*
2 **in fact,** *en effet*
to land, *aborder*
willingly, here—*volontairement*
storm, *la tempête*
to cast ashore, *jeter*
3 **to be anxious,** *tenir à*
so, *tellement*
4 **to be at home,** *y être*
mouse, *la souris*
5 **on that account,** *en*
6 **sense,** *le sens*
want, *le besoin*
to satisfy, *pouvoir à*
7 **whatever,** *quelque,* with Subj.
to spend, (life, time) *passer,* (money) *dépenser*
8 **the nearer...the farther,** *plus...plus*
9 **tool,** *l'outil,* m.
cause to be put..., *faites mettre...*
handle, *le manche*

GALLICISMES.

1 **y aller de...,** *to be at stake*
2 **y aller, s'y mettre,** *to set to work*
4 **n'y voir goutte,** *not to see (understand) anything*
5 **y être,** *to be at home*

COMPOSITION.

1 **to lay a wager,** *parier*
meal, *le repas*
to deny, *nier*
cup, here—*le vase*
pearl, *la perle*
to dissolve, *dissoudre*
smilingly, *en souriant*
to swallow, *avaler*
2 **feeling,** *le sentiment*
will, *vouloir*
3 **to run,** *couler*
corner, *le coin*
to look at, *jeter un regard*
linen, *le linge*
4 **remedy,** *le remède*
clever, *habile*
to call to, *appeler auprès*
to feel, here—*tâter*
pulse, *le pouls*
sign, *l'indice,* m.
to question, *interroger*
to confess, *avouer*
ate, drank, etc., in the Imperf.; see § 66
perfect, *parfait*
leave that to me, say—*let me do*
to rid of, *ôter*

17

THÈME.

3 **as for,** *quant à*
4 **about,** here—*sur*
6 **to hasten to,** *accourir vers*
8 **to appeal to,** *en appeler à, prendre à temoin.*
whether, *si*
to be to blame for, *devoir encourir (porter) le blâme de*
I am to..., *je dois, c'est à moi de*
misunderstanding, *le malentendu*
9 **to ingratiate one's self with,** *se mettre bien avec*
10 **photograph,** *la photographie*

GALLICISMES.

1 **faire du bruit,** *to make fuss*
c'est moi qui vous le demande, *it is for me to ask*
3 **chacun à son dada, à chaque fou plaît sa marotte,** *everyone has his hobby*

COMPOSITION.

1 **to enter into partnership,** *s'associer*
to go hunting, *aller à la chasse*
game, *le gibier*
to apportion, *faire le partage de*
share, *la part*
to fly into a passion, *se mettre en colère*
partition, *le partage*
very little, *fort peu de chose*
to divide, *partager*
which happened, leave out **which**
other people's, *des autres*
to make (followed by an Adj.), *rendre*

18.

THÈME.

1 **freshness,** *la fraîcheur*
fragrance, *le parfum*
thorn, *l'épine,* f.
2 **to be cool-headed,** *avoir la tête froide*
to be warm-hearted, same construction
3 **not in the least,** *pas du tout*
to edify, *édifier*
4 **to change one's mind,** see 28, (*b*), Obs. 2
doubtful, *douteux*
5 **to draw near,** *s'approcher de*
6 **to dread,** *craindre*
so as to, *de manière à*
consequence, *la suite*
7 **what,** *quel*
captured soldier, *le prisonnier de guerre*
steel, *l'acier*
9 **cheerfulness,** *la gaîté*
10 **tired of,** *impatienté de*
retrenchment, *le retranchement*

11 **acquaintance,** *la connaissance*
just now, *dans ce moment*
to remind, *rappeler à*
remember me to him, *saluez-le de ma part*
to let hear from one, *donner de ces nouvelles*
12 **to covet,** *désirer*

GALLICISMES.

2 **les yeux me cuisent,** *my eyes smart*
3 **s'écouter trop,** *to indulge one's self too much*
on ne saurait plus, *exceedingly*
4 **être des nôtres,** *to be one of our party*
à la bonne heure! *that is right! capital!*

COMPOSITION.

1 **crane,** *la grue*
to swallow, *avaler*
the bone, *l'os,* m.
to stick fast in, *rester dans*
great pain, *horriblement*
to beg, *prier*
to extract, *retirer*
throat, *le gosier*
thanks to, *grâce à*
to perform, *faire*
successfully, *heureusement*
gossip, *la commère*
what! *quoi!*
safe and sound, *sain et sauf*
jaws, here—*la gueule*
to claim, *réclamer*
2 **equanimity,** *la tranquillité*
Lacedæmonian, *Lacédémonien*
time for, say—*the time of the*
to submit, *se soumettre*
the rule over, say—*the empire of*
I would rather, say—*I like better*
to enslave, *asservir*
to deliver, *rendre*
underneath, *au-dessous*
to fetch, *chercher*

19.

THÈME.

1 **slavish, slave,** *esclave*
2 **to shun,** *fuir*
3 **deaf,** *sourd*
6 **right,** *juste*
7 **trouble,** *la peine* (not *trouble*)
to expect, *espérer*
8 **rightly,** *à juste titre, avec raison*
to contrive, *savoir*
to invest, *revêtir*
9 **to peruse and reperuse,** *lire et relire*
10 **just,** *tout juste, exactement*

GALLICISMES.

1 **à propos de,** *with regard to*
fouiller dans, *to rack*
quand même, *through thick and thin*
à jet continu, *with a constant flow*
2 **contre-tirer,** *to counterdraw*
décalquer, *to trace*
3 **malgré tout ce qu'on en dit,** *in spite of all*
à propos, *to the purpose*
ostentation, *show, display*
4 **être le fait de,** *to be the doing of*
s'abriter, *to take shelter*
s'effacer, *to keep in the background*
faire défaut, *to be wanting*

COMPOSITION.

1 **citizen,** *le citoyen*
to gnaw, *ronger*
to hasten to call on, *aller bien vite trouver*
anxiety, *l'anxiété,* f.
to forebode, *présager*
miracle, *le prodige*

20.

THÈME.

1 **reliance,** *la confiance*
2 **premature,** *prématuré*
3 **spire,** *le clocher*

lighting, *la foudre*
to strike, here—*tomber*
4 **it is related by Roman historians,** say—*Roman historians relate*
5 **end,** *le terme*
to foresee, *prévoir*
6 **expensive,** *cher*
7 **Japanese,** *le Japonais*
constancy, *la constance*
inconvenience, *incommodité*
to value much, *faire grand cas de*
8 **fortitude,** *le courage*
ennoble, *ennoblir*
9 **to have pity on,** *avoir pitié de*
11 **round,** Prep., *autour de*
ray, *le rayon*
to light up, *éclairer*
to turn, to revolve, *tourner*
axis, *l'axe*, m.
12 **veil,** *le voile*
13 **most strongly,** *le plus*
14 **to become proverbial,** *passer en proverbe*
nature, here—*le naturel*
to subdue, *dompter, fléchir*
15 **for a long time,** *depuis longtemps*
to serve a bad turn, *jouer un mauvais tour*
blindness, *l'aveuglement*, m.
levity, *la légèreté*
to despise, *mépriser*

GALLICISMES.

1 **droit de cité,** *citizenship*
et pour cause, *and rightly so*
3 **trouver grâce,** *to find favour*
blesser, here—*to offend*

COMPOSITION.

sight, *le spectacle*
to breathe, *respirer*
but not, *et non pas*
to complain of, *se plaindre de*
inability, *l'impuissance*, f.
to devote one's self, *se dévouer*
disabled, *débile*
retreat, *la retraite*
strict, *exact*
to constrain, *contraindre*
to preserve, *conserver*
annals, *les registres*, m.

21.

THÈME.

3 **what is the matter?** *qu'est-ce qu'il y a?*
what it is about, say—*of what it acts itself*
4 **to use,** *se servir de*
8 **for what,** or **what for,** *à quoi*
9 say — *what will they become* (devenir)?
11 **unless it be,** *si ce n'est*
to enable, *mettre en état*
to help one's self, *se suffire à soi-même*
12 **I am sure I don't know,** say – *I do not really know*
to mean, *vouloir dire*
14 **pupil,** *l'élève*

GALLICISMES.

1 **savoir à quoi s'en tenir,** *to know how matters stand*
2 **donner un coup d'épaule,** *to put the shoulder to the wheel*
3 **qui vive?** *who goes there?*
5 **se mettre en peine de,** *to trouble one's self about*
6 **avoir de quoi,** *to have a competency*
mettre du foin dans ses bottes, *to feather one's nest*

COMPOSITION.

to make up, *composer*
to overrun, *parcourir*
series, *la suite*
century, *le siècle*
each other, say—*the ones to the others*
is limited, say—*limit themselves*

unless, *si...ne*
to put in communication, *faire entrer en commerce*
to suggest (supply—**to us**), *donner lieu de faire*
precocious, *anticipé*
far, here—*fort*

22.

THÈME.

1 **to be eager to,** *s'empresser de*
to expect, *attendre*
2 **haughty,** *orgueilleux*
approbation, *le suffrage*
to deny, *refuser*
3 **fault,** *le défaut* (not *faute*, here)
4 **to sit down to,** *se mettre à*
there is a ring, *on sonne*
5 **to advise,** *conseiller*
to apply to, *s'adresser à*
why! *mais!*
qualified, *propre à, capable de*
matter, *l'affaire*, f.
6 **struggling with,** *aux prises avec*
7 **among,** *parmi*
8 **due,** *dû*
9 **evening paper,** *le journal du soir*
10 **leave,** *la permission*
14 **angler,** *le pêcheur à la ligne*
to fish, *pêcher*

GALLICISMES.

y pensez-vous! *you are jesting!*
n'avoir pas le moindre soupçon, *not to have the slightest notion of*

COMPOSITION.

judgment, *le jugement*
to cross, *traverser*
to reach, *arriver à*
burial-place, *le lieu de la sépulture*
to give an account, *rendre compte*
to examine, *interroger*
to appear (before a judge), *comparaître*
title, *le titre*
left, *réduit*
himself, *lui seul*
attended by, *escorté de*
to disclose, *se dévoiler*
to stifle, *étouffer*
to tarnish, to brand, *flétrir*
slanderer, *le calomniateur*
to claim, *redemander*
of which he, etc., say—*which had been taken from him*
to take from, *enlever à*
convicted, *convaincu*
penalty, *la peine*
to reward with, *récompenser de*
eulogy, *l'éloge*, m.
relatives, *les parents*
the family were, say—*one assembled the family*
to congregate in crowds, *se rendre en foule*
to extol, *célébrer*
within the sight of, *à l'aspect de*
to recall, *rappeler*
the place, etc., **were recalled,** say—*one recalled*
he was thanked, his example was proposed. same construction
for having, *de ce qu'il avait*
mankind, *les hommes*

23.

THÈME.

1 **to efface,** *effacer*
2 **hardly,** *à peine*, with inversion of Subject and Verb
when, *que*
to surround, *entourer*
3 **to wish well,** *vouloir du bien*
4 **languor,** *la langueur*
constitutes one characteristic feature, say—*makes one of the principal characters*
5 **swarm,** *la nuée*
barbarian, *le barbare*

to devastate, *désoler*
7 **counsellor,** *le conseiller*
most (best), *le plus*
9 **partner,** *l'associé*, m.
to come to terms, *tomber d'accord*
10 **monk,** *le moine*
concern, *l'affaire*, f.
11 **first,** *les premiers*
to break, *rompre*
12 **all but,** *à peu près*
baggage, *les bagages*, f.
to take, *enlever*
13 **to perish,** *périr*
to swim ashore, *gagner le rivage à la nage*

GALLICISMES.

1 **comme ça,** *this way*
aller aux emplettes, *to go shopping*
2 **se fournir,** *to deal*
chez qui, *at what shop*
3 **faire un rabais,** *to make an abatement, to sell at a discount*
5 **faire crédit de la main à la bourse,** *to trust no further than one can see*
argent comptant, *ready money, hard cash*

COMPOSITION.

1 **every time when,** *quand*
author, *l'auteur*
to bring on the carpet, say *—to put on the carpet*
to discuss, here—*causer de*
as concerns, *quant à*
the substance, *le fond*
to suggest, *indiquer*
self-love, *l'amour-propre*
motive, *le mobile*
most, *la plupart*
to be agreed in, *s'accorder à*, with Infin.
to assign, *assigner*
rank, *la place, le rang*
writer, *l'écrivain*, m.
point of resemblance, *le rapport*
highly, *fort*
care, *le soin*
correctness, *la correction*
to equal, *égaler*
contemporary, *le contemporain*
who, emphatic—**qui lui**
genius, *le génie*
by turns, *tour à tour*
pathos, *le pathétique*
wit, here—*la plaisanterie*
sharp, *fin*
2 **overcome with,** *accablé de*
day's work, *la journée*
arduous, *ardu, fort*
numbers, *le nombre* (to be used in the singular)
to keep on increasing, *aller en croissant*
entreatingly, *avec instance*
stay, *le séjour*
to allow, *accorder*
to be wanting, *manquer de**
besides, *d'ailleurs*
to try, *essayer*
plan, *le dessein*
to raise the spirits, *remonter les courages*
downcast, *abattu*
sooner or later, *un jour ou l'autre*
to exterminate, *exterminer*
him, *soi*
to dishearten, *amollir*
at a time when, say—*at the moment where*
fortitude, *la constance*
to embitter, *aigrir*
to divide, *diviser*
to deal the finishing blow, *porter le dernier coup*
to wish for, *désirer*
to face with certainty, *voir certaine*
to prefer, *aimer mieux*
to await, *attendre*
to defer, *retarder*

* say—*where one was not wanting of...*

24.

THÈME.

1 **half a year**, & 5 **a year and a half**, say—*six* (*eighteen*) *months*
2 **to be desirous**, *désirer*
to call on, *aller voir ; passer chez.*
4 **from what I gather**, say—*to what* (*à ce que*) *I learn*
to-day fortnight, *aujourd'hui en quinze*
5 **since...last**, *depuis que...ne*
6 **to inquire for**, *chercher, s'enquérir de*
9 **there he comes**, say—*there he is who comes*
10 **there now, if he isn't**, *ne voilà-t-il pas qu'il est*

GALLICISMES.

1 **on n'en finirait pas**, *one would never have done*
façon de parler, *idiom, expression*
2 **coup de tête**, *a rash act*
coup de bec, *taunt, rough word, wipe*
coup de dent, *bite, snap*
coup de langue, *taunt*
coup d'épaule, *lift*
coup de poing, *knuckle duster*
coup de pied, *kick*
3 **vous n'êtes pas sans**, *you must have*
coups de bâton, *thrashing*
à coups de ciseaux, *with the help of scissors and paste*
coup de brosse, *brush down*
coup de balai, *sweeping*
coup de canon, *cannon shot*
coup d'épée, *thrust with the sword*
coup de grâce, *finishing stroke*
coup d'état, *stroke of state policy*
coup d'œil, *glance*

COMPOSITION.

at nightfall, turn by the Nominative Absolute = *the evening come*
to approach, *se rapprocher de*
sapper, *le sapeur*
small boat, *la nacelle*
to watch, *suivre des yeux*
to plunge, *s'enfoncer*
to land, *aborder et descendre sur*
day before, *la veille*
to vanish, *s'évanouir*
after a short moment, say—*at the end* (*bout*) *of an instant*
Cossack, *le Cosaque*
to appear, *se présenter*
to ride away towards, *piquer des deux dans la direction de*
of the night, *nocturne*
shot, *le coup de feu*
were fired at him, say—*pursue him*
to hit, *atteindre*
to be startled, *tressaillir*

25.

COMPOSITION.

1 **to worship**, *adorer*
to supply, *fournir*
pyramid, *la pyramide*
obelisk, *l'obélisque*, m.
to embalm, *embaumer*
entrance, *l'entrée*
to use, *employer*
to water, *arroser*
product, *le produit*
2 **to finish with**, *terminer par*
sitting, *la séance*
to judge from, *à en juger par*
it is a little while ago, say—*there is little time*
how near the enemy is, say—*how the enemy is near*
instantly, *à l'instant*
3 **sovereign**, *le prince*
tomb, *la tombe*
barrier, *la barrière*

to oppress, *fouler, opprimer*
to deprive, *priver*
to construct, *construire*
ar ' when, see § 120 (*b*) 3
accuser, *l'accusateur,* m.
to give evidence, *déposer contre*
in mourning, *en habits de deuil*
to cause the death of, *faire périr*
complaint, *la plainte*
to utter, *prononcer*
to deprive of, *ravir*
these are, say—*there are*
to bear witness against, *déposer contre*
to shake over, *secouer sur*
rag, *le lambeau*
to snatch, *arracher*
to be shed, *couler*
thousands, *des milliers*
when you pronounce, say—*in pronouncing*
to think of, *songer à*
4 **had made,** say—*had caused to put*
seat, *le banc, siége*
to overshadow, *ombrager*
hedge, *la haie*
hawthorn, *l'aubépine,* f.
honeysuckle, *le chèvrefeuille*
here, say—*it was here that*
when the weather was fine, say—*in the fine days*
soon, *de bonne heure*
extensive, *vaste*
evening, *soirée*
drank, say—*took*
which now was become an occasional banquet, say—[*a*] *banquet* (*repas*) *of luxury* (*luxe*) *now*
as we had it, say—*as we took some*
to diffuse, *répandre*
the preparations, etc., say—*for the preparations* (*préparatifs*) *made themselves with great ceremonies*
little ones, *plus jeunes enfants*
read for us, *nous faisaient la lecture*
they were regularly served, say—*one served them in their turn*
done, say—*finished*
to give a variety to, say—*to vary*
to the guitar, see Prepos. to, Lesson 46
formed, say—*gave to us*
to stroll down, *descendre*
sloping field, *la pente du coteau*
that was embellished with, *émaillé de*
bluebell, *campanule*
centaury, *la centaurée*
talk, say—*talking*
to enjoy, *respirer*
to waft, *apporter*

26.

Composition.

to bear no small analogy *ressembler beaucoup*
the nearest parallel to, *encore plus d'analogie avec*
to bring on one's self, *s'attirer*
and destruction on, say—*and caused the ruin of*
wide dominion, say—*the immense empire*
severed into a thousand pieces, *morcelé à l'infini*
nothing more than, etc., say—*the abject heirs,* etc., ... *kept nothing but a nominal dignity*
fierce, *féroce*
invader, *l'envahisseur*
from each other in, say—*between them of*
to flock as if by concert, *accourir en foule*
farthest, *les plus reculés*
to plunder, *piller*
and at length fixed their seat, say—*and finished by settling* (*s'établir*)

fancied that they recognised, say—*believed* [*to*] *recognise*
prophecy, *la prophétie*
to carry back, *remporter*
plunder, *le butin*
depths, *le fond*
Pannonian forests, say—*forests of Pannonia*
ruled, say—*were masters of*
even to, *jusque dans*
2 **this wild clan of plunderers,** say—*this horde of wild plunderers*
first, say—*for the first time*
soon after, say—*little time after*
corner, lit. *coin,* here—*district*
many, say—*more than one*
from sea to sea, say—*from one sea to the other*
to subdue, *assujettir*
dominions, *la domination*
nor did they, etc., say—*though they...they remained nevertheless*
freebooter, *le maraudeur*
to retain, *conserver*
predatory habits, *habitudes de déprédation*
kettledrum, *la timbale*
to throw, *charger*
savings, *les épargnes,* f.
girdle, *la ceinture*
neighbourhood, *le voisinage*
hyena, *la hiène*
to redeem, *racheter*
harvest, *la moisson*
by the payment, say—*in paying*
ransom, *la rançon*
wretched, *pitoyable*
stopped to pay, *se laissait imposer*
black-mail, *le tribut*
the camp-fires were seen, etc., turn by—*from the walls,* etc...*one could see....*
rapacious, *rapace*
innumerable, *innombrable*
to descend on, *descendre* (*pénétrer*) *dans*
year after year, say—*every year*
rice-field, *la rizière*
factor, *le facteur, agent*
less than a hundred years, *il n'y a pas cent ans que*
horseman, *cavalier*
ditch, *le fossé*

27.

COMPOSITION.

1 **as a,** *en*
very well, *volontiers*
to dispense with, *se passer de*
on the whole, *en gros*
flattering, *avantageux*
influence, *le crédit*
provost, *le prévôt*
barber, *le barbier*
to expose to the public gaze, *étaler*
2 **in consequence of a false alarm,** *sur un faux avis*
friendly, *ami,* Adj.
inroad, *la razzia*
tent, *la tente*
hair, (of animals), *le poil*
camel, *le chameau*
to live (Transit.), *vivre de*
fig, *la figue*
heart-sickness, *mal de cœur*
to renew, *renouveler*
chief, here—*cheik*
on intimate terms, *intimement lié*
to cut off, *couper*
to compel, *obliger*
pistol, *le pistolet*
within, *à*
to point out, *désigner*
about, *à peu près*
to pierce, *traverser*
to be struck dumb, *rester muet*
to fire, *tirer*
to come near the mark, *approcher*

28.

THÈME.

1 **very quickly,** *bien vite*
2 **to weaken,** *affaiblir*
3 **rein,** *rêne,* f.
to put a stop to, *faire cesser*
4 **in an uproar,** *ému*
to clamour, *s'écrier*
to put to death, *faire périr*
Ulysses, *Ulysse*
to ruin, *renverser*
5 **to poison,** *empoisonner*
to cause to be murdered, *faire égorger*
to hasten, *accourir*

GALLICISMES.

un coup d'épée dans l'eau, *labour lost*
donner un coup de dent, *to bite*
donner un coup de corne, *to gore*

COMPOSITION.

1 **stag,** *le cerf*
hunter, *le chasseur*
vine, *la vigne*
to browse, *brouter*
leaves, *le feuillage*
benefactor, here fem.—*bienfaitrice*
to retrace one's steps, *revenir sur ses pas*
2 **wonderfully,** *excessivement*
populous, *populeux*
how long, here—*since when*
indeed, *en effet*
on this subject, *sur ce point*
slightest, *moindre*
site, *l'emplacement,* m.
in sooth, *en vérité ; assurément !*
a strange, etc., say—*there is a strange...*
to behold, *voir*
of old, *jadis*
of any such, *rien de semblable*
...**afterwards,** *au bout de...*
a party of, say—*some*
to cover, *recouvrir*
is this a question, etc., say—*can a man like you make such a question*
spot, *l'endroit,* m. ; *la place*
to stand alone, *se tenir debout tout seul*
to take place, *avoir lieu*
lastly, *enfin*
building, *l'édifice,* m.
I would fain have informed, say—*I wanted to inform*
rise, *l'origine,* f.
is lost, say—*loses itself*
remote antiquity, say—*the night of the times*
to be ignorant, *ignorer, ne pas savoir*

29.

THÈME.

1 **to detain,** *retenir, retarder, arrêter*
3 **only,** *unique*
citizen, *le bourgeois*
5 **to succeed in,** *venir à bout de*
to complete, *achever*
6 **miser,** *l'avare,* m.
7 **according to,** *selon*
critic, *le critique*
8 **for the use of,** *à l'usage de*
prince royal, *le dauphin*

COMPOSITION.

camel, *le chameau*
Arabian, *arabe*
uninhabitable, *inhabitable*
temper, *le tempérament*
hardy, *dur*
soil, *le sol*
barren, *stérile*
to offer, *présenter*

striking, *marqué*
premeditated, *prémédité*
to take pleasure in, *se plaire à* (with Infin.)
to adapt to, *régler sur*
scanty, *peu de*
food, *la nourriture*
to economise, *économiser*
substance, *la matière*
framework, *la construction*
of it, say—*its*

30.

THÈME.

1 **to renounce,** *renoncer*
habit, *l'habitude,* f.
3 **to spread,** *répandre*
5 **to be told,** say—*that one tells us*
6 **how is it,** *comment se fait-il*
7 **to send word,** *faire dire*
8 **do you want me,** say—*do you want that I...*
logic, *la logique*
geometry, *la géométrie*
10 **a straight head,** etc., say—*the head straight,* etc.
to look up to, *regarder*
star, *l'astre,* m.
11 **to bury,** *enterrer, ensevelir*
12 **this very evening,** *ce soir même*

COMPOSITION.

1 **dissapprove of my going,** say — *disapprove* (*trouver mauvais*) *that I go*
2 **to allow,** here—*souffrir*
to mean, *entendre*
to give time, *donner le temps*
in this manner, *de la sorte*
to require, *vouloir*
3 **in general knowledge,** say —*in general*
stock, *le fonds*
work, *l'ouvrage,* m.
to enable, *mettre en état*
sensible, *sensé;* see p. 194
to go through a regular training, say—*to make solid studies*
to practise one's self, *s'exercer à*
to reason, *raisonner*
correctness, *la justesse*
to discard, say here—*se défier de*
to allow, *laisser,* followed by the Active Infinit.
to rule, *dominer*
to ground, *fonder*
incontestable, *indubitable*
inference, *la conséquence*

31.

THÈME.

1 **the fame,** *le bruit, la renommée*
to intend, *songer à*
in the direction of, *du côté de*
4 **to keep,** *conserver*
shop, *la boutique*
6 **to be mistaken,** *se tromper*
7 **for ever,** *éternellement*
library, *la bibliothèque*
8 **I recover my strength,** *la force me revient*
to do good, *faire du bien*
9 **I am ready to,** say—*I will*
to the contrary, say—*of the contrary*
12 **to make another attempt,** *revenir à la charge*

COMPOSITION.

benevolent, *bienfaisant*
baker, *le boulanger*
commissioner, *le préfet*
to raise, *élever*
to explain, *exposer*
to plead, *plaider*
magistrate, here—*fonctionnaire*
to serve, say—*because of*
to give alms, *faire l'aumône*
to devise means, *méditer sur un moyen*

to lower still more, *baisser encore*
a second time, say—*for the second time*
at all events, *en tout cas*

32.

THÈME.

1 **welfare,** *le bien*
to govern, *gouverner*
2 **miller,** *le meunier*
3 **it may be,** *il se peut*
success, *le succès*
4 **to adapt one's self to the capacity,** *se mettre à la portée*
5 **to return a call,** *rendre une visite*
to be becoming, *convenir, seoir, être bienséant*
6 **to surprise,** *surprendre*
7 **to reconquer,** *reconquérir*
one by one, *un à un*
8 **it is high time,** *il est temps*
to work hard, *travailler sérieusement*
be imagined, is learned, use the Verb reflexively
painstaking, *la peine*
to make believe, *faire croire*
to know about, *en savoir*
9 **to unlearn,** *désapprendre, oublier*
to settle, *s'établir*
A.D., *après J.-C.* (*Jésus-Christ*)
10 **progress,** *le progrès*

COMPOSITION.

appointed, *appelé*
at first, *d'abord*
to be proficient in, *posséder*
graphic, *graphique*
geographer, *le géographe*
to take rise, *naître*
basin, *le bassin*
to have a full knowledge of, *être plein de*
map, *la carte*
design (drawing), *le dessin*
relationship, *le rapport*
importance, here—*la valeur*
also, here—*ensuite*
knowledge, *les connaissances,* f.
commonplace, *vulgaire*
warrior, *guerrier;* here—*l'homme de guerre*
none the less, *non moins*
business habits, *l'esprit d'ordre et de détail*
clerk, *le commis*
it is not enough, *ce n'est pas tout*
to have to be fed, etc., say—*it is necessary to feed them,* etc.
to heal, *guérir*
has to be displayed, etc., same construction
to display, *déployer*
at the same time, *à la fois*

33.

THÈME.

1 **deputy,** *le député*
Delphi, *Delphes*
Apollo, *Apollon*
4 **to inhabit,** *habiter*
at peace, *tranquille*
to roam through, *parcourir*
mild, *doux*
climate, *la température, le climat*
to strengthen, *fortifier*
5 **country seat,** *la maison de campagne*
estate, *le bien, la terre, le domaine*
7 **to lay in a store,** *faire* (*une*) *provision*
knowledge, *le savoir*
8 **I lack,** *il me manque*
distant, *lointain*
dark, s., *l'obscurité,* f.

COMPOSITION.

2 **wit,** *les jeux d'esprit*
bodily exercise, *les jeux de corps*
3 **unfit,** *peu propre à*
4 **to relate,** *raconter*
grave, *le tombeau*

34.

THÈME.

1 **to reckon as,** *compter pour*
to accomplish one's object, *parvenir à son but*
3 **balloon,** *le ballon*
so that, *pour que*
bulk, *le volume*
4 **to indulge,** *s'adonner à*
to owe, *devoir*
8 **none the less,** *ne...en.....pas moins*
10 **whatever,** *quoi que ce soit*
14 **guilty,** *coupable*
15 **how,** *de quelle manière*

COMPOSITION.

1 **entirely,** *entièrement*
to destroy, *anéantir, détruire*
many, *il y en a beaucoup*
2 **indignant,** *indigné*
discontent, *le mécontentement*
to increase, *s'accroître*
3 **of the name of,** *nommé*
to greet, *saluer*
in the Greek fashion, say—*at the fashion* (*manière*) *of the Greeks*
how is it, say—*from whence comes*
to worship, *adorer*
to help, *servir à*
to injure, *faire tort à*
at liberty, *libre*
to degrade, *avilir*

35.

THÈME.

1 **to grant,** *vouloir*
3 **riddle,** *l'énigme,* f.
5 **ill betides him,** *il lui arrive malheur*
to blame for, *s'en prendre à*
6 **thoroughly,** *à fond*
8 **to defeat,** *défaire*
much good may it do you, *grand bien vous fasse*
9 **to bestow on,** *donner*
12 **born,** *de naissance*
to move in good society, *voir* (*fréquenter*) *bonne compagnie*

COMPOSITION.

1 **letter-writing,** *le style épistolaire, l'art de la correspondance*
literally, *au pied de la lettre*
to assert, *prétendre*
to be as nearly as...like, *se rapprocher autant que... de*
gesture, *le geste*
countenance, *le visage*
spoken language, *la parole*
which cannot be, etc., turn by the *Active* Voice
dumb, *muet*
on the other hand, *d'un autre côté*
feature, *le trait*
to betray, *trahir*
word, *la parole*
produce on him, say—*make to him feel* (*éprouver*)
wrongly, *mal*
to retract, *rétracter*
rash, *imprudent*
meaning, *le sens*
with this reserve, say—*this restriction made*
to derive, *tirer*
useful precepts can be derived, etc., turn by the *Active* Voice
above, *plus haut*
method, *la manière*
letter-writing, see Syntax of Pres. Part., § 88, (3)
required for a conversation, say—*that a conversation demands*
easy, *aisé*
2 **neat,** *net*
legible, *lisible*
to pride one's self on, *se piquer de*
good breeding, *le savoir-vivre*
to beware of, *avoir soin de ne pas*

numerous people, *les gens si nombreux*
to unlock, *desserrer*
trouble, *la peine*
to guess, *deviner*
to move, *remuer*
to miss, *manquer*
aim, *le but*
message, *la missive*
to decipher, *déchiffrer*
to require, *réclamer*
scholar, *le savant, l'érudit*
accustomed to, *rompu à*
explanation, *l'explication*, f.
hieroglyph, *l'hiéroglyphe*, m.
cuneiform writing, *l'écriture cunéiforme*

36.

THÈME.

1 **to fast,** *jeûner*
5 **to have occasion for,** *avoir besoin de*
be so kind as to, use the Imperat. of *vouloir*
6 **it is all in vain for me to,** *j'ai beau*
to do nothing of the kind, *n'en faire rien*
7 **all things,** say—*everything*
to have better, *faire mieux de* (in the Condit.)
9 **to expect to,** *compter*
to have left, say—*to leave*
11 **well nigh to happen,** *faillir arriver*

ENTRETIENS FAMILIERS.

1 **agiter une question,** *to raise (discuss) a question*
pour peu que, *if...ever so little*
sauter aux yeux, *to be evident*
l'emporter sur, *to be superior to*
n'être pas sans savoir, *to be fully ware*
2 **ne pas trop voir,** *not to be able, to fail to see quite clearly*

COMPOSITION.

shop, *le magasin*
shopman, *le commis*
to hasten to, *s'empresser de*
to want, *avoir besoin de*
anything else, *autre chose*
stock phrase, *la formule*
for that purpose, *à cet effet*
bluntness, *la brusquerie*
purchase, *l'emplette*, f.
to make one lose one's patience, *impatienter*
last of all, *en dernier lieu*
the blandest of smiles, say—*a smile of the most amiable* [*moucher*
to blow one's nose, *se*
stupid fool, *imbécile*, Subst.

37.

THÈME.

1 **B.C.,** *avant J.-C.*
2 **lately,** *dernièrement*
3 **luggage,** *les bagages*, m.
4 **use,** *l'emploi*, m.
to use, *employer*
to bear in mind, *se rappeler, faire réflexion*
to do again, *refaire*
properly, *comme il faut*
5 **to let...alone,** *laisser...faire*
I say, *vous dis-je*
to know well enough how to, *savoir bien*
to get out of the scrape, *se tirer d'embarras*
6 **to keep waiting,** *faire attendre*
I cannot help it, *ce n'est pas ma faute*
7 **to mend,** *raccommoder*
8 **to show upstairs,** *faire monter*
9 **ready-made,** *confectionné*
to measure, *sur mesure*
10 **to show in,** *faire entrer*

ENTRETIENS FAMILIERS.

1 **avoir à cœur,** *to be anxious to*
en vouloir venir à, *to be driving at*

à tort, *wrongly*
par excellence, *pre-eminently*
2 **être à se demander,** *to wonder*
3 **imprimer,** *to stamp upon*
mouler, *to mould, to shape*
en ce sens que, *in as much as*
4 **en ce que,** *in so far as*
parvenu à son plein épanouissement, *fully developed*
qui n'en est que plus... pour être inconsciente, *which, though unconscious, is only the more...*
revenir à dire, *to amount to*
se douter de, *to suspect, to have an inkling of*

COMPOSITION.

mankind, *le genre humain*
accessible, here—*ouvert*
lowly, *petit*
among, *à travers*
labour, here—*la servitude*
to take the trouble to, *vouloir bien*
to trace...to their origin, *remonter jusqu'à la source de...*
mistake, *le défaut*
to dispel, *dissiper*
mist, *le nuage*
infatuation, *l'enivrement*, m.
N.B. — For the order of words in the last sentence, see § 122,(*b*), 2

38.

THÈME.

1 **every one,** *tout le monde*
luck, *la fortune*
2 **aim,** *le but*
4 **to hurt,** *nuire*
5 **Hannibal,** *Annibal*
grievous, *insigne*
Cannæ, *Cannes*
6 **to avail one's self of,** *profiter de*
to do without, *se passer de*
7 **to mind not to,** *prendre garde de*
8 **endless,** *infini*
to confiscate, *confisquer*
property, *les biens*
9 **not to be able to help,** *ne pouvoir s'empêcher de*

ENTRETIENS FAMILIERS.

2 **comment se fait-il que,** *how is it that*
faire défaut, *to be wanting*
la plupart, *the greater part*
à la fois, *at the same time*
il reste..., *there is...left*
4 **quantité,** *a great number*

COMPOSITION.

to resolve, *prendre la résolution*
to procure for one's self, *se procurer*
to murmur, *murmurer*
I must be, say—*it would be necessary that I was*
continually, *toujours*
to chew, *mâcher*
likewise, *également*
in the same manner, *de même*
to decay, *flétrir, dépérir*
to find out, *reconnaître*
foolish, *insensé*
to agree, *convenir*
in the future, *à l'avenir*
to begin again, *se remettre à*
to recover, *recouvrer*
to enjoy, say—*to have*

39.

THÈME.

2 **to feel weary,** *s'ennuyer*
to spend in, *passer à*
4 **to succeed,** *réussir à*
to appoint, *nommer*
7 **to be anxious to,** *tenir à*
it remains for me, *il me reste*
8 **to sink, to give way,** *faillir*
11 **to be old enough,** *être d'âge*
to be good for, *convenir*
12 **worth,** say—*to*

15 **to make it a point of honour,** *tenir à honneur.*

ENTRETIENS FAMILIERS.

1 **être d'avis,** *to be of opinion*
2 **en revanche,** *but then*
le tutoiement, *theeing and thouing*
le relief, here — *emphasis, stress*
4 **à en croire,** *if one is to believe*
prendre en compassion, *to pity*
renvoyer, *to refer*

COMPOSITION.

1 **to contract,** *prendre*
particular, *difficile*
dainty, *délicat*
about, say—*for*
to give way to, *se livrer à*
temper, *l'humeur,* f.
crying, *les cris,* m.
weeping, *les pleurs,* m.
passionate outburst, *l'emportement,* m.
barefoot, *nu-pieds,* or *pieds-nus*
on a hard couch, say—*hardly*
to harden one's self, *s'endurcir*
properly speaking, say—*to properly speak*
apprenticeship, *l'apprentissage,* m.
submissive, *soumis*
earliest, say—*first*
2 **pity,** *la misère*
not to have, see § 82, (*a*)*
to keep silent, *se taire*

40.

THÈME.

1 **to derive instruction from,** *s'instruire par*
2 **by dint of,** *à force de*
3 **to enter upon,** *commencer*
to consult, *interroger*
to venture, *oser*
4 **to get old,** *se faire vieux*
5 **to cross,** *franchir*
to fancy, *croire*
to leave behind, *quitter*
genial, *printanier*
7 **to humour people,** *entendre*
whimsical, *bizarre*
8 **blessing,** *le bien*
to trust, *se confier, avoir confiance*

GALLICISMES.

1 **revenir à ses moutons,** *to return to the matter in hand*
posséder à fond, *to know thoroughly*
3 **laisser de,** *to fail to*
4 **mettant que,** *supposing that*

COMPOSITION.

fault, *le défaut* (not *la faute*)
among, see list of Prepositions, p. 176
whenever there are, *pour peu qu'il y ait*
towards ... are started, *il s'établit vers...*
more correctly speaking, *plutôt*
holds one of his own, say—*holds his* (*own*)
the worst is that, *ce qu'il y a de pis c'est que*
but, Adv. Pron., *qui ne*
it is enough to make one, say—*it is a noise to become*
it is the same, *il en est de même*
club, *le cercle*
to quote, *citer*
to engross the attention of, *occuper de soi*

41.

THÈME.

2 **way,** *le passage*
to overrun, *envahir, infester*
4 **to put off,** *remettre*
5 **to urge,** *presser*
6 **shield,** *le bouclier*

ægis, *l'égide*, f.
to take, *mener*
to excite, *animer*
to support, *soutenir*
7 **to sob**, *sangloter*
to blaspheme, *blasphémer*
to stare at, *regarder*
yawning, *entr'ouvert*
9 **whilst**, *tout en*
to eat like an ogre, *manger comme quatre*
11 **treatise**, *l'ouvrage*, m., *traité*, m.
not to understand anything about it, *n'y comprendre goutte ;* fam., *n'y voir que du feu*

DIALOGUE.

se mettre en colère, *to get angry*
un conte de vieille, *old woman's tale*
sentir, here—*to betray, to smack of*

COMPOSITION.

1 **to load**, *charger*
burden, *le fardeau*
to throw down, *jeter à terre*
to hasten near, *accourir*
2 **sudden**, *imprévu*
top, *le sommet*
to rush down, *se précipiter*
crash, *le fracas*
to disturb, *froisser*
to upset, *bouleverser*
stratum, *la couche*
to traverse, *parcourir*
forerunner, *le précurseur*
to burst out, *éclater*
to flash, *briller*
glare, *la lumière*
intermission, *l'interruption*, f.
thunderclap, *le tonnerre*
to peal, *gronder*
in all directions, *de toutes parts*
to roar, *mugir*
billow, *la vague*
to foam, *écumer*
gale, *le vent*
to strew, *joncher*
to burst, here—*s'entre-choquer*
to pour, *verser*
flood, *le flot, torrent*
womb, *les flancs*, m.
to rend, *déchirer*
to swell, *grossir*
to bounce, *bondir*
to carry with one, *entraîner*
only lately, *naguère*

42.

THÈME.

1 **to depend on**, *compter sur*
3 **to insist on**, *entendre*
4 **to greet**, *recevoir*
burst, *la salve*
5 **from**, here—*pour*
6 **from his being so lordly** say—*at his imperious tone*
7 **to presume**, *oser*
8 **the reason of your**, *pourquoi vous*
9 **to shout**, *crier*
12 **by candle-light**, *à la chandelle*

DIALOGUE.

être le fait de quelqu'un, *to be one's province* (*speciality*)
se prévaloir de, *to take advantage of*
presser tant, *to drive so hard*

COMPOSITION.

kettle, *la bouilloire*
aggravating, *agaçant*
top bar, *la barre de la cheminée*
kindly, *tranquillement*
knobs of coal, *les angles saillants du charbon*
to lean forward, *se pencher en avant*
drunken, *aviné*
to dribble, *se répandre goutte à goutte*, *dégoutter*

a very idiot of a..., *en... idiot*
quarrelsome, *querelleuse*
to hiss, *siffler*
to splutter, *bredouiller*
to sum up all, *enfin*
lid, *le couvercle*
to turn topsy-turvy, *faire la culbute*
deserving, *digne*
to dive, *plonger, faire le plongeon*
sideways, *en travers, en biais*
down to very, *jusqu'au*
hull, *la carène*
to make resistance, *opposer de la résistance*
to get up again, *repêcher*
to look sullen and pig-headed, *avoir l'air boudeur et têtu*
defiance, *la bravade*
to cock, *relever*
spout, here—*le bec*
cocking its spout, *en se rengorgeant*
pertly and mockingly, *d'un air insolent et moqueur*
at, here—*au nez de*
to induce, *décider, persuader*

43.

THÈME.

a great many, *une foule de*
to take a tour, say—*to make a tour*
to undertake, *s'engager à*
to rescue, *sauver*
to snatch, *arracher*
information, *les renseignements*, m.
to turn out, *se trouver*
to polish, *limer*
to acknowledge the receipt, *accuser réception*
to rack one's brains, *se mettre l'esprit à la torture*
to get out of the difficulty, *se tirer d'affaire*
to creep, *se glisser*
at that time, *alors*
to take refuge, *se refugier*
to pledge each other's word, *se donner la parole*

DIALOGUE.

en détail, *at length*
se gouverner, here — *to achieve*
tout beau, *gently*

COMPOSITION.

inveterate, *envenimé*
unnerved, *énervé*
luxuries, *le luxe*
to enslave, *asservir, rendre esclave*
to pour fourth, *vomir*
warlike expeditions, *les travaux de la guerre*
to settle, *s'établir*
in close proximity, *près de*
in some manner, *en quelque sorte*
blind, *peu éclairé*
border, *la frontière*
to invade, *envahir*
to make one's self, etc., say —*to rendre one's self*, etc.

44.

THÈME.

to allow one's self to be, *se faire* (*laisser*)
to come to blows, *en venir aux mains* (*coups*)
to settle a difference, *vider une querelle*
expeditious, *expéditif*
tight, *juste*
to play (music), here—*exécuter*
to take steps, *faire des démarches*, f.
to be successful, *réussir*
provisions, *des vivres*, m.
not...until very late, *ne... que fort tard*
to do an ill turn, *desservir*
to take trouble, *se donner de la peine*

to fail, *échouer*
14 **to prevail,** here — *faire* (Impers.)
15 **true,** *véritable*
spite, *le dépit*
Carthaginian, *Carthaginois*
to snatch, *enlever*
16 **to require,** *falloir*
to watch, *épier*
freak, *l'écart,* m.

COMPOSITION.

1 **any,** here—*aucun*
to conciliate, *se concilier*
to domineer, *régner en maître*
he had made England, say —*he had made of England*
nor... (used as a Conj.), *et... ne...pas*
their place was supplied, say—*they were replaced*
of a still more important kind, say—*still more important*
country squire, here — *le seigneur de campagne*
dissenter, *le dissident*
to be drowsy, *sommeiller*
to be indulgent, *se montrer indulgent*
to be terminated, say—*to terminate itself*
a few, *quelques* (not *un peu*)
convulsed, here—*déchiré*
faction, *l'esprit de faction*
assailed, *en butte à*
set, *levé*
to sit, *siéger*
to take vengeance for, *tirer vengeance de*
flag, *le pavillon*
to maintain one's self, *se faire respecter*
our own seas, *les mers qui baignent nos côtes*
which Pitt lived to see, say —*which Pitt saw before dying*
2 **to cross over to,** *passer en*
to meditate, *songer à*
to derive, *retirer*
to stretch out, *tendre*
Macedonia, *la Macédoine*
prey, *la conquête*
banquet, *le festin*
festivity, *la fête*
this very day, *dès aujourd'hui*
in our hands, say—*between our hands*

45.

THÈME.

1 **in fact, in truth,** *en effet, à vrai dire*
to express, *exprimer*
understood, *sous-entendu*
7 **to trust,** *se fier*
8 **equal,** *égal*
11 **awkward,** *fâcheux*
12 **to be continually...,** *ne cesser d'être*
to enjoy, *goûter*
17 **to have to say,** fam., *chanter*
18 **were it only by,** *rien qu'à*
gait, *la démarche*
20 **differently from,** *autrement*

DIALOGUE.

faire bonne chère, *to live well*
entendre raillerie, *to know how to take a joke*
penser (followed by an Infin.), *to be near*
le spectacle, *theatre*

COMPOSITION.

bloodthirsty, *sanguinaire*
gentle, *doux*
to make ill use, *faire abus*
kindred, *les semblables*
in company, *de compagnie*
the next in age, *le second d'âge*
to drive on, *faire aller*
to follow behind, *marcher le dernier*
young ones, *petits*
grasped, *embrassé*
to observe, *garder*
to graze, *paître*

to kill, *faire main basse sur*
to go after, *chercher*
sensitive, *susceptible*
ticklish, *délicat*
with regard to, *sur le fait de*
insult, *l'injure,* f.
advisable, *bon*

46.

THÈME.

2 **this very day,** *encore aujourd'hui*
3 **to steer for,** *se diriger sur*
4 **lest,** *afin que...ne*
it should be remarked, say *—one should remark*
window pane, *la vitre*
5 **southern,** *méridonial*
unbearable, *insupportable*
6 **storm** (= attack), *assaut*
to relieve, *secourir*
7 **not nearly,** *ne...pas de beaucoup*
9 **to comply with,** say—*to consent to*
10 **tame,** *apprivoisé*
14 **to call on,** *aller voir*

COMPOSITION.

west, *le couchant*
half cultivated land, *le terrain à-demi cultivé*
dried up, *desséché*
to wend one's way along, *circuler avec*
resembling, *semblable*
each other, say—*among them*
bare, *pelé*
slope, *le flanc*
dwarf, *nain*
holly, *houx,* m.
hillock, *le monticule*
to find, here *rencontrer*
plane-tree, *le platane*
kept cool, *rafraîchi*
beast, here—*monture*
almond, *l'amande,* f.
to resume one's journey, *repartir*
glen, *la gorge*
to contain still, *conserver*

47.

THÈME.

2 **to lay by for a rainy day,** *garder une poire pour la soif*
4 **to fall in,** *s'écrouler*
5 **nightfall,** *la chute du jour*
to proceed, *passer outre*
to abate, *être apaisé*
to prepare, *se disposer à*
7 **the fact is,** *c'est que*
to care, *se soucier de*
9 **dictates,** *les lumières*
10 **to set,** *se coucher*
to alter, *changer*
turn of expression, *la locution*

COMPOSITION.

about to, *prêt à*
to burst out, *fondre*
at the castle, say—*in this castle*
to try, *juger*
on the charge of, say—*for*
to decline, *refuser de*
to examine, *interroger*
to yield, *se rendre à*
upright, *intègre*
to be expected to, *devoir*
to hear, *écouter*
then, *dès lors*
ruin, *la perte*
to elapse, *s'écouler*
to put to death, *faire mourir*
obnoxious, say—*contrary to*
English Church, *l'Église anglicane*

48.

THÈME.

2 **enough to live upon,** *de quoi vivre*
3 **to win admiration for,** *faire admirer*
6 **beloved,** *chéri*

11 **guilt,** *la culpabilité*
12 **scaffold,** *l'échafaud,* m.
beating of drums, *le bruit des tambours*
to drown, say—*to cover*
13 **of those,** say—*that those give thee*
14 **to give up** *abandonner*
to erect, *faire*
toil, *la peine*
16 **except,** *si ce n'est*

DIALOGUE.

goûter, *to appreciate, to approve of*
la suite, *succession, issue*
se refuser, *to deny one's self*

COMPOSITION.

1 **as clever as he was brave,** say—*equally clever and brave*
to avail one's self of, *ménager*
partly ... partly..., *moitié... moitié...*
2 **report,** *le récit*
3 **to fall to the lot of,** *échoir à*
of age, *majeur*
Moors, *Maures*
to apply to...for help, *demander du secours à...*
rash, *téméraire*
to cross over to, *passer en*
a stifling heat prevails, say —*it makes a stifling heat*
inconvenienced, *incommodé*

INDEX.

N.B.—The numbers refer to the sections (§)*; except those marked* p., *which refer to the pages.*

ABBREVIATIONS.

Acc.	= Accusative.	Impf.	= Imperfect.
Adj.	= Adjective.	indef.	= indefinite.
Adv.	= Adverb.	Indic.	= Indicative.
Art.	= Article.	Infin.	= Infinitive.
comp.	= compared.	interrog.	= interrogative.
Compl.	= Complement.	neg. *or* negat.	= negative.
Cond. *or* Condit.	= Conditional.	Obj.	= Object.
Conj.	= Conjunction.	Obs.	= Observation.
Conj.(Per. Pr.)	= Conjunctive.	Part.	= Participle.
Dat.	= Dative.	p.	= page.
def.	= definite.	pers.	= personal.
demonstr.	= demonstrative.	Pr. *or* Pron.	= Pronoun.
disj.	= disjunctive.	Prep.	= Preposition.
expr.	= expressed.	poss.	= possessive.
Fr.	= Fren[illegible]	refl.	= reflexive.
Fut.	= [illegible]	relat.	= relative.
Gen.	= [illegible]ve.	Subj.	= Subjunctive.

à, obj. and compl. governed by, see *Résumé*, p. 10
à, infinitive governed by, 83, 84
a, indef. art., 8 (*b*, *c*)
ablative, 10, Obs. 1; 14; expr. by **de**, 15; 16
about, **vers**, 115; *about to*, 72, Obs. 3; 81 (*c*)
abstract nouns, take the def. art., 2 (*a*)
abundance, adj. denoting, take **en**, 25 (*a*)
accusative, 9, 10; double 8 (*c*) 3; with infinit., 81 (*c*) Obs.
accusing, verbs of, take **de**, 16 (*b*)
across, **à travers**, or **au travers de**, 117
active infin., 80, 1; used for passive infinit., 81 (*d*) †
adding, verbs of, take **à**, 12 (*a*)
adjectives, used partitively, 4, Obs. 2; requiring **de**, 15 (*b*); **à**, 16 (*a*); place of, 20–22; agreement of, 24; government of, 25; with **de**, before an infin. compl., 82 (*c*) 3; with **à**, 83 (*b*) 4; with **de** or **à**, 84 (*c*); verbal, 89, 1
adjective clauses, with indic. or subj., 77; expressed by a pres. part., 90 (*d*)

adverbs, 103-108, see *Résumé*, p. 95
adverbial clauses, with indic. or subj., 78; expressed by a pres. part., 90 (*c*) and 91 (*c*); construction of, 123
adverbial complements, 10, 13, 19
adverbial phrases, used without art., 5 (*b*)
affirmative adverbs, 105
affliger, with subj., 76 (*b*)
afin de, with infin., 85
afin que, with subj., 78 (*a*)
afraid, to be, 76 (*b*) Obs.; 106 (*a*)
after, conj., 85 (*c*)
against, 115
ago, **il y a**, 15 (*b*) 2
agreement, of adjectives, 24; of poss. adj., 37; of verbs, 59-61; of pres. part., 89-91; see *Résumé*, p. 83; of past part., 92-102; see *Résumé*, p. 88
air, avoir l', 24, Obs. 2
all, 54; *all the more*, **en**, 32 (*f*)
allow, to, **faire**, 81 (*c*) Obs. 2; 86
although, 78 (*c*)
among, **entre, parmi**, 112; **chez**, 118
another, **encore**, 56
anterior, past, 71
appointing, verbs of, 9 (*b*)
any, partitive, 4; **en**, 31, 32; 54, 55, 105 (*b*)
anybody, 107 (*a*)
apposite, without art., 5, Obs.; 8 (*c*); 35 (1) Obs.; expr. by an infinit., 80 (2) f.
après, with infin., 85; **après que**, with past anterior, 71, Obs.
article, §§ 1-8; see *Résumé*, p. 1; used instead of poss. pron., 38 (*d*)
as, **comme**, 108; 120 (*b*) 3; *as far as*, 79 (*b*)
asking, verbs of, 9 (*b*); 12 (*b*)
at, **de**, 16 (*a*); **à**, 110
attendant que, en, with subj., 78 (*b*)
attendu, agreement of, 95, Obs. 2
aucun, 105 (*b*)
auprès de, près, and **proche**, comp., 116
auquel, relat. pron., 44, 45
aussitot que, with past anterior, 71, Obs.
avant and **devant**, comp., 111
avant de, with infinit., 85
avant que, with indic. or subj., 78 (*b*)
avec, comp. with **de**, 16 (*c*), Obs. 2
avoir garde, used negat. without **pas**, 107 (*b*)

be it that, 78 (*c*)
beau, place of, 21 (*b*) N.B.
before, prep., **avant, devant**, 111
before, conj., **avant que**, 78 (*b*); **avant de**, 85 (*c*); 120 (*b*) 2
believing, verbs of, 9 (*b*)
belong, to, **être à**, 12 (*d*)
below, **au-dessous de**, 114
bien, used for **beaucoup**, 4 (*a*)
bien que, with subj., 78 (*c*)
between, **entre**, 112
bon, government of, 25 (*b*); place of, 21 (*b*) N.B.
both, **l'un et l'autre**, 54; **et... et**, 119
borrowing, verbs of, take **à**, 12 (*b*)
brave, place of, 23
but, **qui ne**, 77 (*b*); 106 (*a*) Obs.
by, after passive verbs, 16 (*c*) Obs. 1; expr. by **par**, 85 (*a*); 117; before a pres. part., 91 (*b*); *by dint of*, 91 (*c*)

ça, contraction of *cela*, 41, Obs.
en cas que, with subj., 78 (*c*)
ce, demonstr. pron., 30; comp. with **il**, 40; agreement of verb with, 60 (*a*); **c'est**, emphatic, 123 (*b*) Obs.
ce n'est pas que, with subj., 78 (*c*)
ce qui, ce que, relat. pron., 46
ceci, cela, how used, 41; with partit. art. 3, Obs. 2

celui, celle, ceux, comp. with **celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là,** 42
certain, place of, 22
cesser, used negat. without **pas,** 107 (*b*)
chacun, 43
chaque, 53
cher, place of, 22
chez, 118
ci-inclus, ci-joint, agreement of, 95, Obs. 2
circumlocution, 38 (*e*); 124 (*c*)
close by, 116
collective nouns, used with art., 2 (*a*); agreement of verbs with, 60 (*b*)
colour, adj. of, 21, 4; 24, Obs. 3
comme and **comment,** comp. 108
comment, interrog., 46
commun, place of, 23
comparative, foll. by **ne,** 106 (*b*)
complement, placed before subj., 124
composite subject, concord of verb with, 61
compris, agreement of, 95, Obs. 2
concessive clauses, with condit., 74, Obs.; with subj., 79 (*a*)
concord of verbs, 56–61
conditional, 73, 74; see *Résumé,* p. 59
conditional clauses, with subj., 79 (*c*); construction of, 123
conjunctions, of time, with anterior, 71, Obs.; requiring the subj., 78; requiring the infin., 85; see *Résumé,* p. 103
contre, vers and **envers,** comp., 115
court, place of, 21 (*b*) N.B.
coûté, agreement of, 102
craindre, with subj., 76, Obs.; with **ne,** 106 (*a*)
crainte que, de, with **ne,** 106 (*c*)
croire, with **à,** 12 (*c*) Obs. 3; with indic. or subj., 76 (*c*); with infinit., 81 (*d*)

dans, with names of countries, 3; comp. with **en,** 109; comp. with **a,** 110
dative, ethic, 12 (*c*) Obs. 2
davantage, and **plus,** comp., 108
de, 6, 14–19; see *Résumé,* p. 10; with names of countries, 3; used partitively, 4; comp. with **par**; with an infin., 82; after adjectives, 82 (*c*) 3
de ce que, 76 (*b*) Obs. 3; 85
décider de or **à,** 84, Obs.
definite (preterite), 66–69
demander à or **de,** 84
demi, agreement of, 24, Obs. 1
demonstrative pronouns, 39–42; see *Résumé,* p. 38
dependent clauses, classified, p. 61; with verb in the condit., 74; indic. or subj. 75–78
depuis que, pres. after, 23
dernier, place of, 23; with indic or subj., 77 (*c*)
des, part. art., 4
dessous, au-, comp. with **sous, par-dessous,** 114
dessus, au-, comp. with **sur, par-dessus,** 113
dès que, with past anterior, 71, Obs.
déterminer de or **à,** 84, Obs.
devant, comp. with **avant,** 111
devenir, takes compl. without art., 8 (*c*) 2
devoir, denoting action to be done, 72, Obs. 4
devoir, with infinit., 81 (*a*)
différent, place of, 22
difficile, infin. after, with **de** or **à,** 84 (*c*)
dire, with infin., 81 (*c*) Obs. 1
disjunctive pers. pron., after verbs of motion, 13 (*c*) Obs.
dommage, il est, with subj., 77 (*d*)
dont, relat. pr., 43–45
douter, with subj., 75, 76 (*c*)
du, part. art., 4
dubitative clauses, 79 (*b*)
duquel, relat. pron., 44, 45
duty, office, expressed by **de,** 18

each, 53; *each other,* 56
either, 61, Obs.; *either ..or,* 119

elle, conjunct. pers. pr., 16; disjunc. pers. pr., 34, 35
emotions, verbs of, take **de,** 14, 15
empêcher, with subj., 76 (*a*)
en, prep., used without art., 3, 109; after adjectives, 25 (*a*); comp. with **dans,** 109
en, pers. pr., place of, 39, 31, 32; used instead of poss. pr., 38 (*c*); answering to **dont,** 45; pres. part. after, 81 (*e*) Obs. 3; 91
encore, *another*, 56*
envers, after adjectives, 25 (*d*); comp. with **vers** and **contre,** 115
entendu, agreement of, 98
entre, comp. with **parmi,** 112
epithets, placed before nouns, 20 (*b*)
et...et, both, 119
étonner, with subj., 76
être, no art. used after, 8 (*c*) 2; denoting possessor, 12 (*d*)
eux, disj. pers. pr., 34, 35
every, 53, 54
éviter que ne, 76 (*b*); 106
except, 120 (*b*) 3, Obs.
extraction, expressed by **de,** 14, 15

fâché, with subj., 76 (*b*)
facile, infin. after, with **de** or **à,** 84 (*c*)
façon à, de, with infin., 85
façon que, de, with Subj., 78, (*a*)
factitive verbs, no art. after, 8 (*c*) 3
faire, with infin., 81 (*e*) Obs. 2
fait, agreement of, 99
falloir, with subj., 76 (*d*); with infinit., 81 (*d*)
fallu, agreement of, 101
far from, so, 76 (*d*)*; 78 (*c*)
faux, place of, 22
fearing, verbs of, 76 (*b*) Obs.; 106 (*a*)
feeling, adjectives denoting, 25 (*b*)
filling, verbs of, 16 (*a*)
for, after verbs, 9, Obs. 1; with pres. part., 85 (*c*)
for it, expressed by **en,** 32 (*f*)
fort, requires **en** or **sur,** 25
from, expr. by **à,** 12 (*b*); by **en,** 32; by **sur,** 113
fulness, adjectives denoting, 25 (*a*)
future, 72, 74, 76, Obs.

galant, place of, 22
genitive, of possessor, 6 (*a*); of quality, 6 (*b*); expressed in French by **de,** 14, 15
gérondif, 87, III.; with **en,** 91
gerund and *gerundive*, Latin, answer to the French infinit., 80 (2) Obs. 2; 88 (2)
get, to, expr. by **faire,** 81 (*c*) Obs. 2
giving, verbs of, 12 (*a*)
grand, place of, 21 (*b*) N.B., 23
guère, ne, 105 (*b*); 107 (*e*)

hard by, **auprès de,** 116
hardly, **ne guère,** 105 (*b*); 107 (*e*)
haut, place of, 21 (*b*) N.B.
he, expr. by **il,** 26–29; by **lui,** 26, 34, 35; by **ce,** 39 (*c*) 40; by **celui,** 42
her, pers. pr. exp. by **elle,** 34, 35; by **celle,** 42
him, expressed by **le, lui,** 26–29; by **lui,** 34, 35; by **celui,** 42
his, her, poss. pron, **son, sa, ses,** 37; by the def. art., 38 (*b*)
himself, expr. by **soi,** 36
home, **chez,** 118
honnête, place of, 22
how, **comme, comment,** 108
however, 58, 78 (*c*)
house of, at the, **chez,** 118

I, expr. by **je,** 26; by **moi,** 26, 34, 35
idiomatic phrases, with **de,** 19
if, 66, Obs.; 72, Obs. 1; expr. by pres. part., 90 (*c, e*); bv **que,** 120 (*b*)
if...ever so little, if it be true that, 78 (*c*)
ignorer, with subj., 76 (*c*)

il, comp. with **ce,** 40, agreement of verb with, 60 (*a*); inversion after, 122 (*b, c*)
il y a, pres. after, 64; **ne** after, 106 (*c*)
imperative, expr. by the fut., 72, Obs. 2
imperfect, 66–69
impersonal verbs, agreement of their past part., 101
importe, il, subjunct. after, 76 (*d*)
impossible, infinit. after, with **de** or **à,** 84 (*c*)
in, with pres. part., 91 (*a, c*); expr. by **dans** or **en,** 109; by **dans** or **à,** 110
in order that, 78 (*a*); *in order to,* 85 (*c*)
indefinite art., 8
indefinite pron., 52–58
indicative, 62–72; see *Résumé,* p. 51; comp. with subj., 75–78
infinitive, 80–86; see *Résumé,* p. 72
informing, verbs of, 17
instrument, adv. compl. of, expr. by **à,** 13 (*a*); by **de,** 16 (*c*)
interrogat. construction, 27–29, 125; see *Résumé,* p. 106
interrogative pron., 48–51; see *Résumé,* p. 42
intransitive verbs, used transitively, 9, Obs. 2; requiring **à,** 12 (*c*)
inversion of subject and verb, 27, 122–124
it, gov. by a prep., **en,** 31, 32; **y,** 33; expr. by **ce,** 39; by **ce** or **il,** 40; by **on,** 52
its, expr. by **le...en,** 32 (*e*)
itself, expr. by **soi,** 36

jamais, no art. after, 8 (*c*) Obs.; 105 (*b*)
jeune, place of, 21 (*b*) N.B.
joli, place of, 21 (*b*) N.B.
jusqu'à ce que, with subj., 78 (*b*)
juste, il est, with subj., 77 (*d*)

la, def. art. and pers. pron., see **le**
laquelle, see **lequel**
laisser, with infinit., 81 (*d*)
le, la, les, def. art., 1–4; see *Résumé,* p. 1; used instead of **son, sa, ses, leurs,** 32 (*a*)
le, la, les, conj. pers. pron., 26–30; agreement of past part. with, 100, Obs. 2
lequel, laquelle, relat. pron., 44, 45; interrog. pr., 50
les, see **le**
lest, 76 (*b*) Obs.; 78 (*a*); 85 (*c*); 106 (*c*); 120 (*b*) 2
let, imperat., 79 (*a*); 81 (*c, e*)
leur, conj pers. pron., place of, 29; disj. pers. pron., 34, 35
long, place of, 21 (*b*) N.B.
longer, no, **ne plus,** 105 (*b*); 107 (*a*)
look for, to, 9, Obs. 1
lorsque, with past anterior, 71, Obs.
lui, conj. pers. pron., place of, 29; disj. pers. pr., 34, 35

make, to, **faire,** 81 (*e*) Obs. 2
making, verbs of, 9 (*b*)
malgré que, with subj., 78 (*c*)
malhonnête, place of, 22
manière à, de, with infinit., 85 (*c*)
manière que, de, with indic. or subj., 85 (*c*)
manner, adv. compl. of, 13 (*a*)
manquer à or **de,** 84, 85
mauvais, place of, 21 (*b*), 23
me, conj. pers. pron., 26–29, 38 (*e*); strengthened into **moi,** 28 *
measure, accusat. of, 10; names of, with def. art., 8 (*b*)
méchant, place of, 23
mind, 10, 106 (*a*)
moi, conj. pers. pr., 28 (2); disj. pers. pr., 34, 35
moindre, place of, 21 (*b*); with subj., 77 (*c*)
moins de, à, with infinit., 85
moins que ne, à, with subj., 106 (*c*)
moods, 62–86; see *Résumé,* pp. 51, 61, 72, 83, 88

more, 108
motive, expr. by **de**, 14, 15
much as, 78 (*c*)
must, 76 (*d*); 81 (*d*)
my, expr. by def. art., 38

names, of countries, towns, days, 2 (*e*), 3
naming, verbs of, 9 (*b*)
ne, use of, 104–107; see *Résumé*, p. 94; after verbs of fearing, 76 (*b*); **ne...ni**, 119
near, *nearly*, **près**, **proche**, 116
negative sentences, 28 (*b*); adverbs, 104; see *Résumé*, p. 94
neither, 61, Obs.; *neither...nor*, 119
neuf, place of, 23
never, 105 (*b*); 107 (*a*)
nevertheless, 120 (*b*) 2
ni...ne, 105 (*b*)
ni...ni, 112
nier, with subj., 76
nobody, *no one*, 57, 105 (*b*)
non, **non plus**, 105
nonobstant, **non pas que**, **non que**, with subj., 78 (*c*)
nor..., 119; *nor...either*, 119
not either, 105 (*b*)
not that, *not but that*, 78 (*c*), 79 (*b*)
nothing, 57, 105 (*b*); *nothing but*, 107 (*a*)
nouns, 1–8; see *Résumé*, p. 1; compound, 20; qualified by adjectives, 20–23; complemented by infinitives, 82 (*c*) 2, 83 (*b*) 1; 84 (*b*) 1
noun-object, 6, 9–19; see *Résumé*, p. 10
noun, *verbal* (infinitive), 81
nous, conj. pers. pr., 26–29; disj. pers. pr., 34, 35
nouveau, place of, 23
nu, agreement of, 24, Obs. 1
nul, ne, 105 (*b*)

object, 9–18; see *Résumé*, p. 10; expr. by an infinit., 81; agreement of past. part. with, 93, 96–102; place of, 123–125
s'occuper, **de** or **à**, 84
of, expr. by **de**, 14–19; by **à**, 12 (*b*); omitted in Fr., 9, Obs. 1
office, expr. by **de**, 18
offrir, **à** or **de**, 84, Obs.
on, expr. by **de**, 16 (*d*); omitted in Fr., 9, Obs. 1
once, *at*, **et...et**, 119
one, 52; *one another*, 56
ones, expr. by **en**, 32 (*d*)
one's self, **soi**, 36
only, **ne...que**, 105 (*b*)
optative clauses, 79 (*a*), 123
order of words, 121–124; see *Résumé*, p. 106
ordonner, with indic., 76, Obs. 1
origin, expr. by **de**, 14, 15
oser, with infinit., 81 (*d*); used negatively without **pas**, 107 (*b*)
other, *each*, 56
où, used as relat. pron., 47; **où... que**, subj. after, 78 (*b*)
ou...ou, 119
oui, 105
our, 38
out of, **par**, 117
over, **par dessus**, 113
own, expr. by **à** with pers. pron., 12 (*d*)

par, answering to the Engl. indef. art., 8 (2) Obs.; comp. with **de**, 15 (*c*) Obs.
par, **à travers** and **au travers de**, comp., 117
parce que, with indic., 85 (*c*)
par-dessus, **au-dessus**, and **sur**, comp., 113
parmi and **entre**, comp., 112
participial forms, Latin, 88 (1)
participles, used partitively, 4, Obs. 2; adj. derived from, 21; *present*, 87–91; see *Résumé*, p. 83; *past*, 92–102; see *Résumé*, p. 88
partitive, article, 4
pas, use of part. art. after, 3, N.B.; neg. adv., 103; omitted in negat. clauses, 107
passé, agreement of, 95, Obs. 2
passive voice, Engl., rendered by active voice in Fr., 52, 80 (1)
pauvre, place of, 22

peine, à, with anterior, 71, Obs.
penser, with infin., 81 (*d*); with indic. or subj., 76 (*c*)
people, 60 (*b*)
perceiving, verbs of, 17; 18 (*e*)
personne, 57; 105 (*b*); used affirmatively, 107 (*b*) Obs. 2
petit, place of, 23
peur, avoir, subj. after, 76, Obs.
peur de, de, with infinit., 85
peur que, de with subj., 78 (*a*)
place, accusat. of, 10; adv. compl. of, 13 (*c*)
plaisant, place of, 22
peu, le, agreement of verb with, 102
pluperfect, indic., 71; subj., 73
plus, ne, 105 (*b*)
plus que and **davantage,** comp., 108
plus tôt and **plutôt,** comp., 108
plupart, la, part. art. after, 4 (*a*) †
point, neg. adv., 105; comp. with **pas,** 106 *; omitted, 107
possessive pronouns, 37, 38; see *Résumé,* p. 36
possessor, genitive of, 6 (*a*)
pour, before names of countries, 3; with infinit., 85; **pour que, pour peu que,** with subj., 78 (*a*)
pouvoir, with infinit., 81 (*d*); used negat. without **pas,** 107 (*b*)
praising, verbs of, 16 (*b*)
predicate, place of, 122, 124
premier, indic. or subj. after, 77 (*c*)
prepositions, not expr. in Fr., 9 (*a*) Obs.; with infinit., 81 (*e*) N. B.; comp. 109–118; see *Résumé,* p. 100; see also Exercises, lesson 46, p. 176
près, comp. with **proche, auprès de,** 116
present tense, 63, 64; used for the fut. in Engl., 72
preterite, 66–69
price, nouns denoting, 8 (*b*)
privation, expr. by **de,** 14, 15
proche, près, and **auprès,** comp. 116
pronouns, 26–58; see *Résumés*
propre, place of, 22
proper nouns, used with art., 2 (*b*); adjectives derived from, 21
prouver, with indic. or subj., 76 (*c*) Obs.
provided, 78 (*c*)
providing, verbs of, 16 (*d*)
pu, agreement of, 100

quality, genit. of, 6 (*b*)
quand, past anterior after, 71, Obs., **quand même,** with condit. 74 Obs.
que, relat. pron., 43–46; interrog. pr. 51
qu'est-ce que, 51 (*b*)
que, conj., 123; see *Résumé,* p. 103; used emphatically, 39 (*d*) 1; 82 (*a*)*; 120 (*b*)
que ne, 76, 78 (*b*)
quel, omission of art. after 8 (*c*) Obs.; interrog. pron., 46, 48, 51
quel que, quelque, indef. pron., 58; with subj., 78 (*c*)
quelque chose, 3, Obs. 2
quelqu'un, 55
qui, relat. pron., 43, 44; interrog. pr., 48, 49
qui que ce soit, quiconque, 58
quoi, relat. pron., 46, 51; part. art. after, 3, Obs. 2
quoi que, indef. pron., 58; with subj., 78 (*c*)
quoique, conj., subj. after, 78 (*c*)

raillerie, entendre, 6, Obs. 2
raison, with or without art., 6, Obs. 2
rate, at what, expr. by **à,** 13 (*a*) Obs.
rather, 108
recollecting, verbs of, take **de,** 17
refuser de or **à,** 84, Obs.
reflexive verbs, agreement of their past part., 97
regretter, subj. after, 75, 76 (*b*)

réjouir, se, subj. after, 76 (*b*)
relative pronouns, 43–47 ; see *Résumé*, p. 42
relative (*adjective*) *clauses*, 77
repetition of article, 7
resolve upon, to, 9, Obs. 1
résoudre à or **de,** 84, Obs.
respect of, in, expr. by **de,** 16 (*a*), Obs.
riche, use of **en** after, 25 (*a*)
rien, 57, 104, 105 ; used affirmatively, 107 (*b*) Obs. 2 ; use of part. art. after, 3, Obs. 2

sa, agreement of, 37
said to, is, 81 (*e*), Obs. 1
sans, with infinit., 85
sans que, with subj., 78 (*a*)
savoir, indic. or subj. after, 76 (*c*) Obs. ; infinit. after, 81 (*d*) ; used negat. without **pas,** 107 (*b*)
se, refl. pron., 28 (1) ; 29
separation, expr. by **de,** 14, 15
seul, place of, 22 ; indic. or subj. after, 77 (*c*)
several, 55
she, expr. by **elle,** 26 ; by **ce,** 39 (*c*), 40 ; by **celle,** 42
should, condit., 73, 74 ; subj., 75, 76
showing, verbs of, 12 (*a*)
si, conj. impf. after, 66 (*c*) Obs. ; 73 (*a*) ; future or cond. after, 72, Obs. 1
si, adv. used for **oui,** 105
since, 64 ; 106 (*c*) ; 120 (*b*)
so, answering to **le,** 30
so that, conj., 78 (*a*) ; 120 (*b*) ; *so as to*, 85 (*c*)
soi, disj. refl. pron., 36
soit que, subj. after, 78 (*c*)
some, **du, de la, des,** 4 ; **en,** 31, 32 ; **quelques uns,** 55 ; **les uns,** 56
something, 56
son, agreement of, 37
de sorte que, indic. or subj. after, 78 (*a*)
sot, place of, 21 (*b*), N.B.
souffrir, subj. after, 76 (*a*)
sous, comp. with **au-dessous de, par-dessous,** 114
souvenir, se, 17
speaking, verbs of, take **de,** 17
spite of, in, 78 (*c*)
starting-point, expr. by **de,** 14, 15
subject, agreement of verb with, 59–61 ; place of, 27, 122, 124
subjunctive, 75–79 ; see *Résumé*, p. 61
suffer, to, **faire** 81 (*e*) Obs. 2
superlative, subj. after, 77 (*c*)
supine, Latin, answering to French infinit., 80 (2), Obs. 2
supposé, agreement of, 95, Obs. 2
supposé que, subj. after, 78 (*c*)
sur, comp. with **au-dessus de,** 113
surpris, subj. after, 76 (*b*)

taking, verbs of, take **à,** 12 (*b*)
taste, adjectives denoting, 21
tarder à or **de,** 84
te, conj. pers. pr., 26–29
teaching, verbs of, 9 (*b*)
telling, verbs of, 12 (*a*)
tenses, synopt. table of, 62, 63–74 ; see also *Résumé*, p. 51
that, relat. pron., **ce,** 39 ; **cela,** 41 ; **celui, celui-là,** 42 ; *that which*, 46
that, conj., 120
thee, them, 26–29
their, 38
there, **y,** 33
these, **ce,** 39 ; **ceux, ceux-ci,** 42 ; with adv. phrase of time, 64
they, **ils,** 26 ; **eux,** 26, 34, 35 ; **ce,** 39 (*c*), 40 ; **ceux,** 42
think, to, 81 (*a*) ; 86
this, **ce,** 39 ; **ceci,** 41 ; **celui, celui-ci,** 42
thither, **y,** 33 (2)
those, **ce,** 39 ; **ceux, ceux-là,** 42
thou, **tu,** 26 ; **toi,** 26, 34, 35
though, **tout en,** 91 (*c*)
through, **à travers, par,** 117
thy, expr. by **te** and def. art., 38
time, accus. of, 10 ; adv. compl. of, 13 (*b*)

to, **à**, 12; **pour**, 85 (*b*)
tout, 54; **tout ce qui** (que), 3, Obs. 2
tout.. **que**, conj., subj. after, 78 (*c*)
towards, **vers, envers**, 115
travers, à, comp. with **au travers de, par**, 117
trouver bon, subj. after, 76 (*a*)

l'un l'autre, 56
under, **sous, par-dessous**, 114
unique, indic. or subj. after, 77 (*c*)
unless, **que**...**ne**, 78 (*b*); **à moins de**, 85 (*c*)
until, **jusqu'à ce que**, 78 (*b*)
upon, **sur**, 113
us, 26–29

vécu, agreement of, 102
venir à or **de**, 84
verb, partitive, 8 (*c*) 3; government of, 9, 12, 15, 16, 17, see *Résumé*, p. 10; concord of, 59–61, see *Résumé*, p. 48; moods and tenses of, 62–102, see *Résumés*; place of, 122–125
verbal phrases, 83 (*b*) 1
vers, envers, and **contre**, comp., 115
vieux, place of, 21 (*b*) N.B.
voici, voilà, used like transit. verbs, 10, Obs. 2
voilà...**que**, pres. after, 64
voir, infinit. after, 81 (*d*)
vouloir, subj. after, 75, 76 (*a*); infin. after, 81 (*d*)
voulu, agreement of, 100
vous, conj. pron., 26–29; disj. pron., 34, 35
vrai, place of, 22
vu, agreement of, 95, Obs. 2; 98 (*c*)

want, expr. by **de**, 14, 15
wanting, verbs of, 12 (*b*)
what, relat. pr., 39 (*d*) 2, 46; interrog. pr., 51; **comment**, 108
whatever, *whatsoever*, 58; 78 (*c*); 107 (*a*)
when, 120 (*b*) 1, 3
where, used relatively, 47
whether, **si**, 72, Obs. 1; **que**, 120 (*b*) 1
which, relat. pr., 43, 44, 47; interrog. pr., 50
whilst, **en** with pres. part., 91, Obs. 2; 120 (*b*) 1
why, **que**, 120 (*b*) 3, Obs.
with, **auprès de**, 116; **avec**, 16 (*c*) Obs. 2; **chez**, 118
within, **dans**, 110
who, relat. pr., 43, 44; interrog. pr., 48
whoever, *whosoever*, 58
whose, relat. pr., 44, 45; interrog. pr., 49
will, 74, 76 (*a*, *b*, *c*)
wish, to, 76, 81 (*d*), 86
with, not expr. in French, 9, Obs. 1; expr. by **de**, 16, 32 (*f*); by **avec**, 16 (*c*) Obs. 2
without, **sans que**, 78 (*a*)
would, condit., 73, 74

y, pers. pr., place of, 29; use of, 31, 33
you, 26–29
your, 38

Richard Clay and Sons, Limited, London and Bungay.

A CATALOGUE

OF

CLASSICAL WORKS

PUBLISHED BY

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON,

COMPRISING

1. ELEMENTARY CLASSICS, for Beginners.
2. THE CLASSICAL SERIES, for Colleges and Schools.
3. THE CLASSICAL LIBRARY, for Higher Students.
   (*a*) TEXTS; (*b*) TRANSLATIONS.
4. WORKS ON GRAMMAR, COMPOSITION, & PHILOLOGY.
5. WORKS ON ANTIQUITIES, ANCIENT HISTORY, & ANCIENT PHILOSOPHY.
6. GREEK TESTAMENT.

15.11.88.

CONTENTS.

PAGE

ELEMENTARY CLASSICS 3

CLASSICAL SERIES 7

CLASSICAL LIBRARY—

(1) Texts; (2) Commentaries and Translations 11

GRAMMAR, COMPOSITION, and PHILOLOGY 16

ANTIQUITIES, ANCIENT HISTORY, and PHILOSOPHY 21

GREEK TESTAMENT 23

29 AND 30, BEDFORD STREET, COVENT GARDEN,
LONDON, W.C., *December*, 1888.

CLASSICS.

ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

18mo, Eighteenpence each.

THIS SERIES FALLS INTO TWO CLASSES—

(1) First Reading Books for Beginners, provided not only with **Introductions and Notes**, but with **Vocabularies**, and in some cases with **Exercises** based upon the Text.

(2) Stepping-stones to the study of particular authors, intended for more advanced students who are beginning to read such authors as Terence, Plato, the Attic Dramatists, and the harder parts of Cicero, Horace, Virgil, and Thucydides.

These are provided with Introductions and Notes, **but no Vocabulary**. The Publishers have been led to provide the more strictly Elementary Books with Vocabularies by the representations of many teachers, who hold that beginners do not understand the use of a Dictionary, and of others who, in the case of middle-class schools where the cost of books is a serious consideration, advocate the Vocabulary system on grounds of economy. It is hoped that the two parts of the Series, fitting into one another, may together fulfil all the requirements of Elementary and Preparatory Schools, and the Lower Forms of Public Schools.

The following Elementary Books, with Introductions, Notes, and Vocabularies, and in some cases with Exercises, are either ready or in preparation:—

Aeschylus.—PROMETHEUS VINCTUS. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

Arrian.—SELECTIONS. Edited for the use of Schools, with Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Aulus Gellius, Stories from. Being Selections and Adaptations from the *Noctes Atticae*. Edited, for the use of Lower Forms, by Rev. G. H. NALL, M.A., Assistant Master in Westminster School.

Cæsar.—THE HELVETIAN WAR. Being Selections from Book I. of the "De Bello Gallico." Adapted for the use of Beginners. With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabulary, by W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

THE INVASION OF BRITAIN. Being Selections from Books IV. and V. of the "De Bello Gallico." Adapted for the use of Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by W. WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A.

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK I. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOKS II. AND III. Edited by the Rev. W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head-Master of Westminster.

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK IV. Edited by CLEMENT BRYANS, M.A., Assistant-Master at Dulwich College.

THE GALLIC WAR. SCENES FROM BOOKS V. AND VI. Edited by C. COLBECK, M.A., Assistant-Master at Harrow; formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOKS V. AND VI. (separately). By the same Editor. Book V. *ready*. Book VI. *in preparation*.

THE GALLIC WAR. BOOK VII. Edited by JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Cicero.—DE SENECTUTE. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., late Fellow of Emmanuel College, Cambridge.

DE AMICITIA. By the same Editor.

STORIES OF ROMAN HISTORY. Adapted for the Use of Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by the Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford, and A. V. JONES, M.A.; Assistant-Masters at Haileybury College.

Eutropius.—Adapted for the Use of Beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by WILLIAM WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A., Assistant-Masters at Surrey County School, Cranleigh.

Homer.—ILIAD. BOOK I. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Homer.—ILIAD. BOOK XVIII. THE ARMS OF ACHILLES. Edited by S. R. JAMES, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton College.

ODYSSEY. BOOK I. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A. and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Horace.—ODES. BOOKS I.—IV. Edited by T. E. PAGE, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master at the Charterhouse. Each 1*s.* 6*d.*

Latin Accidence and Exercises Arranged for Beginners. By WILLIAM WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A., Assistant Masters at Surrey County School, Cranleigh.

Livy.—BOOK I. Edited by H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A., late Head Master of St. Peter's School, York.

THE HANNIBALIAN WAR. Being part of the XXI. AND XXII. BOOKS OF LIVY, adapted for the use of beginners, by G. C. MACAULAY, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

THE SIEGE OF SYRACUSE. Being part of the XXIV. AND XXV. BOOKS OF LIVY, adapted for the use of beginners. With Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by GEORGE RICHARDS, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

LEGENDS OF EARLY ROME. Adapted for the use of beginners. With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabulary, by HERBERT WILKINSON, M.A. [*In preparation.*

Lucian.—EXTRACTS FROM LUCIAN. Edited, with Notes, Exercises, and Vocabulary, by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Nepos.—SELECTIONS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GREEK AND ROMAN HISTORY. Edited for the use of beginners with Notes, Vocabulary and Exercises, by G. S. FARNELL, M.A.

Ovid.—SELECTIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. late Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Emmanuel College, Cambridge.

EASY SELECTIONS FROM OVID IN ELEGIAC VERSE. Arranged for the use of Beginners with Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by HERBERT WILKINSON, M.A.

STORIES FROM THE METAMORPHOSES. Edited for the Use of Schools. With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabulary. By J. BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Phædrus.—SELECT FABLES. Adapted for the Use of Beginners. With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabularies, by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Thucydides.—THE RISE OF THE ATHENIAN EMPIRE. BOOK I. CC. LXXXIX. — CXVII. AND CXXVIII. — CXXXVIII. Edited with Notes, Vocabulary and Exercises, by F. H. COLSON, M.A., Senior Classical Master at Bradford Grammar School; Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

Virgil.—ÆNEID. BOOK I. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

ÆNEID. BOOK IV. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

Virgil.—ÆNEID. BOOK V. Edited by Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

ÆNEID. BOOK VI. Edited by T. E. PAGE, M.A.

ÆNEID. BOOK IX. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A.

GEORGICS. BOOK I. Edited by C. BRYANS, M.A.
[*In preparation.*

SELECTIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A.

Xenophon.—ANABASIS. BOOK I. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

ANABASIS. BOOK I. Chaps. I.—VIII. for the use of Beginners, with Titles to the Sections, Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by E. A. WELLS, M.A., Assistant Master in Durham School.

ANABASIS. BOOK II. Edited by A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

ANABASIS, SELECTIONS FROM. BOOK IV. THE RETREAT OF THE TEN THOUSAND. Edited, with Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by Rev. E. D. STONE, M.A., formerly Assistant-Master at Eton.

SELECTIONS FROM THE CYROPÆDIA. Edited, with Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises, by A. H. COOKE, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of King's College, Cambridge.

The following more advanced Books, with Introductions and Notes, **but no Vocabulary,** are either ready, or in preparation:—

Cicero.—SELECT LETTERS. Edited by Rev. G. E. JEANS, M.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at Haileybury College.

Euripides.—HECUBA. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A. and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

Herodotus.—SELECTIONS FROM BOOKS VII. AND VIII., THE EXPEDITION OF XERXES. Edited by A. H. COOKE, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of King's College, Cambridge.

Horace. — SELECTIONS FROM THE SATIRES AND EPISTLES. Edited by Rev. W. J. V. BAKER, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

SELECT EPODES AND ARS POETICA. Edited by H. A. DALTON, M.A., formerly Senior Student of Christchurch; Assistant-Master in Winchester College.

Plato.—EUTHYPHRO AND MENEXENUS. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A., Classical Lecturer and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

Terence.—SCENES FROM THE ANDRIA. Edited by F. W. CORNISH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton College.

The Greek Elegiac Poets.— FROM CALLINUS TO CALLIMACHUS. Selected and Edited by Rev. HERBERT KYNASTON, D.D., Principal of Cheltenham College, and formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

Thucydides.—BOOK IV. CHS. I.—XLI. THE CAPTURE OF SPHACTERIA. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A.

Virgil.—GEORGICS. BOOK II. Edited by Rev. J. H. SKRINE, M.A., late Fellow of Merton College, Oxford; Warden of Trinity College, Glenalmond.

*** *Other Volumes to follow.*

CLASSICAL SERIES FOR COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS.

Fcap. 8vo.

Being select portions of Greek and Latin authors, edited with Introductions and Notes, for the use of Middle and Upper forms of Schools, or of candidates for Public Examinations at the Universities and elsewhere.

Attic Orators.—Selections from ANTIPHON, ANDOCIDES, LYSIAS, ISOCRATES, AND ISAEUS. Edited, with Notes, by R. C. JEBB, Litt.D., LL.D., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow. *6s.*

Æschines.— IN CTESIPHONTEM. Edited by Rev. T. GWATKIN, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*In the press.*

Æschylus.—PERSÆ. Edited by A. O. PRICKARD, M.A. Fellow and Tutor of New College, Oxford. With Map. *3s. 6d.*

SEVEN AGAINST THEBES. SCHOOL EDITION. Edited by A. W. VERRALL, Litt.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and M. A. BAYFIELD, M.A., Assistant Master at Malvern College. *3s. 6d.*

Andocides.—DE MYSTERIIS. Edited by W. J. HICKIE, M.A., formerly Assistant-Master in Denstone College. *2s. 6d.*

Cæsar.—THE GALLIC WAR. Edited, after Kraner, by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. With Maps. *6s.*

Catullus.—SELECT POEMS. Edited by F. P. SIMPSON, B.A., late Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford. New and Revised Edition. *5s.* The Text of this Edition is carefully adapted to School use.

Cicero.—THE CATILINE ORATIONS. From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Additions, by A. S. WILKINS, M.A., LL.D., Professor of Latin at the Owens College, Manchester, Examiner of Classics to the University of London. New Edition. *3s. 6d.*

PRO LEGE MANILIA. Edited, after HALM, by Professor A. S. WILKINS, M.A., LL.D. *2s. 6d.*

THE SECOND PHILIPPIC ORATION. From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Corrections and Additions, by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, Professor of Latin in the University of Cambridge, and Fellow of St. John's College. New Edition, revised. *5s.*

Cicero.—PRO ROSCIO AMERINO. Edited, after HALM, by E. H. DONKIN, M.A., late Scholar of Lincoln College, Oxford; Assistant-Master at Sherborne School. *4s. 6d.*

PRO P. SESTIO. Edited by Rev. H. A. HOLDEN, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge; and late Classical Examiner to the University of London. *5s.*

Demosthenes.—DE CORONA. Edited by B. DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. New and revised Edition. *4s. 6d.*

ADVERSUS LEPTINEM. Edited by Rev. J. R. KING, M.A. Fellow and Tutor of Oriel College, Oxford. *4s. 6d.*

THE FIRST PHILIPPIC. Edited, after C. REHDANTZ, by Rev. T. GWATKIN, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. *2s. 6d.*

IN MIDIAM. Edited by Prof. A. S. WILKINS, LL.D., and HERMAN HAGER, Ph.D., of the Owens College, Manchester. [*In preparation.*

Euripides.—HIPPOLYTUS. Edited by J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A., Fellow and Professor of Ancient History in Trinity College, Dublin, and J. B. BURY, Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin. *3s. 6d.*

MEDEA. Edited by A. W. VERRALL, Litt.D., Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. *3s. 6d.*

IPHIGENIA IN TAURIS. Edited by E. B. ENGLAND, M.A., Lecturer at the Owens College, Manchester. *4s. 6d.*

Herodotus.—BOOKS V. AND VI. Edited by J. STRACHAN, M.A., Professor of Greek in the Owens College, Manchester. [*In preparation.*

BOOKS VII. AND VIII. Edited by Mrs. MONTAGU BUTLER. [*In the press.*

Hesiod.—THE WORKS AND DAYS. Edited by W. T. LENDRUM, Assistant Master in Dulwich College. [*In preparation.*

Homer.—ILIAD. BOOKS I., IX., XI., XVI.—XXIV. THE STORY OF ACHILLES. Edited by the late J. H. PRATT, M.A., and WALTER LEAF, Litt.D., Fellows of Trinity College, Cambridge. *6s.*

ODYSSEY. BOOK IX. Edited by Prof. JOHN E.B. MAYOR. *2s. 6d.*

ODYSSEY. BOOKS XXI.—XXIV. THE TRIUMPH OF ODYSSEUS. Edited by S. G. HAMILTON, B.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford. *3s. 6d.*

Horace.—THE ODES. Edited by T. E. PAGE, M.A., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant-Master at the Charterhouse. *6s.* (BOOKS I., II., III., and IV. separately, *2s.* each.)

THE SATIRES. Edited by ARTHUR PALMER, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin; Professor of Latin in the University of Dublin. *6s.*

THE EPISTLES AND ARS POETICA. Edited by A. S. WILKINS, M.A., LL.D., Professor of Latin in Owens College, Manchester; Examiner in Classics to the University of London. *6s.*

Isaeos.—THE ORATIONS. Edited by WILLIAM RIDGEWAY, M.A., Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge; and Professor of Greek in the University of Cork. [*In preparation.*

Juvenal. THIRTEEN SATIRES. Edited, for the Use of Schools, by E. G. HARDY, M.A., late Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford. 5*s.*

The Text of this Edition is carefully adapted to School use.

SELECT SATIRES. Edited by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. X. AND XI. 3*s.* 6*d.* XII.—XVI. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Livy.—BOOKS II. AND III. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A. 5*s.*

BOOKS XXI. AND XXII. Edited by the Rev. W. W. CAPES, M.A. Maps. 5*s.*

BOOKS XXIII. AND XXIV. Edited by G. C. MACAULAY, M.A. With Maps. 5*s.*

THE LAST TWO KINGS OF MACEDON. EXTRACTS FROM THE FOURTH AND FIFTH DECADES OF LIVY. Selected and Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by F. H. RAWLINS, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge; and Assistant-Master at Eton. With Maps. 3*s.* 6*d.*

THE SUBJUGATION OF ITALY. SELECTIONS FROM THE FIRST DECADE. Edited by G. E. MARINDIN, M.A., formerly Assistant Master at Eton. [*In preparation.*

Lucretius. BOOKS I.—III. Edited by J. H. WARBURTON LEE, M.A., late Scholar of Corpus Christi College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at Rossall. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Lysias.—SELECT ORATIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., late Assistant-Master at Eton College, formerly Fellow and Assistant-Tutor of Emmanuel College, Cambridge. New Edition, revised. 6*s.*

Martial. — SELECT EPIGRAMS. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A. New Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Ovid.—FASTI. Edited by G. H. HALLAM, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Harrow. With Maps. 5*s.*

HEROIDUM EPISTULÆ XIII. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. 4*s.* 6*d.*

METAMORPHOSES. BOOKS I.—III. Edited by C. SIMMONS, M.A. [*In preparation.*

METAMORPHOSES. BOOKS XIII. AND XIV. Edited by C. SIMMONS, M.A. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Plato.—MENO. Edited by E. S. THOMPSON, M.A., Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

APOLOGY AND CRITO. Edited by F. J. H. JENKINSON, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

LACHES. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by M. T. TATHAM, M.A., Balliol College, Oxford, formerly Assistant Master at Westminster School. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Plato.—THE REPUBLIC. BOOKS I.—V. Edited by T. H. WARREN, M.A., President of Magdalen College, Oxford. 6*s.*

Plautus.—MILES GLORIOSUS. Edited by R. Y. TYRRELL, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Dublin. Second Edition Revised. 5*s.*

AMPHITRUO. Edited by ARTHUR PALMER, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College and Regius Professor of Latin in the University of Dublin. [*In preparation.*

CAPTIVI. Edited by A. RHYS SMITH, late Junior Student of Christ Church, Oxford. [*In preparation.*

Pliny.—LETTERS. BOOK III. Edited by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. With Life of Pliny by G. H. RENDALL, M.A. 5*s.*

LETTERS. BOOKS I. and II. Edited by J. COWAN, B.A., Assistant-Master in the Grammar School, Manchester. [*In preparation.*

Plutarch.—LIFE OF THEMISTOKLES. Edited by Rev. H. A. HOLDEN, M.A., LL.D. 5*s.*

Polybius.—THE HISTORY OF THE ACHÆAN LEAGUE AS CONTAINED IN THE REMAINS OF POLYBIUS. Edited by W. W. CAPES, M.A. 6*s.* 6*d.*

Propertius.—SELECT POEMS. Edited by Professor J. P. POSTGATE, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Second Edition, revised. 6*s.*

Sallust.—CATILINA AND JUGURTHA. Edited by C. MERIVALE, D.D., Dean of Ely. New Edition, carefully revised and enlarged, 4*s.* 6*d.* Or separately, 2*s.* 6*d.* each.

BELLUM CATULINAE. Edited by A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. 4*s.* 6*d.*

JUGURTHA. By the same Editor. [*In preparation.*

Sophocles.—ANTIGONE. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. [*In preparation.*

Tacitus.—AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA. Edited by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A., Translators of Tacitus. New Edition, 3*s.* 6*d.* Or separately, 2*s.* each.

THE ANNALS. BOOK VI. By the same Editors. 2*s.* 6*d.*

THE HISTORIES. BOOKS I. AND II. Edited by A. D. GODLEY, M.A. 5*s.*

THE HISTORIES. BOOKS III.—V. By the same Editor. [*In preparation.*

THE ANNALS. BOOKS I. AND II. Edited by J. S. REID, M.L., Litt.D. [*In preparation.*

Terence.—HAUTON TIMORUMENOS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. 3*s.* With Translation, 4*s.* 6*d.*

PHORMIO. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Thucydides. BOOK IV. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A., Classical Lecturer, and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 5*s.*

BOOKS III. AND V. By the same Editor. To be published separately. [*In preparation.* (*Book V. in the press.*)

BOOKS I. AND II. Edited by C. BRYANS, M.A. [*In preparation.*

BOOKS VI. AND VII. THE SICILIAN EXPEDITION. Edited by the Rev. PERCIVAL FROST, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Map. 5*s.*

Tibullus.—SELECT POEMS. Edited by Professor J. P. POSTGATE, M.A. [*In preparation.*

Virgil.—ÆNEID. BOOKS II. AND III. THE NARRATIVE OF ÆNEAS. Edited by E. W. HOWSON, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Harrow. 3*s.*

Xenophon.—HELLENICA, BOOKS I. AND II. Edited by H. HAILSTONE, B.A., late Scholar of Peterhouse, Cambridge. With Map. 4*s.* 6*d.*

CYROPÆDIA. BOOKS VII. AND VIII. Edited by ALFRED GOODWIN, M.A., Professor of Greek in University College, London. 5*s.*

MEMORABILIA SOCRATIS. Edited by A. R. CLUER, B.A., Balliol College, Oxford. 6*s.*

THE ANABASIS. BOOKS I.—IV. Edited by Professors W. W. GOODWIN and J. W. WHITE. Adapted to Goodwin's Greek Grammar. With a Map. 5*s.*

HIERO. Introduction, Summaries, Critical and Explanatory Notes and Indices, and Critical Appendix. Edited by Rev. H. A. HOLDEN, M.A., LL.D. Third Edition, revised. 3*s.* 6*d.*

OECONOMICUS. By the same Editor. With Introduction, Explanatory Notes, Critical Appendix, and Lexicon. 6*s.*

*** *Other Volumes will follow.*

CLASSICAL LIBRARY.

(1) **Texts,** Edited with **Introductions and Notes,** for the use of Advanced Students. (2) **Commentaries and Translations.**

Æschylus.—THE EUMENIDES. The Greek Text, with Introduction, English Notes, and Verse Translation. By BERNARD DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. 5*s.*

AGAMEMNON. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. W. VERRALL, Litt.D. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

AGAMEMNON, CHOEPHORŒ, AND EUMENIDES. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. O. PRICKARD, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of New College, Oxford. 8vo.

[*In preparation.*

Æschylus.—THE "SEVEN AGAINST THEBES." Edited, with Introduction, Commentary, and Translation, by A. W. VERRALL, Litt.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE SUPPLICES. A Revised Text, with Introduction, Critical Notes, Commentary and Translation. By T. G. TUCKER, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Professor of Classical Philology in the University of Melbourne. 8vo. [*In the press.*

Antoninus, Marcus Aurelius.—BOOK IV. OF THE MEDITATIONS. The Text Revised, with Translation and Notes, by HASTINGS CROSSLEY, M.A., Professor of Greek in Queen's College, Belfast. 8vo. 6*s.*

Aristotle.—THE METAPHYSICS. BOOK I. Translated by a Cambridge Graduate. 8vo. 5*s.* [*Book II. in preparation.*

THE POLITICS. Edited, after SUSEMIHL, by R. D. HICKS, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo.

[*In the press.*

THE POLITICS. Translated, with Analysis and Critical Notes, by Rev. J. E. C. WELLDON, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, and Head-Master of Harrow School. Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

THE RHETORIC. Translated, with an Analysis and Critical Notes, by the same. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE ETHICS. Translated, with an Analysis and Critical Notes, by the same. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

AN INTRODUCTION TO ARISTOTLE'S RHETORIC. With Analysis, Notes, and Appendices. By E. M. COPE, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 14*s.*

THE SOPHISTICI ELENCHI. With Translation and Notes by E. POSTE, M.A., Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Aristophanes.—THE BIRDS. Translated into English Verse, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D., Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* Help Notes to the same, for the use of Students, 1*s.* 6*d.*

Attic Orators.—FROM ANTIPHON TO ISAEOS. By R. C. JEBB, Litt.D., LL.D., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow. 2 vols. 8vo. 25*s.*

Babrius.—Edited, with Introductory Dissertations, Critical Notes, Commentary and Lexicon. By Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head-Master of Westminster. 8vo. 12*s.* 6*d.*

Cicero.—THE ACADEMICA. The Text revised and explained by J. S. REID, M.L., Litt.D., Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge. 8vo. 15*s.*

THE ACADEMICS. Translated by J. S. REID, M.L., Litt.D. 8vo. 5*s.* 6*d.*

Cicero.—SELECT LETTERS. After the Edition of ALBERT WATSON, M.A. Translated by G. E. JEANS, M.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford, and late Assistant-Master at Haileybury. Second Edition. Revised. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Euripides.—MEDEA. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. W. VERRALL, Litt.D., Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

IPHIGENIA IN AULIS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by E. B. ENGLAND, M.A., Lecturer in the Owens College, Manchester. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF EURIPIDES. By Professor J. P. MAHAFFY. Fcap. 8vo. *1s. 6d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Herodotus.—BOOKS I.—III. THE ANCIENT EMPIRES OF THE EAST. Edited, with Notes, Introductions, and Appendices, by A. H. SAYCE, Deputy-Professor of Comparative Philology, Oxford; Honorary LL.D., Dublin. Demy 8vo. *16s.*

BOOKS IV.—IX. Edited by REGINALD W. MACAN, M.A., Lecturer in Ancient History at Brasenose College, Oxford. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Homer.—THE ILIAD. Edited, with Introduction and English Notes, by WALTER LEAF, Litt.D., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. In Two Volumes. Vol. I. Books I.—XII. *14s.* Vol. II. Books XIII.—XIV. *14s.*

THE ILIAD. Translated into English Prose. By ANDREW LANG, M.A., WALTER LEAF, Litt.D., and ERNEST MYERS, M.A. Crown 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

THE ODYSSEY. Done into English by S. H. BUTCHER, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh, and ANDREW LANG, M.A., late Fellow of Merton College, Oxford. Seventh and Cheaper Edition, revised and corrected. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF HOMER. By the Right Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P. 18mo. *1s.* (*Literature Primers.*)

HOMERIC DICTIONARY. For Use in Schools and Colleges. Translated from the German of Dr. G. AUTENRIETH, with Additions and Corrections, by R. P. KEEP, Ph.D. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Horace.—THE WORKS OF HORACE RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE. With Introductions, Running Analysis, Notes, &c. By J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A. (*Globe Edition.*) *3s. 6d.*

STUDIES, LITERARY AND HISTORICAL, IN THE ODES OF HORACE. By A. W. VERRALL, Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Demy 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Juvenal.—THIRTEEN SATIRES OF JUVENAL. With a Commentary. By JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Professor of Latin in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo.

*** Vol. I. Fourth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 10*s.* 6*d.*
Vol. II. Second Edition. 10*s.* 6*d.*

*** The new matter consists of an Introduction (pp. 1—53), Additional Notes (pp. 333—466) and Index (pp. 467—526). It is also issued separately, as a Supplement to the previous edition, at 5*s.*

THIRTEEN SATIRES. Translated into English after the Text of J. E. B. MAYOR by ALEXANDER LEEPER, M.A., Warden of Trinity College, in the University of Melbourne. Crown 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Ktesias.—THE FRAGMENTS OF THE PERSIKA OF KTESIAS. Edited with Introduction and Notes by JOHN GILMORE, M.A. 8vo. 8*d.* 6*s.*

Livy.—BOOKS I.—IV. Translated by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A., late Head-Master of St. Peter's School, York.

[*In preparation.*

BOOKS XXI.—XXV. Translated by ALFRED JOHN CHURCH, M.A., of Lincoln College, Oxford, Professor of Latin, University College, London, and WILLIAM JACKSON BRODRIBB, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Cr. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF LIVY. By Rev. W. W. CAPES, Reader in Ancient History at Oxford. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Martial.—BOOKS I. AND II. OF THE EPIGRAMS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Professor J. E. B. MAYOR, M.A. 8vo. [*In the press.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Pausanias.—DESCRIPTION OF GREECE. Translated by J. G. FRAZER, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

[*In preparation.*

Phrynichus.—THE NEW PHRYNICHUS; being a Revised Text of the Ecloga of the Grammarian Phrynichus. With Introduction and Commentary by Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head-Master of Westminster. 8vo. 18*s.*

Pindar.—THE EXTANT ODES OF PINDAR. Translated into English, with an Introduction and short Notes, by ERNEST MYERS, M.A., late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

THE OLYMPIAN AND PYTHIAN ODES. Edited, with an Introductory Essay, Notes, and Indexes, by BASIL GILDERSLEEVE, Professor of Greek in the Johns Hopkins University, Baltimore. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Plato.—PHÆDO. Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by R. D. ARCHER-HIND, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Plato.—TIMAEUS.—Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and a Translation, by the same Editor. 8vo. *16s.*

PHÆDO. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by W. D. GEDDES, LL.D., Principal of the University of Aberdeen. Second Edition. Demy 8vo. *8s. 6d.*

PHILEBUS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by HENRY JACKSON, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

THE REPUBLIC.—Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by H. C. GOODHART, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

THE REPUBLIC OF PLATO. Translated into English, with an Analysis and Notes, by J. LL. DAVIES, M.A., and D. J. VAUGHAN, M.A. 18mo. *4s. 6d.*

EUTHYPHRO, APOLOGY, CRITO, AND PHÆDO. Translated by F. J. CHURCH. 18mo. *4s. 6d.*

PHÆDRUS, LYSIS, AND PROTAGORAS. A New and Literal Translation, mainly from the text of Bekker. By J. WRIGHT, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge. 18mo. *4s. 6d.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Plautus.—THE MOSTELLARIA OF PLAUTUS. With Notes, Prolegomena, and Excursus. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, M.A., formerly Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. Edited by Professor GEORGE G. RAMSAY, M.A., of the University of Glasgow. 8vo. *14s.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Pliny.—LETTERS TO TRAJAN. Edited, with Introductory Essays and Notes, by E. G. HARDY, M.A., late Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford. 8vo. [*In the press.*

Polybius.—THE HISTORIES. Translated, with Introduction and Notes, by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. 2 vols. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

Sallust.—CATILINE AND JUGURTHA. Translated, with Introductory Essays, by A. W. POLLARD, B.A. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

THE CATILINE (separately). Crown 8vo. *3s.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Sophocles.—ŒDIPUS THE KING. Translated from the Greek of Sophocles into English Verse by E. D. A. MORSHEAD, M.A., late Fellow of New College, Oxford; Assistant Master at Winchester College. Fcap. 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Studia Scenica.—Part I., Section I. Introductory Study on the Text of the Greek Dramas. The Text of SOPHOCLES' TRACHINIAE, 1–300. By DAVID S. MARGOLIOUTH, Fellow of New College, Oxford. Demy 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Tacitus.—THE ANNALS. Edited, with Introductions and Notes, by G. O. HOLBROOKE, M.A., Professor of Latin in Trinity College, Hartford, U.S.A. With Maps. 8vo. *16s.*

Tacitus.—THE ANNALS. Translated by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and Maps. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

THE HISTORIES. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Rev. W. A. SPOONER, M.A., Fellow of New College, and H. M. SPOONER, M.A., formerly Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

THE HISTORY. Translated by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and a Map. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANY, WITH THE DIALOGUE ON ORATORY. Translated by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and Maps. New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF TACITUS. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A. and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. *1s. 6d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

Theocritus, Bion, and Moschus. Rendered into English Prose, with Introductory Essay, by A. LANG, M.A. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Virgil.—THE WORKS OF VIRGIL RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE, with Notes, Introductions, Running Analysis, and an Index, by JAMES LONSDALE, M.A., and SAMUEL LEE, M.A. New Edition. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

THE ÆNEID. Translated by J. W. MACKAIL, M.A., Fellow of Balliol College, Oxford. Crown 8vo. *7s. 6d.*

Xenophon.—COMPLETE WORKS. Translated, with Introduction and Essays, by H. G. DAKYNS, M.A., Assistant-Master in Clifton College. Four Volumes. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

GRAMMAR, COMPOSITION, & PHILOLOGY.

Belcher.—SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION AND EXAMINATION PAPERS IN LATIN GRAMMAR, to which is prefixed a Chapter on Analysis of Sentences. By the Rev. H. BELCHER, M.A., Rector of the High School, Dunedin, N.Z. New Edition. 18mo. *1s. 6d.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE (for Teachers only). *3s. 6d.*

SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. Part II., On the Syntax of Sentences, with an Appendix, including EXERCISES IN LATIN IDIOMS, &c. 18mo. *2s.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE (for Teachers only). *3s.*

Blackie.—GREEK AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By JOHN STUART BLACKIE, Emeritus Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

Bryans.—LATIN PROSE EXERCISES BASED UPON CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR. With a Classification of Cæsar's Chief Phrases and Grammatical Notes on Cæsar's Usages. By CLEMENT BRYANS, M.A., Assistant-Master in Dulwich College. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE (for Teachers only). New Edition. *4s. 6d.*

GREEK PROSE EXERCISES based upon Thucydides. By the same Author. Extra fcap. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Cookson.—A LATIN SYNTAX. By CHRISTOPHER COOKSON, M.A., Assistant-Master at S. Paul's School. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Eicke.—FIRST LESSONS IN LATIN. By K. M. EICKE, B.A., Assistant-Master in Oundle School. Globe 8vo. *2s.*

England.—EXERCISES ON LATIN SYNTAX AND IDIOM. ARRANGED WITH REFERENCE TO ROBY'S SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR. By E. B. ENGLAND, M.A., Assistant Lecturer at the Owens College, Manchester. Crown 8vo. *2s. 6d.* Key for Teachers only, *2s. 6d.*

Goodwin.—Works by W. W. GOODWIN, LL.D., Professor of Greek in Harvard University, U.S.A.

SYNTAX OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF THE GREEK VERB. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *6s. 6d.*

A GREEK GRAMMAR. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

"It is the best Greek Grammar of its size in the English language."—ATHENÆUM.

A GREEK GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Greenwood.—THE ELEMENTS OF GREEK GRAMMAR, including Accidence, Irregular Verbs, and Principles of Derivation and Composition; adapted to the System of Crude Forms. By J. G. GREENWOOD, Principal of Owens College, Manchester. New Edition. Crown 8vo. *5s. 6d.*

Hadley and Allen.—A GREEK GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By JAMES HADLEY, late Professor in Yale College. Revised and in part Rewritten by FREDERIC DE FOREST ALLEN, Professor in Harvard College. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Hodgson.—MYTHOLOGY FOR LATIN VERSIFICATION. A brief Sketch of the Fables of the Ancients, prepared to be rendered into Latin Verse for Schools. By F. HODGSON, B.D., late Provost of Eton. New Edition, revised by F. C. HODGSON, M.A. 18mo. *3s.*

Jackson.—FIRST STEPS TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. By BLOMFIELD JACKSON, M.A., Assistant-Master in King's College School, London. New Edition, revised and enlarged. 18mo. *1s. 6d.*

KEY TO FIRST STEPS (for Teachers only). 18mo. *3s. 6d.*

SECOND STEPS TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION, with Miscellaneous Idioms, Aids to Accentuation, and Examination Papers in Greek Scholarship. 18mo. *2s. 6d.*

KEY TO SECOND STEPS (for Teachers only). 18mo. *3s. 6d.*

Kynaston.—EXERCISES IN THE COMPOSITION OF GREEK IAMBIC VERSE by Translations from English Dramatists. By Rev. H. KYNASTON, D.D., Principal of Cheltenham College. With Introduction, Vocabulary, &c. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

KEY TO THE SAME (for Teachers only). Extra fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Lupton.—Works by J. H. LUPTON, M.A., Sur-Master of St. Paul's School, and formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN ELEGIAC VERSE COMPOSITION. Globe 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

LATIN RENDERING OF THE EXERCISES IN PART II. (XXV.-C.). Globe 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN LYRIC VERSE COMPOSITION. Globe 8vo. 3*s.*

KEY FOR THE USE OF TEACHERS ONLY. Globe 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Mackie.—PARALLEL PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO GREEK AND ENGLISH. Carefully graduated for the use of Colleges and Schools. With Indexes. By Rev. ELLIS C. MACKIE, Classical Master at Heversham Grammar School. Globe 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Macmillan.—FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR. By M. C. MACMILLAN, M.A., late Scholar of Christ's College, Cambridge; sometime Assistant-Master in St. Paul's School. New Edition, enlarged. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Macmillan's Greek Course.—Edited by Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head Master of Westminster.

I.—FIRST GREEK GRAMMAR. By the Editor. New Edition, thoroughly revised. Globe 8vo. 2*s.*

II.—EASY LESSONS IN GREEK ACCIDENCE. By H. G. UNDERHILL, M.A., Assistant-Master St. Paul's Preparatory School. Globe 8vo. 2*s.*

III.—SECOND GREEK EXERCISE BOOK.
IV.—MANUAL OF GREEK ACCIDENCE.
V.—MANUAL OF GREEK SYNTAX.
VI.—ELEMENTARY GREEK COMPOSITION.
} *In preparation.*

Macmillan's Greek Reader.—STORIES AND LEGENDS. A First Greek Reader, with Notes, Vocabulary, and Exercises. By F. H. COLSON, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Senior Classical Master of Bradford Grammar School. Globe 8vo. 3*s.*

Macmillan's Latin Course. FIRST YEAR. By A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant-Master at St. Paul's School. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Globe 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

*** *The Second Part is in preparation.*

Macmillan's Latin Reader.—A LATIN READER FOR THE LOWER FORMS IN SCHOOLS. By H. J. HARDY, M.A., Assistant Master in Winchester College. Globe 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Macmillan's Shorter Latin Course. By A. M. COOK, M.A., Assistant-Master at St. Paul's School. Being an abridgment of "Macmillan's Latin Course," First Year. Globe 8vo. *1s. 6d.*

Marshall.—A TABLE OF IRREGULAR GREEK VERBS. classified according to the arrangement of Curtius's Greek Grammar, By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., Head Master of the Grammar School, Durham. New Edition. 8vo. *1s.*

Mayor (John E. B.)—FIRST GREEK READER. Edited after KARL HALM, with Corrections and large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Mayor (Joseph B.)—GREEK FOR BEGINNERS. By the Rev. J. B. MAYOR, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature in King's College, London. Part I., with Vocabulary, *1s. 6d.* Parts II. and III., with Vocabulary and Index, *3s. 6d.* Complete in one Vol. fcap. 8vo. *4s. 6d.*

Nixon.—PARALLEL EXTRACTS, Arranged for Translation into English and Latin, with Notes on Idioms. By J. E. NIXON, M.A., Fellow and Classical Lecturer, King's College, Cambridge. Part I.—Historical and Epistolary. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

PROSE EXTRACTS, Arranged for Translation into English and Latin, with General and Special Prefaces on Style and Idiom. I. Oratorical. II. Historical. III. Philosophical and Miscellaneous. By the same Author. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

*** *Translations of Select Passages supplied by Author only.*

Peile.—A PRIMER OF PHILOLOGY. By J. PEILE, Litt.D., Master of Christ's College, Cambridge. 18mo. *1s.*

Postgate.—PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE. With Introduction and Notes, by J. P. POSTGATE, M.A. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

Postgate and Vince.—A DICTIONARY OF LATIN ETYMOLOGY. By J. P. POSTGATE, M.A., and C. A. VINCE, M.A. [*In preparation.*

Potts (A. W.)—Works by ALEXANDER W. POTTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Head Master of the Fettes College, Edinburgh.

HINTS TOWARDS LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *3s.*

PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE. Edited with Notes and References to the above. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. *2s. 6d.*

LATIN VERSIONS OF PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE (for Teachers only). *2s. 6d.*

Preston.—EXERCISES IN LATIN VERSE COMPOSITION. By Rev. G. PRESTON, M.A., Head Master of the King's School, Chester. (With Key.) Globe 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Reid.—A GRAMMAR OF TACITUS. By J. S. REID, M.L., Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

A GRAMMAR OF VERGIL. By the same Author. [*In preparation.*

*** *Similar Grammars to other Classical Authors will probably follow.*

Roby.—A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE, from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. In Two Parts. Part I. Fifth Edition, containing:—Book I. Sounds. Book II. Inflexions. Book III. Word-formation. Appendices. Crown 8vo. 9*s.*

Part II. Syntax, Prepositions, &c. Crown 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

"Marked by the clear and practised insight of a master in his art. A book that would do honour to any country."—ATHENÆUM.

SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR. By the same Author. Cr. 8vo. 5*s.*

Rush.—SYNTHETIC LATIN DELECTUS. A First Latin Construing Book arranged on the Principles of Grammatical Analysis. With Notes and Vocabulary. By E. RUSH, B.A. With Preface by the Rev. W. F. MOULTON, M.A., D.D. New and Enlarged Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Rust.—FIRST STEPS TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. By the Rev. G. RUST, M.A., of Pembroke College, Oxford, Master of the Lower School, King's College, London. New Edition. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE. By W. M. YATES, Assistant-Master in the High School, Sale. 18mo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

Rutherford.—Works by the Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head-Master of Westminster.

REX LEX. A Short Digest of the principal Relations between Latin, Greek, and Anglo-Saxon Sounds. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

THE NEW PHRYNICHUS; being a Revised Text of the Ecloga of the Grammarian Phrynichus. With Introduction and Commentary. 8vo. 18*s.* (See also Macmillan's Greek Course.)

Simpson.—LATIN PROSE AFTER THE BEST AUTHORS. By F. P. SIMPSON, B.A., late Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford. Part I. CÆSARIAN PROSE. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

KEY TO THE ABOVE, for Teachers only. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5*s.*

Thring.—Works by the Rev. E. THRING, M.A., late Head-Master of Uppingham School.

A LATIN GRADUAL. A First Latin Construing Book for Beginners. New Edition, enlarged, with Coloured Sentence Maps. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

A MANUAL OF MOOD CONSTRUCTIONS. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

Welch and Duffield.—LATIN ACCIDENCE AND EXERCISES ARRANGED FOR BEGINNERS. By WILLIAM WELCH, M.A., and C. G. DUFFIELD, M.A., Assistant Masters at Cranleigh School. 18mo. 1*s.* 6*d.*

This book is intended as an introduction to Macmillan's *Elementary Classics*, and is the development of a plan which has been in use for some time and has been worked satisfactorily.

White.—FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK. Adapted to GOODWIN'S GREEK GRAMMAR, and designed as an introduction to the ANABASIS OF XENOPHON. By JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, Ph.D., Assistant-Professor of Greek in Harvard University. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Wilkins and Strachan.— ANALECTA: PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION. Selected and Arranged by A. S. WILKINS, M.A., Professor of Latin, and J. STRACHAN, M.A., Professor of Greek, in the Owens College, Manchester. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

Wright.—Works by J. WRIGHT, M.A., late Head Master of Sutton Coldfield School.

A HELP TO LATIN GRAMMAR; or, The Form and Use of Words in Latin, with Progressive Exercises. Crown 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME. An Easy Narrative, abridged from the First Book of Livy by the omission of Difficult Passages; being a First Latin Reading Book, with Grammatical Notes and Vocabulary. New and revised Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3*s.* 6*d.*

FIRST LATIN STEPS; OR, AN INTRODUCTION BY A SERIES OF EXAMPLES TO THE STUDY OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE. Crown 8vo. 3*s.*

ATTIC PRIMER. Arranged for the Use of Beginners. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

A COMPLETE LATIN COURSE, comprising Rules with Examples, Exercises, both Latin and English, on each Rule, and Vocabularies. Crown 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

ANTIQUITIES, ANCIENT HISTORY, AND PHILOSOPHY.

Arnold.—Works by W. T. ARNOLD, M.A.

A HANDBOOK OF LATIN EPIGRAPHY. [*In preparation.*

THE ROMAN SYSTEM OF PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION TO THE ACCESSION OF CONSTANTINE THE GREAT. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Arnold (T.)—THE SECOND PUNIC WAR. Being Chapters on THE HISTORY OF ROME. By the late THOMAS ARNOLD, D.D., formerly Head Master of Rugby School, and Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford. Edited, with Notes, by W. T. ARNOLD, M.A. With 8 Maps. Crown 8vo. 8*s.* 6*d.*

Beesly.—STORIES FROM THE HISTORY OF ROME. By Mrs. BEESLY. Fcap. 8vo. 2*s.* 6*d.*

Burn.—ROMAN LITERATURE IN RELATION TO ROMAN ART. By Rev. ROBERT BURN, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. With numerous Illustrations. Extra Crown 8vo. 14*s.*

Bury.—A HISTORY OF THE LATER ROMAN EMPIRE FROM ARCADIUS TO IRENE, A.D. 395—800. By JOHN B. BURY, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin. 2 vols. 8vo [*Shortly.*

Classical Writers.—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D. Fcap. 8vo. 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

EURIPIDES. By Professor MAHAFFY.
MILTON. By the Rev. STOPFORD A. BROOKE, M.A.
LIVY. By the Rev. W. W. CAPES, M.A.
VIRGIL. By Professor NETTLESHIP, M.A.
SOPHOCLES. By Professor L. CAMPBELL, M.A.
DEMOSTHENES. By Professor S. H. BUTCHER, M.A.
TACITUS. By Professor A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A.

Freeman.—Works by EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D., Hon. Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford, Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford.

HISTORY OF ROME. (*Historical Course for Schools.*) 18mo. [*In preparation.*

A SCHOOL HISTORY OF ROME. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

HISTORICAL ESSAYS. Second Series. [Greek and Roman History.] 8vo. 10*s.* 6*d.*

Fyffe.—A SCHOOL HISTORY OF GREECE. By C. A. FYFFE, M.A. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Gardner.—SAMOS AND SAMIAN COINS. An Essay. By PERCY GARDNER, M.A., Litt.D., Professor of Archæology in the University of Oxford. With Illustrations. 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

Geddes. — THE PROBLEM OF THE HOMERIC POEMS. By W. D. GEDDES, Principal of the University of Aberdeen. 8vo. 14*s.*

Gladstone.—Works by the Rt. Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P.

THE TIME AND PLACE OF HOMER. Crown 8vo. 6*s.* 6*d.*
A PRIMER OF HOMER. 18mo. 1*s.*

Gow.—A COMPANION TO SCHOOL CLASSICS. By JAMES GOW, Litt.D., Master of the High School, Nottingham; late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

Harrison and Verrall.—CULTS AND MONUMENTS OF ANCIENT ATHENS. By Miss J. E. HARRISON and Mrs. A. W. VERRALL. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. [*In the press.*

Jackson.—A MANUAL OF GREEK PHILOSOPHY. By HENRY JACKSON, M.A., Litt.D., Fellow and Prælector in Ancient Philosophy, Trinity College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*

Jebb.—Works by R. C. JEBB, Litt.D., LL.D., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow.

THE ATTIC ORATORS FROM ANTIPHON TO ISAEOS. 2 vols. 8vo. 25*s.*
A PRIMER OF GREEK LITERATURE. 18mo. 1*s.*

(See also *Classical Series.*)

Kiepert.—MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY, Translated from the German of Dr. HEINRICH KIEPERT. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

Mahaffy.—Works by J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A., D.D., Fellow and Professor of Ancient History in Trinity College, Dublin, and Hon. Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford.

SOCIAL LIFE IN GREECE; from Homer to Menander. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. *9s.*

GREEK LIFE AND THOUGHT; from the Age of Alexander to the Roman Conquest. Crown 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

RAMBLES AND STUDIES IN GREECE. With Illustrations. Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With Map. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

A PRIMER OF GREEK ANTIQUITIES. With Illustrations. 18mo. *1s.*

EURIPIDES. 18mo. *1s. 6d.* (*Classical Writers Series.*)

Mayor (J. E. B.)—BIBLIOGRAPHICAL CLUE TO LATIN LITERATURE. Edited after HÜBNER, with large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.*

Newton.—ESSAYS IN ART AND ARCHÆOLOGY. By Sir CHARLES NEWTON, K.C.B., D.C.L., Professor of Archæology in University College, London, and formerly Keeper of Greek and Roman Antiquities at the British Museum. 8vo. *12s. 6d.*

Ramsay.—A SCHOOL HISTORY OF ROME. By G. G. RAMSAY, M.A., Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. With Maps. Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*

Sayce.—THE ANCIENT EMPIRES OF THE EAST. By A. H. SAYCE, Deputy-Professor of Comparative Philosophy, Oxford, Hon. LL.D. Dublin. Crown 8vo. *6s.*

Stewart.—THE TALE OF TROY. Done into English by AUBREY STEWART, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Globe 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Wilkins.—A PRIMER OF ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By Professor WILKINS, M.A., LL.D. Illustrated. 18mo. *1s.*

A PRIMER OF LATIN LITERATURE. By the same Author. [*In preparation.*

GREEK TESTAMENT.

Abbott—Rushbrooke.—THE COMMON TRADITION OF THE SYNOPTIC GOSPELS, in the Text of the Revised Version. By EDWIN A. ABBOTT, D.D., and W. G. RUSHBROOKE, M.L. Crown 8vo. *3s. 6d.*

Greek Testament.—Edited, with Introduction and Appendices, by CANON WESTCOTT and Dr. F. J. A. HORT. Two Vols. Crown 8vo. *10s. 6d.* each. Vol. I. The Text. Vol. II. Introduction and Appendix.

Greek Testament for Schools.—THE GREEK TESTAMENT. School Edition of the Text. Edited by CANON WESTCOTT and Dr. HORT. 12mo. cloth. *4s. 6d.* 18mo. roan, red edges. *5s. 6d.*

ST. MATTHEW'S GOSPEL.—Being the Greek Text of Drs. WESTCOTT and HORT. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Rev. J. BOND, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. [*In preparation.*

ST. MARK'S GOSPEL.—Being the Greek Text of Drs. WESTCOTT and HORT. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Rev. J. O. F. MURRAY, M.A. [*In preparation.*

ST. LUKE'S GOSPEL.—Being the Greek Text of Drs. WESTCOTT and HORT. Edited by T. E. PAGE, M.A. [*In preparation.*

THE ACTS OF THE APOSTLES.—Being the Greek Text as revised by Drs. WESTCOTT and HORT. With Explanatory Notes by T. E. PAGE, M.A., Assistant-Master at the Charterhouse. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

Greek Testament, School Readings in the.—Being the Outline of the Life of Our Lord, as given by St. Mark. With Additions from the Text of the other Evangelists. Arranged and Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary, by the Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. 4*s.* 6*d.*

St. John's Epistles.—The Greek Text, with Notes and Essays, by Canon WESTCOTT. 12*s.* 6*d.*

St. Paul's Epistles.—Greek Text, with Introduction and Notes.

THE EPISTLE TO THE GALATIANS. Edited by the Right Rev. J. B. LIGHTFOOT, D.D., Bishop of Durham. Ninth Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE PHILIPPIANS. By the same Editor. Ninth Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE COLOSSIANS AND TO PHILEMON. By the same Editor. Eighth Edition. 8vo. 12*s.*

THE APOSTOLIC FATHERS. Part II. S. Ignatius—S. Polycarp. Revised Texts, with Introductions, Notes, Dissertations, and Translations. By the same Editor. Two Volumes in Three. Demy 8vo. 48*s.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE ROMANS. Edited by the Very Rev. C. J. VAUGHAN, D.D., Dean of Llandaff, and Master of the Temple. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE EPISTLES TO THE PHILIPPIANS, with Translation, Paraphrase, and Notes, for English Readers. By the same Editor. Crown 8vo. 5*s.*

THE EPISTLES TO THE EPHESIANS, THE COLOSSIANS, AND PHILEMON. With Introductions and Notes by the Rev. J. LLEWELYN DAVIES, M.A. Second Edition, revised. Demy 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THE EPISTLE TO THE HEBREWS. In Greek and English. With Critical and Explanatory Notes. Edited by Rev. FREDERIC RENDALL, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

THE ENGLISH TEXT, WITH COMMENTARY. By the same Editor. Crown 8vo. 7*s.* 6*d.*

RICHARD CLAY AND SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BUNGAY.

4473
LaF.Gr Fasnacht, George Eugène
F248mp MacMillan's progressive French course.
Vol.3.

University of Toronto
Library

DO NOT
REMOVE
THE
CARD
FROM
THIS
POCKET

Acme Library Card Pocket
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED